



1 HARVEST STREET YANDINA 4561  
Phone No. 5446 7133  
Fax No. 5446 8118

# **BRISBANE CITY COUNCIL**

**CONTRACT BW70103-004**

**PUMP STATION SWITCHBOARD REPLACEMENT**

**SP 267 MEADOWLANDS ROAD #2**

## **OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS**

# **BRISBANE CITY COUNCIL**

## **CONTRACT BW70103-004** **PUMP STATION SWITCHBOARD** **REPLACEMENT** **SP267 MEADOWLANDS ROAD #2**

### ***Supply and Installation of Switchboard***

**Our Job No. 0813**

### **INDEX**

- 1. SOFT STARTERS**
- 2. GRAPHIC DISPLAY**
- 3. RADIO**
- 4. LEVEL TRANSDUCER**
- 5. PRESSURE TRANSDUCER**
- 6. MISCELLANEOUS**
- 7. DRAWINGS**

***By - Whelan Electrical Services Pty Ltd***  
***1 Harvest Street***  
***YANDINA QLD 4561***

***Phone No. 5446 7133***  
***Fax No. 5446 8118***

Ref:MANUAL.0813







# Emotron MSF 2.0 Softstarter



Instruction manual  
English

**emotron®**  
**DEDICATED DRIVE**

Valid for the following softstarter models:  
MSF 2.0

## **MSF 2.0**

### **SOFTSTARTER**

#### **Instruction manual**

Document number: 01-4135-01

Edition: r1

Date of release: 25-07-2007

© Copyright Emotron AB 2000-2007

Emotron retains the right to change specifications and illustrations in the text, without prior notification. The contents of this document may not be copied without the explicit permission of Emotron AB.

# Safety instructions

## Safety

The softstarter should be installed in a cabinet or in an electrical control room.

- The device must be installed by trained personnel.
- Disconnect all power sources before servicing.
- Always use standard commercial fuses, slow blow e.g. gG types, to protect the wiring and prevent short circuiting. To protect the thyristors against short-circuit currents, superfast semiconductor fuses can be used if preferred. The normal guarantee is valid even if superfast semiconductor fuses are not used.

## Operating and maintenance personnel

1. Read the whole Instruction Manual before installing and putting the equipment into operation.
2. During all work (operation, maintenance, repairs, etc.) observe the switch-off procedures given in this instruction as well as any other operating instruction for the driven machine or system. See Emergency below.
3. The operator must avoid any working methods which reduce the safety of the device.
4. The operator must do what he can to ensure that no unauthorised person is working on the device.
5. The operator must immediately report any changes to the device which reduce its safety to the user.
6. The user must undertake all necessary measures to operate the device in perfect condition only.

## Installation of spare parts

We expressly point out that any spare parts and accessories not supplied by us have also not been tested or approved by us.

Installing and/or using such products can have a negative effect on the characteristics designed for your device. The manufacturer is not liable for damage arising as a result of using non-original parts and accessories.

## Emergency

You can switch the device off at any time with the mains switch connected before the softstarter (both motor and control supply voltage must be switched off).

## Dismantling and scrapping

The enclosure of the softstarter is made of recyclable material such as aluminium, iron and plastic. Legal requirements for disposal and recycling of these materials must be complied with.

The softstarter contains a number of components demanding special treatment, such as thyristors for example. The circuit boards contain small amounts of tin and lead. Legal requirements for the disposal and recycling of these materials must be complied with.

## General warnings



**WARNING!** Make sure that all safety measures have been taken before starting the motor in order to avoid personal injury.



**WARNING!** Never operate the softstarter with the front cover removed.



**WARNING!** Make sure that all safety measures have been taken before switching on the power supply.





# Contents

<b>1.</b>	<b>General Information .....</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>8.</b>	<b>Functional description.....</b>	<b>43</b>
1.1	How to use the Instruction Manual .....	5	8.1	General settings .....	44
1.2	Integrated safety systems .....	5	8.2	Motor data .....	45
1.3	Safety measures .....	5	8.3	Motor protection.....	46
1.4	Notes to the Instruction Manual .....	5	8.4	Parameter set handling .....	51
1.5	Type number.....	5	8.5	Autoreset .....	52
1.6	Standards .....	6	8.6	Serial communication .....	54
1.7	Tests in accordance with norm EN 60204 standard.....	6	8.7	Operation settings.....	55
1.8	Transport and packing.....	6	8.8	Process protection .....	69
1.9	Unpacking MSF-310 and larger types .....	6	8.9	I/O settings .....	77
1.10	Glossary .....	7	8.10	View operation.....	91
<b>2.</b>	<b>Description.....</b>	<b>9</b>	8.11	Alarm list.....	94
2.1	Background theory .....	9	8.12	Softstarter data .....	95
2.2	Reduced voltage starting.....	10	<b>9.</b>	<b>Protection and alarm .....</b>	<b>97</b>
2.3	Other starting methods.....	12	9.1	Alarm codes.....	97
2.4	Use of softstarters with torque control .....	13	9.2	Alarm actions.....	97
<b>3.</b>	<b>Mounting.....</b>	<b>15</b>	9.3	Reset.....	97
3.1	Installation of the softstarter in a cabinet.....	15	9.4	Alarm overview .....	98
<b>4.</b>	<b>Connections .....</b>	<b>19</b>	<b>10.</b>	<b>Troubleshooting .....</b>	<b>101</b>
4.1	Connecting mains and motor cables .....	20	10.1	Fault, cause and solution .....	101
4.2	Control Connection .....	24	<b>11.</b>	<b>Maintenance .....</b>	<b>105</b>
4.3	Minimum wiring.....	25	11.1	Regular maintenance .....	105
4.4	Wiring examples.....	25	<b>12.</b>	<b>Options .....</b>	<b>107</b>
<b>5.</b>	<b>How to get started .....</b>	<b>27</b>	12.1	Serial communication .....	107
5.1	Checklist .....	27	12.2	Fieldbus systems.....	107
5.2	Applications .....	27	12.3	External control panel.....	107
5.3	Motor data .....	28	12.4	Terminal clamp.....	108
5.4	Start and stop.....	28	<b>13.</b>	<b>Technical data .....</b>	<b>109</b>
5.5	Setting the start command.....	29	13.1	Electrical specifications.....	109
5.6	Viewing the motor current .....	29	13.2	General electrical specifications .....	114
5.7	Starting .....	29	13.3	Fuses and power losses .....	115
<b>6.</b>	<b>Applications and functions selection .....</b>	<b>31</b>	13.4	Mechanical specifications including mechanical drawings .....	116
6.1	Softstarter rating according to AC53a .....	31	13.5	Derating at higher temperature .....	117
6.2	Softstarter rating according to AC53b .....	31	13.6	Environmental conditions.....	117
6.3	The Applications Rating List .....	32	13.7	Standards .....	117
6.4	The Application Functions List .....	34	13.8	Power- and signal connectors .....	118
6.5	Special conditions.....	36	13.9	Semi-conductor fuses .....	119
<b>7.</b>	<b>Operation of the softstarter.....</b>	<b>39</b>	<b>14.</b>	<b>Set-up menu list .....</b>	<b>121</b>
7.1	General description of user interface .....	39			
7.2	Control panel .....	39			
7.3	LED indication .....	40			
7.4	The menu structure.....	40			
7.5	The keys.....	40			
7.6	Control panel lock .....	41			
7.7	Overview of softstarter operation and parameter set- up .....	42			



# 1. General information

This manual describes the Emotron Softstarter MSF 2.0.

## 1.1 How to use the Instruction Manual

This instruction manual tells you how to install and operate the softstarter MSF 2.0. Read the whole Instruction Manual before installing and putting the unit into operation.

Once you are familiar with the softstarter, you can operate it from the control panel by referring to chapter 5. page 27. This chapter describes all the functions and possible settings.

## 1.2 Integrated safety systems

The device is equipped with a protection system which reacts to:

- Over temperature
- Voltage unbalance
- Over- and under voltage
- Phase reversal
- Phase loss
- Motor overload protection thermal and PTC.
- Motor load monitor, protecting machine or process maximum or minimum alarm
- Starts per hour limitation

The softstarter is equipped with a connection for protective earth  $\perp$  (PE).

All MSF 2.0 softstarters are IP 20 enclosed types, except MSF-1000 and MSF-1400 which are delivered as open chassis IP00.

## 1.3 Safety measures

These instructions are a constituent part of the device and must be:

- Available to competent personnel at all times.
- Read prior to installation of the device.
- Observed with regard to safety, warnings and information given.

The tasks in these instructions are described so that they can be understood by people trained in electrical engineering. Such personnel must have appropriate tools and testing instruments available. Such personnel must have been trained in safe working methods.

The safety measures laid down in DIN standard VDE 0100 must be guaranteed.

The user must obtain any general and local operating permits and meet any requirements regarding:

- Personnel safety
- Product disposal
- Environmental protection

**NOTE!** The safety measures must remain in force at all times. Should questions or uncertainties arise, please contact your local sales outlet.

## 1.4 Notes to the Instruction Manual

**NOTE:** Additional information as an aid to avoiding problems.



**CAUTION:** Failure to follow these instructions can result in malfunction or damage to the softstarter.



**WARNING:** Failure to follow these instructions can result in serious injury to the user in addition to serious damage to the softstarter.

### Important

For all enquiries and spare parts orders, please quote the correct name of the device and serial number to ensure that your inquiry or order is dealt with correctly and swiftly.

## 1.5 Type number

Fig. 1, page 5 gives an example of the type code number used for an Emotron MSF Softstarter. With this code number the exact type of the softstarter can be determined. This identification will be required for type specific information when mounting and installing. The code number is located on the product label, on the front of the unit.

MSF	-017	525	2	C	V	N
1	2	3	4	5	6	7

Fig. 1 Type number.

Table 1

Position	Configuration parameter	Description
1	Softstarter type	MSF 2.0 type, Fixed
2	Motor current	017-1400 A
3	Mains supply voltage	525 V 690 V
4	Control supply voltage	2=100-240 V 5=380-500 V
5	Control panel option	C=Standard, no external control panel H=External control panel
6	Coated boards option	-=No coated boards V=Coated boards
7	Communication option	N=No COM included S=RS232/485 included D=DeviceNet included P=Profibus included

## 1.6 Standards

The device is manufactured in accordance with these regulations:

- IEC 60947-4-2
- EN 60204-1, Safety of Machinery, Electrical equipment of machines, part 1, General requirements and VDE 0113.
- EN 61000-6-4, EMC, Emission standard for industrial environments
- EN 61000-6-3, EMC, Emission standard for residential, commercial and light-industrial environments
- EN 61000-6-2, EMC, Immunity for industrial environments
- GOST
- UL 508

## 1.7 Tests in accordance with norm EN 60204 standard

Before leaving the factory, the device was subjected to the following tests:

- Through connection of earthing system:
  - a) visual inspection.
  - b) check that earthing wire is firmly connected.
- Insulation
- Voltage
- Function

## 1.8 Transport and packing

The device is packed in a carton or plywood box for delivery. The outer packaging can be recycled. The devices are carefully checked and packed before dispatch, but transport damage cannot be ruled out.

### Check on receipt

Check that the goods are complete as listed on the delivery note, see type no. etc. on the rating plate.

### Is the packaging damaged?

Check the goods for damage (visual check).

### If you have cause for complaint

If the goods have been damaged during transport:

- Contact the transport company or the supplier immediately.
- Keep the packaging (for inspection by the transport company or for returning the device).

### Packaging for returning the device

Pack the device so that it will resist shock and impact.

### Intermediate storage

After delivery or after it has been dismantled, the device can be stored before further use in a dry room.

## 1.9 Unpacking MSF-310 and larger types

The MSF 2.0 softstarter is attached to the plywood box/ loading stool by screws, and the softstarter must be unpacked as follows:

1. Open only the securing plates at the bottom of the box (bend downwards). Then lift up the box from the loading stool, both top and sides in one piece.
2. Loosen the three (3) screws on the front cover of the softstarter unit, down by the lower logo.
3. Push up the front cover about 20 mm so that the front cover can be removed.
4. Remove the two (2) mounting screws at the bottom of the softstarter.
5. Lift up the softstarter unit at the bottom about 10 mm and then push backwards about 20 mm so that the softstarter can be removed from the mounting hooks\* at the top. The hooks are placed under the bottom plate and cannot be removed until the softstarter is pulled out.
6. Loosen the two screws (2) for the mounting hooks and remove the hooks.
7. The hooks are used as an upper support for mounting the softstarter.

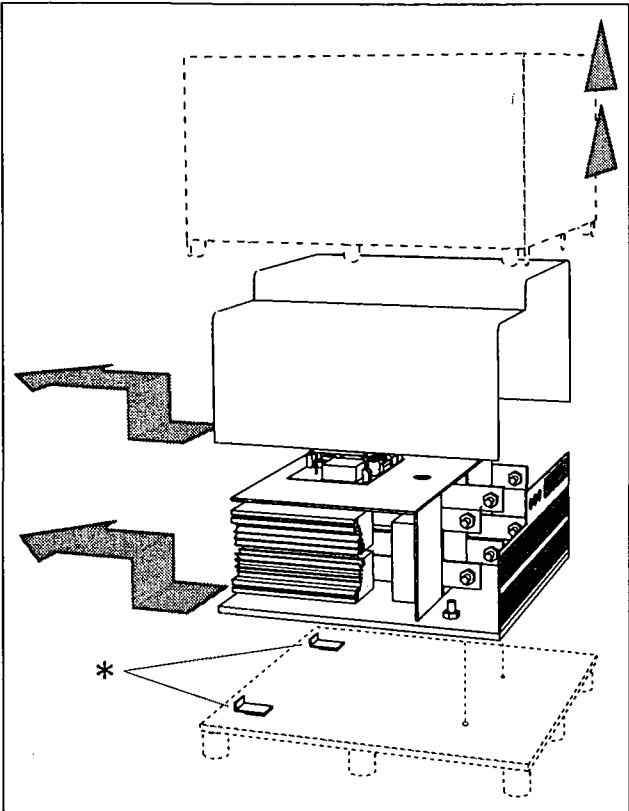


Fig. 2    *Unpacking MSF-310 and larger models.*

1.10    **Glossary**

1.10.1    **Abbreviations**

In this manual the following abbreviations are used:

Table 2    *Abbreviations*

Abbreviation	Description
FLC	Full load current
DOL	Direct on-line

1.10.2    **Definitions**

In this manual the following definitions for current, voltage, power, torque and speed are used:

Table 3    *Definitions*

Name	Description	Unit
$I_{nsoft}$	Nominal softstarter current	A
$P_{nsoft}$	Nominal softstarter power	kW, HP
$N_{nsoft}$	Nominal softstarter speed	rpm
$T_n$	Nominal motor torque	Nm, lbft
$U_n$	Nominal motor voltage	V
$I_n$	Nominal motor current	A
$P_n$	Nominal motor power	kw, HP
$P_{normal}$	Normal load	% of $P_n$



## 2. Description

In this chapter different starting methods for induction motors are explained and compared. The functionality of softstarters with torque control and their advantages and limitations compared to other starting methods are explained.

First a brief account of the background theory of starting induction motors will be given in section 2.1. Thereafter the different starting methods based on the usage of reduced voltage will be described and compared. This chapter will also cover softstarters with torque control. In section 2.3 some common starting methods based on other physical principles are explained. With this information some limitations of the reduced voltage starters will become clear. In section 2.4 there is a brief analysis of which applications may benefit from using a softstarter.

### 2.1 Background theory

The following two sections deal with motors with squirrel-cage rotors. In contrast to a wound rotor, the squirrel-cage rotor consists of straight conductors, which are short-circuited together at both ends.

When such a motor is connected directly to the line voltage it will typically draw a starting current of about 5 to 8 times its nominal current while the resulting starting torque will be about 0.5 to 1.5 times its nominal torque. In the following picture a typical starting characteristic is shown. The x-axis represents the speed relative to the nominal speed while the y-axis shows the torque and the current respectively, even those normalized to their nominal values. The dashed line indicates the nominal values.

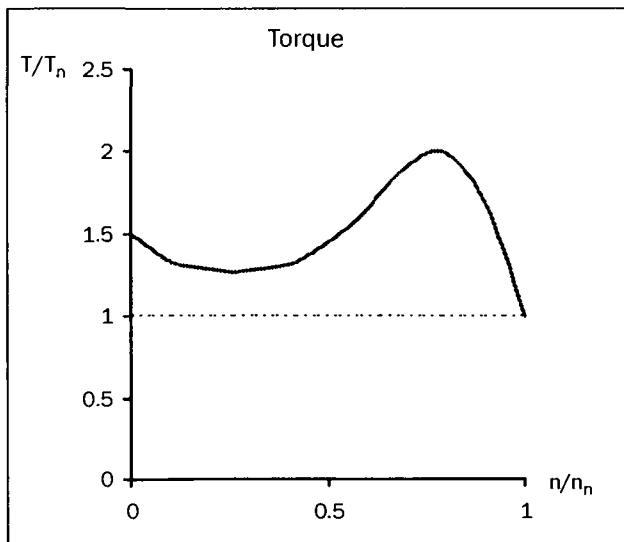


Fig. 3 Typical torque characteristics for the DOL start

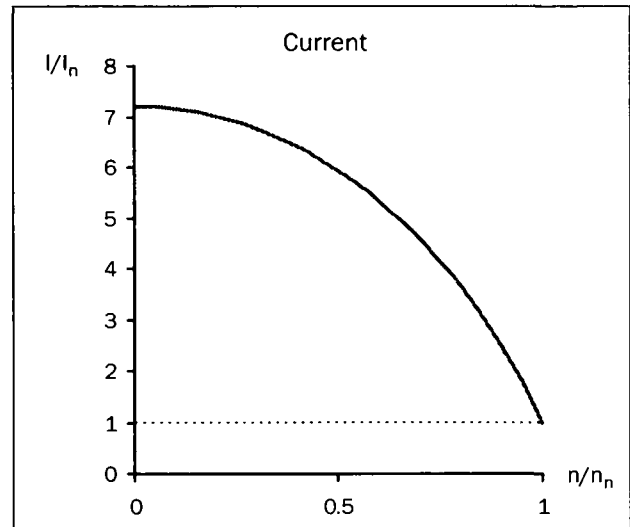


Fig. 4 Typical current characteristics for the DOL start

For many industrial applications direct on-line starting is not convenient, as the supply in this case has to be dimensioned to deliver the unnecessarily high starting current. Moreover, most applications do not gain anything from the high starting torque. Instead there is a risk of mechanical wear or even damage because of the resulting jerk at speed-up.

The acceleration torque is determined by the difference between motor and load torque. The figure below shows some typical torque characteristics for constant speed applications. For comparative purposes, the induction motors' torque characteristic is added to the diagram.

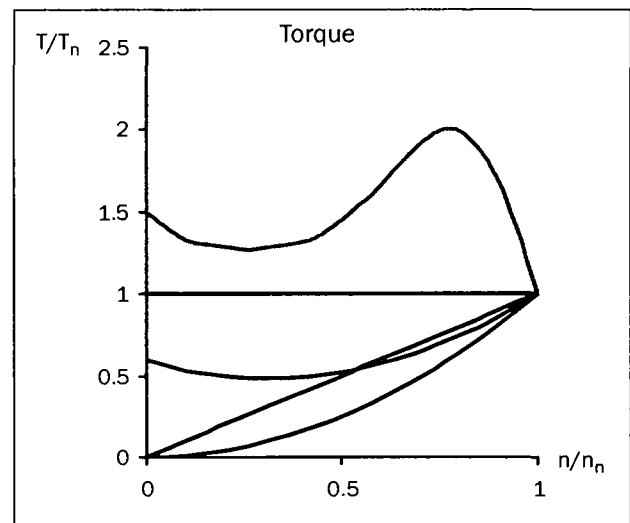


Fig. 5 Typical load torque characteristics

Typical applications with constant load are elevators, cranes and conveyors. Linear load characteristics are found for calendar rollers and smoothing machines; quadratic correlation between speed and torque is typical for pumps and fans.



Some applications like conveyors or screws may need an initial torque boost. However, for many applications it can be seen that the torque needed is much lower than the torque delivered by the induction motor in a DOL start.

A common method to reduce both starting torque and current is to decrease the motor voltage during starting. The following figure shows how the motor's torque and current characteristics are changed when the supply voltage is reduced.

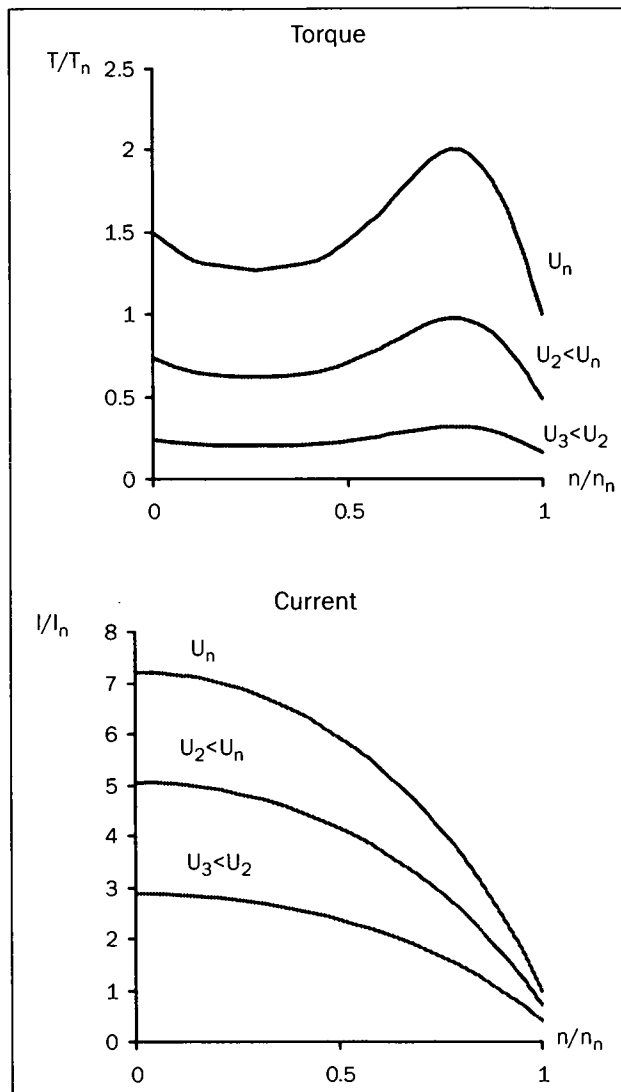


Fig. 6 Reduced voltage start

A general rule of thumb is that the torque at each operating point is roughly proportional to the square of the current. This means when the motor current is decreased by a factor of two by means of reducing the supply voltage, the torque delivered by the motor will be decreased by a factor of four (approximately).

$$T \sim I^2$$

$$I_{LV} = 1/2 I_{DOL} \rightarrow T_{LV} \approx 1/4 T_{DOL}$$

$$I_{LV} = 1/3 I_{DOL} \rightarrow T_{LV} \approx 1/9 T_{DOL}$$

LV=low voltage

DOL=Direct on line

This relationship is the base for any starting method using reduced voltage. It can be seen that the possibility of reducing the starting current depends on the correlation between the motor's and the load's torque characteristic. For the combination of an application with very low starting load and a motor with very high starting torque, the starting current may be reduced significantly by means of decreasing the voltage during start. However, for applications with high starting load it may – depending on the actual motor – not be possible to reduce the starting current at all.

## 2.2 Reduced voltage starting

This section describes different starting methods which are based on the reduced-voltage principle explained above. A pump and its quadratic torque characteristic are used as an example.

The star-delta starter is the simplest example of a reduced voltage starter. The motor phases are first star connected; at about 75% of nominal speed the phase connection is then changed to delta. To enable star-delta start, both ends of all three motor windings have to be available for connection. Moreover, the motor has to be dimensioned for the (higher) voltage in the delta connection. The following figure shows the resulting torque and current characteristics.

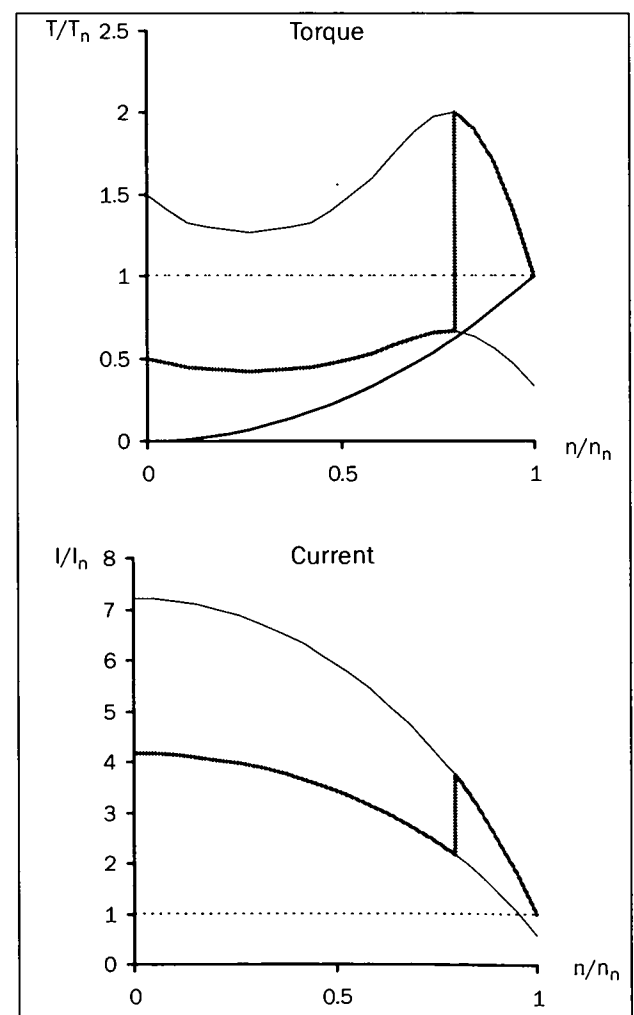


Fig. 7 Star-delta start

The disadvantage of the star-delta start is that it cannot be adapted to a special application. Both the voltage in star and in delta connection are defined by the supply, the resulting starting performance depends on the motor's DOL characteristic. For some applications the star-delta starter cannot be used as the resulting torque in star connection is too low to start rotating the load. On the other hand for low load applications further savings of starting current are impossible even though a big torque reserve is available. Moreover, the resulting abrupt rise of torque first at start and later when changing from star to delta connection may contribute to mechanical wear. The high transient currents during start-delta transition create unnecessary excess heat in the motor.

Better performance is achieved with a voltage ramp start, which a simple electronic softstarter can provide. The voltage is increased linearly from an initial value to the full supply voltage by means of phase angle control. The resulting torque and current characteristics are shown in the following figure.

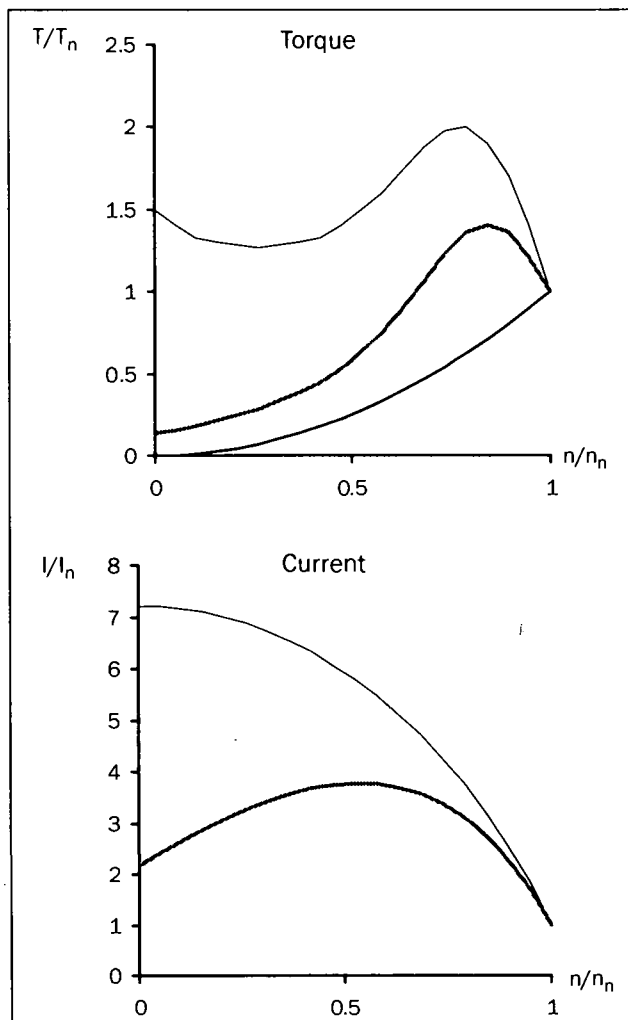


Fig. 8 Soft starting – voltage ramp

Obviously a much smoother start is realized compared to the star-delta start and the starting current is decreased.

A softstarter is often used to keep the starting current below a desired level. For the example above, setting a current limit of three times the nominal current may be desirable. The following figure shows the resulting torque and current characteristics.

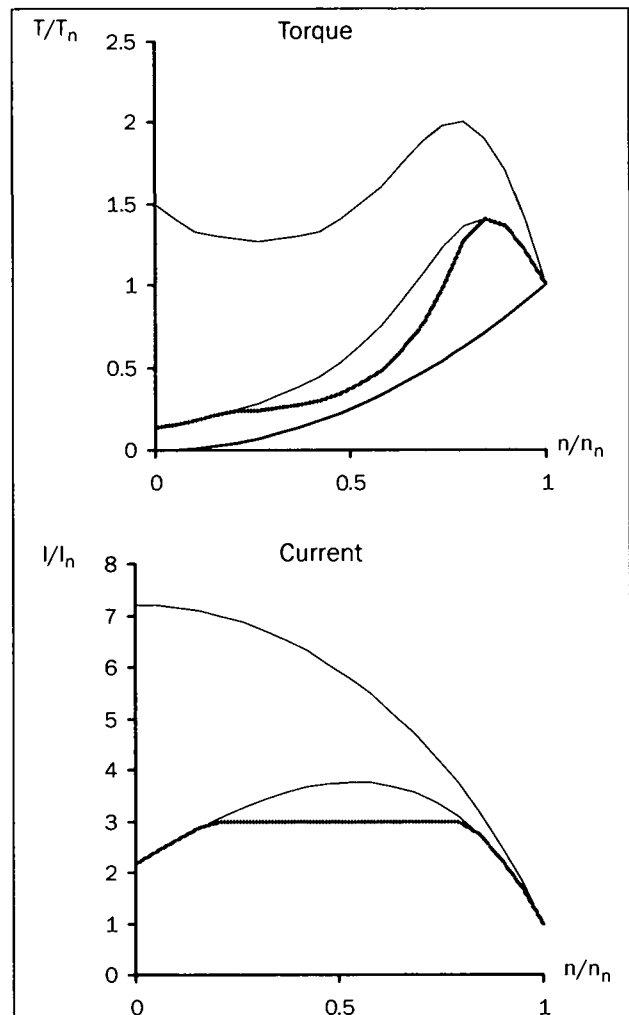


Fig. 9 Soft starting – voltage ramp with current limit

Once again the figure illustrates that the resulting performance depends on the combination of motor and load characteristics. In the example above the motor torque is close to the load torque at about half speed. This means for some other applications with different load characteristics (for example a linear torque-speed correlation) this particular motor would need more than three times the nominal current to start.

The most sophisticated electronic softstarters use torque control, which results in an almost constant acceleration during the start. A low starting current is also achieved. However, even this start method uses reduced motor voltage and the quadratic correlation between current and torque described in the first section of this chapter is still valid. This means, the lowest possible starting current is determined by the combination of motor and load characteristics.

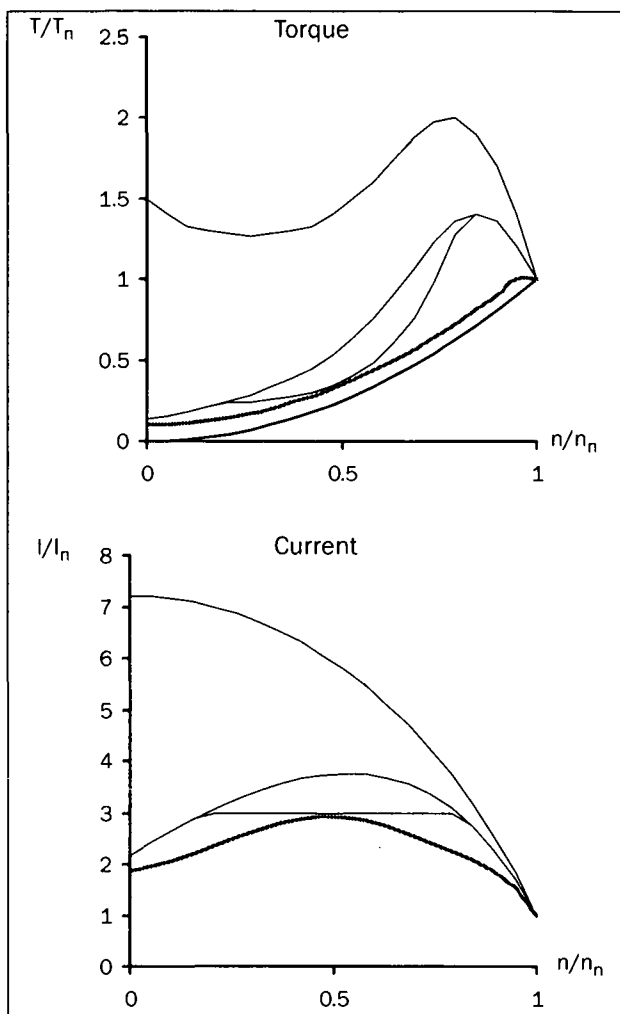


Fig. 10 Soft starting – torque control

For optimal starting performance, correct setting of the soft-starter's parameters such as initial torque and end torque at start and start time is important. The choice of parameters is explained in detail in section 8.7, page 55.

## 2.3 Other starting methods

In contrast to the preceding sections of this chapter, which focused on squirrel-cage motors, slip-ring motors are dealt with later on. A slip-ring motor is equipped with a wound rotor; one end of each rotor winding is available for external connection via slip-rings. These motors are often optimized for rotor resistance starting, e.g. with short-circuited rotor windings they develop a very low torque at an extremely high current. For starting external resistances are connected to the rotor windings. During the start, the resistance value is decreased in several steps until the rotor windings are short-circuited at nominal speed. The following figure shows typical torque and current characteristics for a slip-ring motor during the start with an external rotor-resistance starter.

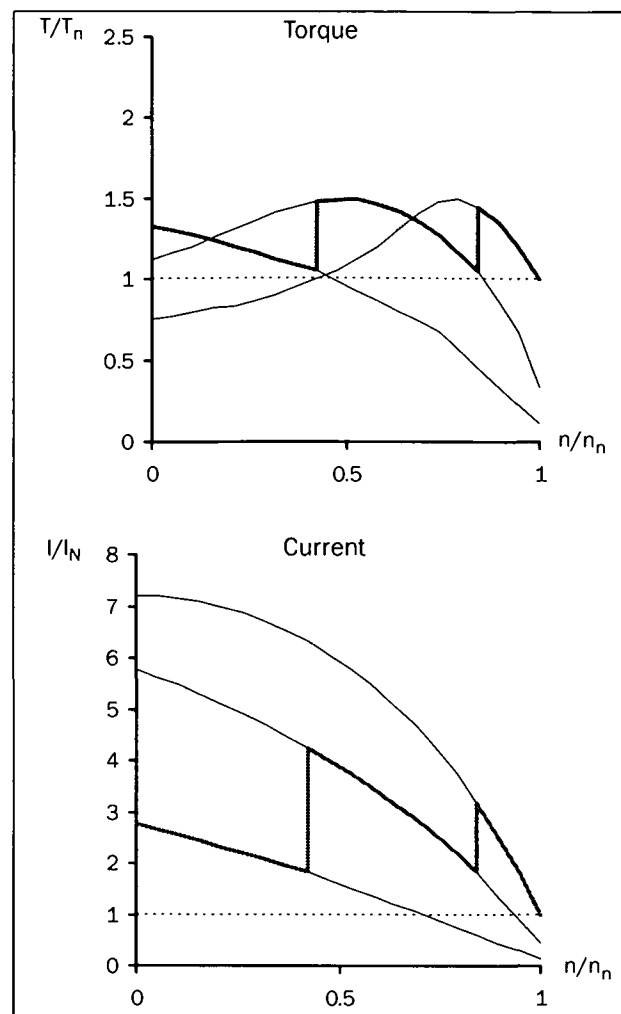


Fig. 11 Rotor-resistance starting

Because of the low starting torque it is often not possible to short-circuit the rotor windings and replace the rotor-resistance starter with a softstarter. However, it is always possible to use a frequency inverter instead. The following illustration shows how the torque and current characteristics are affected when the stator frequency is changed.

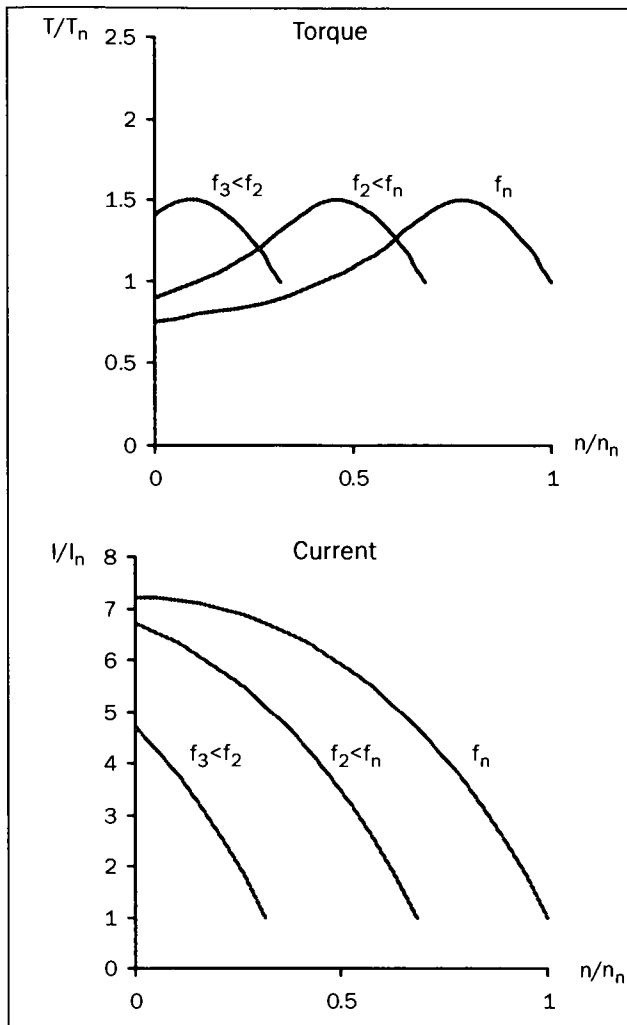


Fig. 12 Voltage/frequency regulation

Thus, such a motor can be started with a quite simple frequency inverter with voltage-frequency regulation. This solution is even valid for all other applications, which for some reason (high load torque compared to motor torque etc.) cannot be started by a softstarter.

## 2.4 Use of softstarters with torque control

To determine if a specific application benefits from using a softstarter at all, the correlation between the motor's torque characteristic during the start and the load's requirements has to be evaluated. As it can be seen from the examples above, the application will only benefit from using a softstarter if the load torque during the start is clearly below the motor's starting capacity. However, even loads with a high initial release torque may profit from a softstarter. In this case an initial torque boost can be used, thereafter the start ramp is continued reducing the starting current considerably.

The profit can be maximized when using a softstarter with torque control. To be able to configure the torque control parameters for optimal performance, the load characteristics (linear, square or constant load, need of initial release torque) must be known. In this case a proper torque control method (linear or square) can be chosen and torque boost can be enabled if needed. A description of the load characteristics of several common applications and guidelines for proper settings are found in chapter 6, page 31, Applications and Functions Selection. Optimization of the torque control parameter is explained in detail in section 8.7, page 55.

---

14	Description	Emotron AB 01-4135-01r1
----	-------------	-------------------------

### 3. Mounting

This chapter describes how to mount the MSF 2.0 softstarter. Before mounting it is recommended that the installation be planned out first:

- Be sure that the softstarter suits the mounting location.
- The mounting site must support the weight of the softstarter.
- Will the softstarter continuously withstand vibrations and/or shocks?
- Consider using a vibration damper.
- Check ambient conditions, ratings, required cooling air flow, compatibility of the motor, etc.
- Do you know how the softstarter will be lifted and transported?

Make sure that the installation is performed in accordance with the local safety regulations of the electricity supply company. And in accordance with DIN VDE 0100 for setting up heavy current plants.

Care must be taken to ensure that personnel do not come into contact with live circuit components.



**WARNING!** Never operate the softstarter with the front cover removed.

#### 3.1 Installation of the softstarter in a cabinet

When installing the softstarter:

- Ensure that the cabinet will be sufficiently ventilated after the installation.
- Keep the minimum free space, see the tables on page 15.
- Ensure that air can flow freely from the bottom to the top.

**NOTE:** When installing the softstarter, make sure it does not come into contact with live components. The heat generated must be dispersed via the cooling fins to prevent damage to the thyristors (free circulation of air).

MSF-017 to MSF-835 are all delivered as enclosed versions with front opening. The units have bottom entry for cables etc. see Fig. 20 on page 21 and Fig. 22 on page 23. MSF-1000 and MSF-1400 are delivered as open chassis.

#### 3.1.1 Cooling

##### MSF-017 to MSF-250

Table 4 MSF-017 to MSF-250

MSF model	Minimum free space (mm):		
	above 1)	below	at side
-017, -030, -045	100	100	0
-060, -075, -085	100	100	0
-110, -145	100	100	0
-170, -210, -250	100	100	0
1) Above: wall-softstarter or softstarter-softstarter			

##### MSF-310 to MSF-1400

Table 5 MSF-310 to MSF-1400.

MSF model	Minimum free space (mm):		
	above 1)	below	at side
-310, -370, -450	100	100	0
-570, -710, -835	100	100	0
-1000, -1400	100	100	100
1) Above: Wall-softstarter or softstarter-softstarter			

### 3.1.2 Mounting schemes

MSF-017 to MSF-250

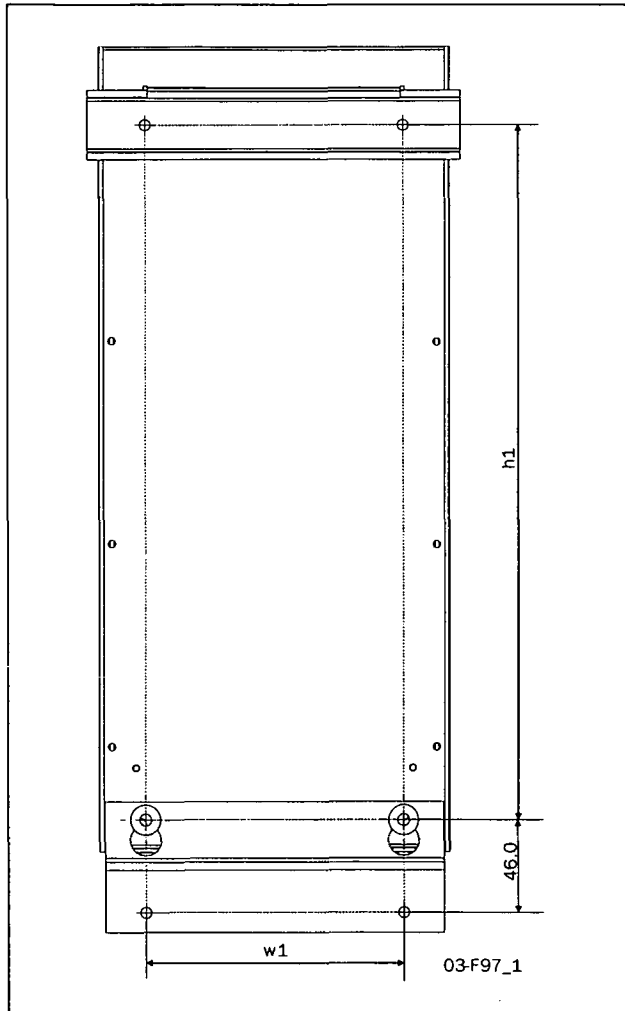


Fig. 13 Hole pattern for MSF-017 to MSF-250 (backside view).

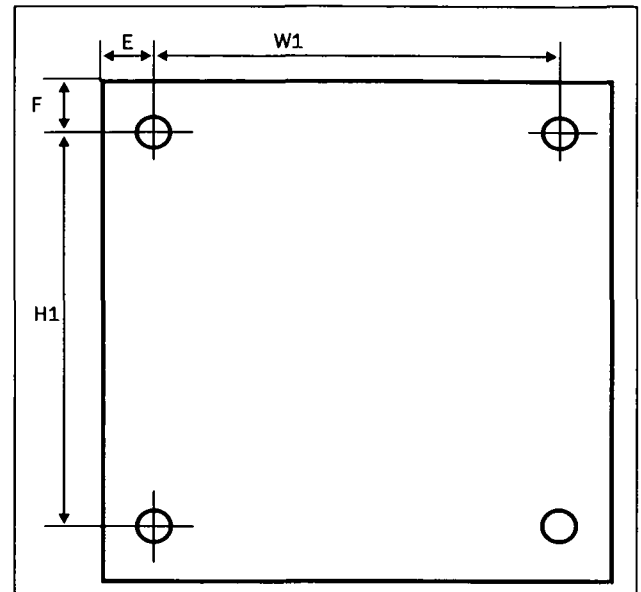


Fig. 14 Hole pattern for screw attachment, MSF-310 to MSF-835. Hole distance (mm).

Table 6

MSF Model	Hole distance w1 [mm]	Hole distance H1 [mm]	Hole distance E	Hole distance F	Diam./screw	Tightening torque for bolt [mm]		
						Cable	PE cable	Supply and PE
-017, -030, -045	78.5	265			5.5/M5	8	8	0.6
-060, -075, -085	78.5	265			5.5/M5	12	8	0.6
-110, -145	128.5	345			5.5/M5	20	12	0.6
-170, -210, -250	208.5	445			5.5/M5	20	12	0.6
-310, -370, -450	460	450	44	39	8.5/M8	50	12	0.6
-570, -710, -835	550	600	45.5	39	8.5/M8	50	12	0.6
-1000, -1400					8.5/M8	50	12	0.6

Observe that the two mounting hooks supplied (see section 1.9, page 6 and Fig. 2 on page 7) must be used for

mounting the softstarter as upper support (only MSF-310 to MSF-835).

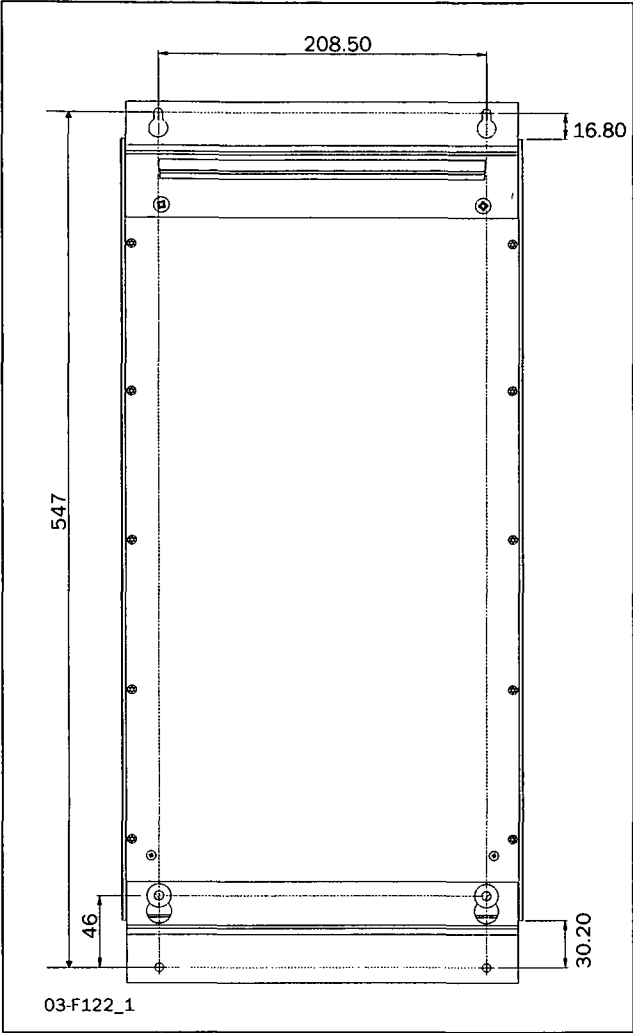


Fig. 15 Hole pattern for MSF-170 to MSF-250 with upper mounting bracket instead of DIN rail.

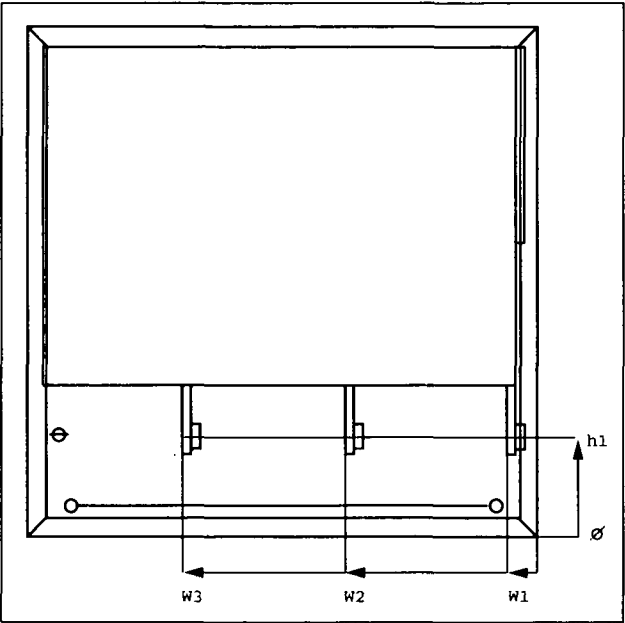


Fig. 16 Busbar distances MSF-310 to MSF-835.

Table 7 Busbar distances

MSF model	Dist. h1 (mm)	Dist. W1 (mm)	Dist. W2 (mm)	Dist. W3 (mm)
-310 to -450	104	33	206	379
-570 to -835	129	35	239.5	444
-1000 -1400		55	322.5	590.5



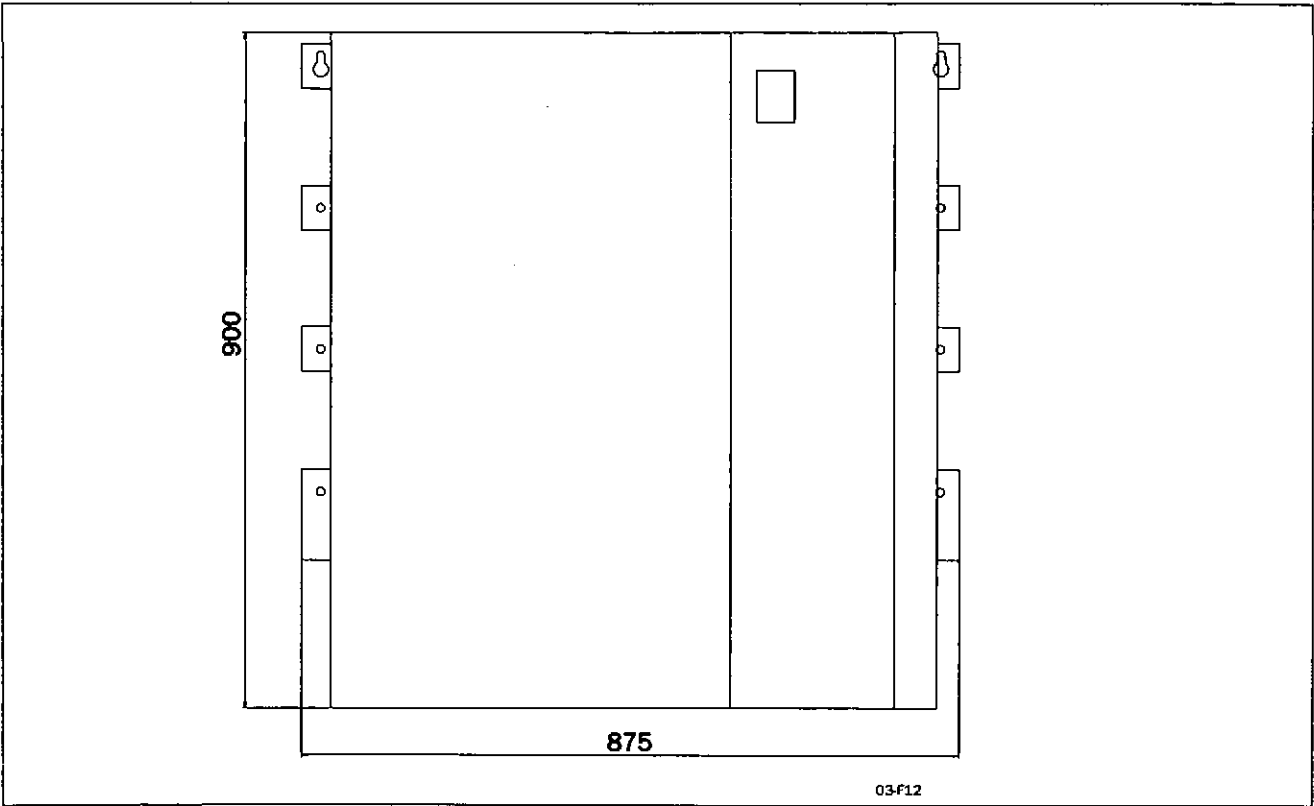


Fig. 17 MSF-1000 to MSF-1400

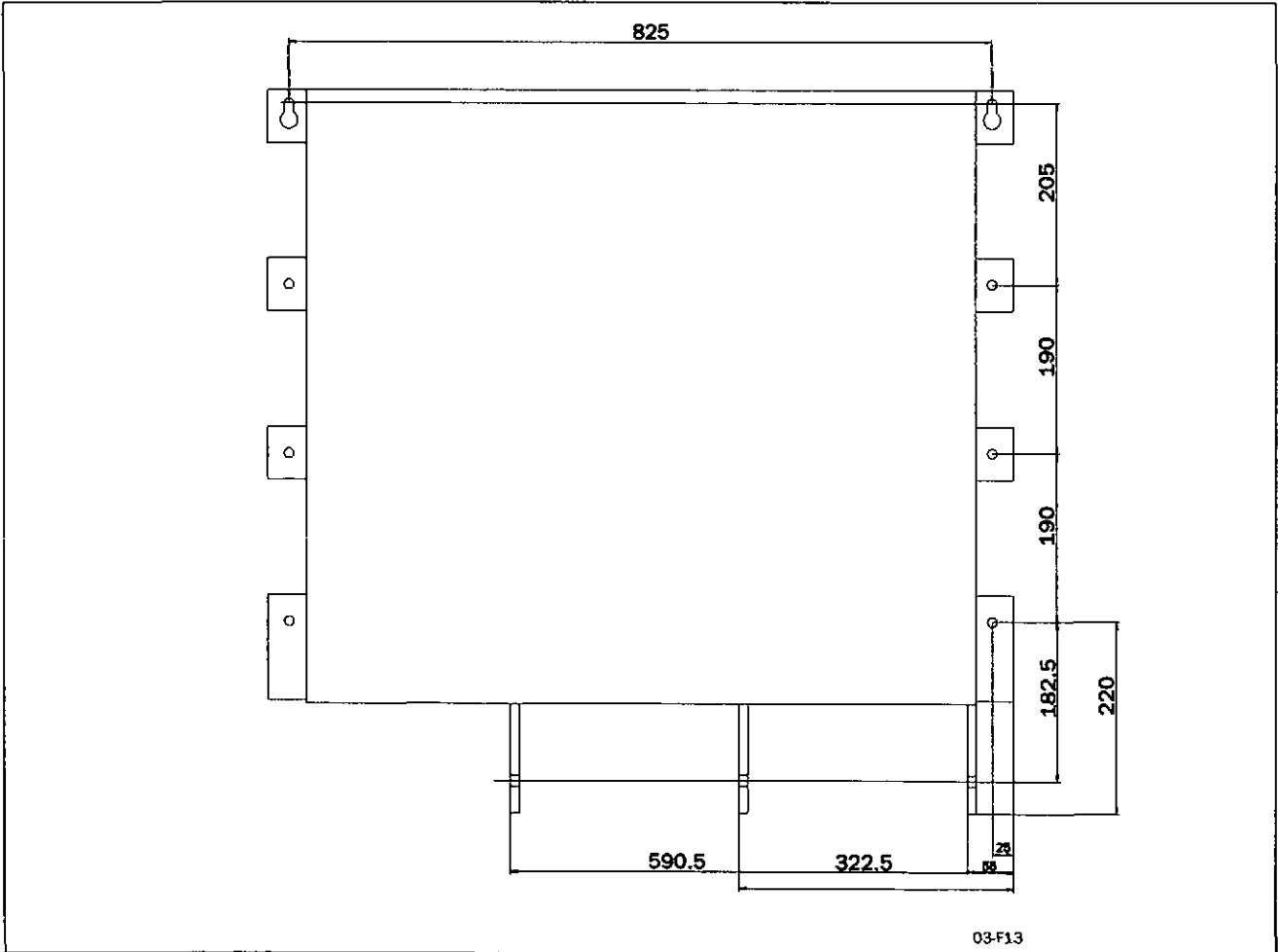


Fig. 18 Hole pattern busbar MSF-1000 to MSF-1400.

## 4. Connections

The description of installation in this chapter follows the EMC standards and the Machinery Directive.

If the softstarter is temporarily stored before being connected, please check the technical data for environmental conditions. If the softstarter is moved from a cold storage room to the room where it is to be installed, condensation can form on it. Allow the softstarter to become fully accli-

matized and wait until any visible condensation has evaporated before connecting the mains voltage.

---

**NOTE: The softstarter must be wired with shielded control cable to fulfil EMC regulations according to section 1.6, page 6.**

---

---

**NOTE: For UL-approval use 75° C Copper wire only.**

---

## 4.1 Connecting mains and motor cables

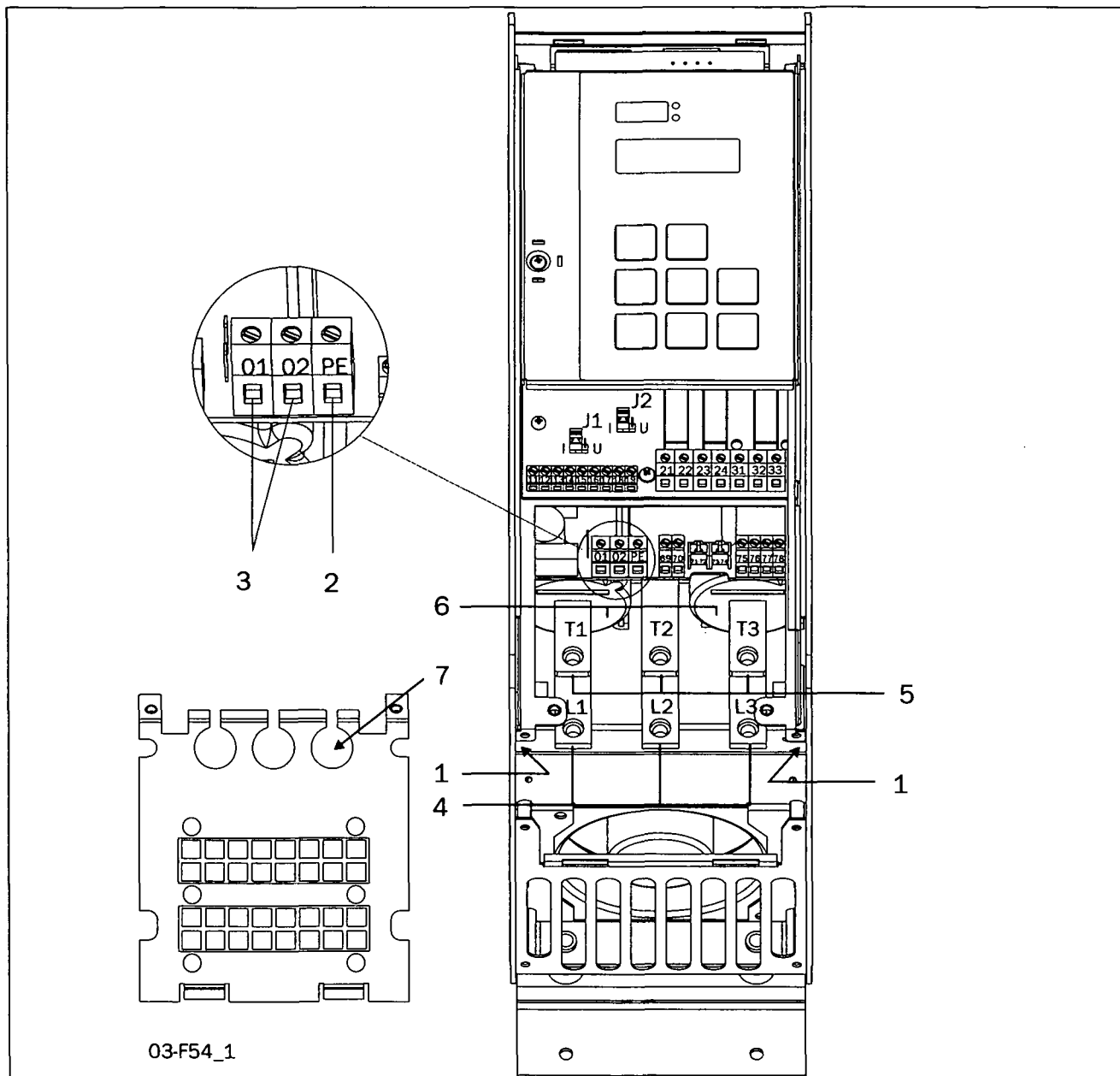


Fig. 19 Connection of MSF-017 to MSF-085.

### Connection of MSF-017 to MSF-085

7. Mounting of EMC gland for control cables

#### Device connections

1. Protective earth,  $\perp$  (PE), mains supply, motor (on the right and left inside of the cabinet)
2. Protective earth,  $\perp$  (PE), control supply voltage
3. Control supply voltage connection 01, 02
4. Mains supply L1, L2, L3
5. Motor power supply T1, T2, T3
6. Current transformers (can be mounted outside for bypass see section 8.7.5, page 67)

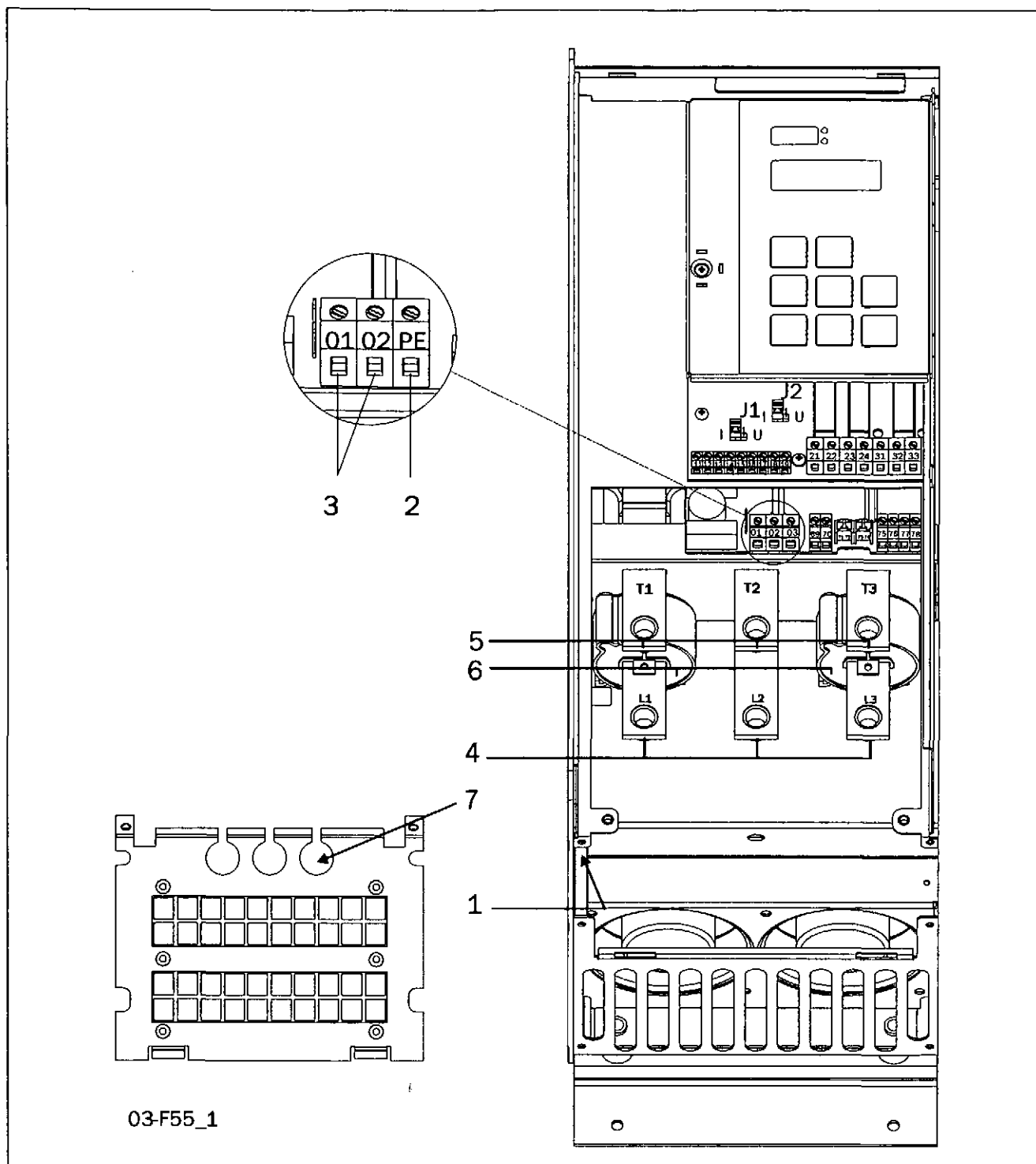


Fig. 20 Connection of MSF-110 to MSF-145.

## Connection of MSF-110 to MSF-145

### Device connections

1. Protective earth,  $\perp$  (PE), mains supply, motor (on the left inside of the cabinet)
2. Protective earth  $\perp$  (PE), control supply voltage
3. Control supply voltage connection 01, 02
4. Mains supply L1, L2, L3
5. Motor power supply T1, T2, T3
6. Current transformers (can be mounted outside for bypass see section 8.7.5, page 67)
7. Mounting of EMC gland for control cables

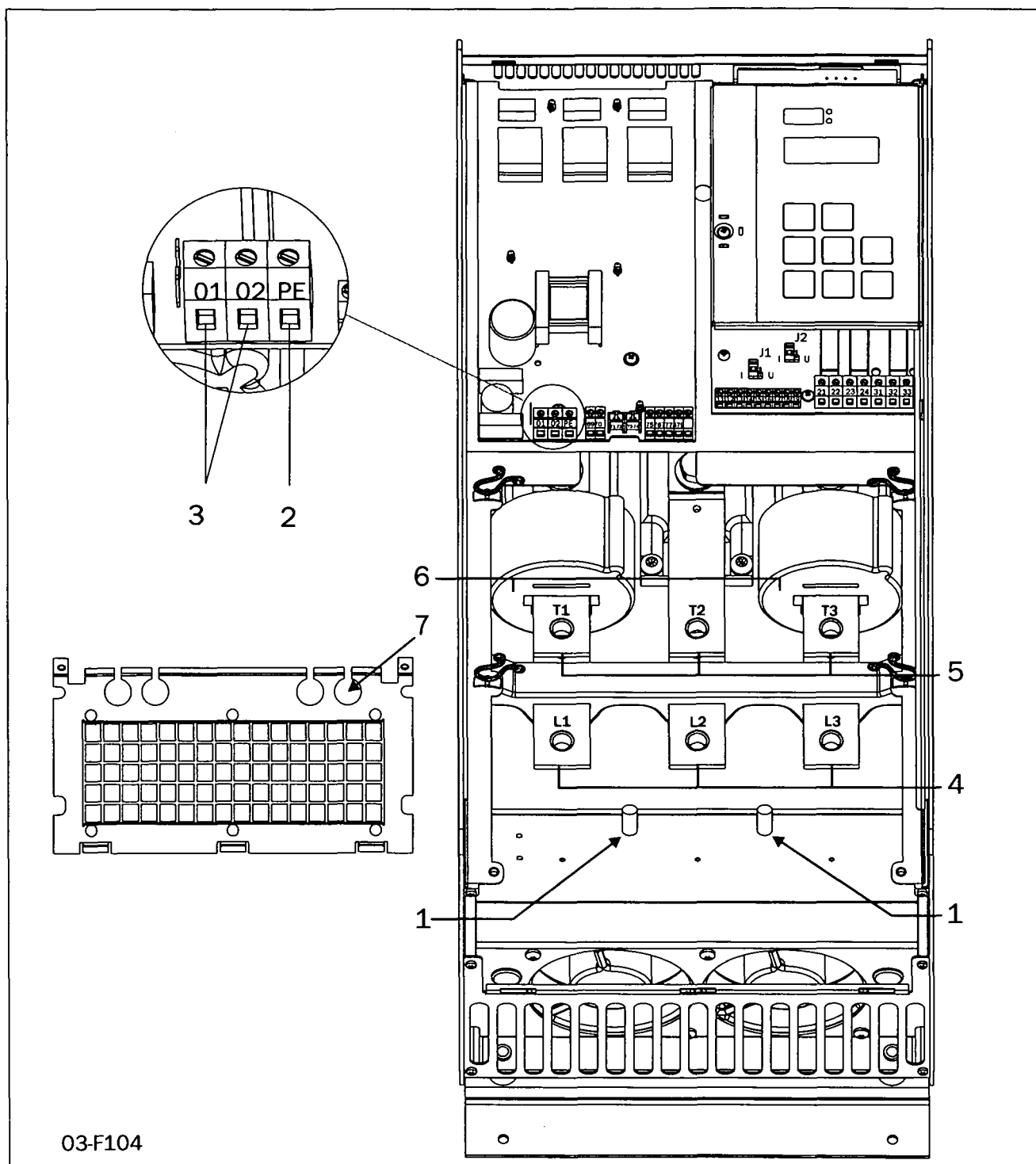


Fig. 21 Connection of MSF-170 to MSF-250.

## Connection of MSF-170 to MSF-250

### Device connections

1. Protective earth,  $\perp$  (PE), mains supply, motor (on the left inside of the cabinet)
2. Protective earth  $\perp$  (PE), control supply voltage
3. Control supply voltage connection 01, 02
4. Mains supply L1, L2, L3
5. Motor power supply T1, T2, T3
6. Current transformers (can be mounted outside for bypass see section 8.7.5, page 67)
7. Mounting of EMC gland for control cables

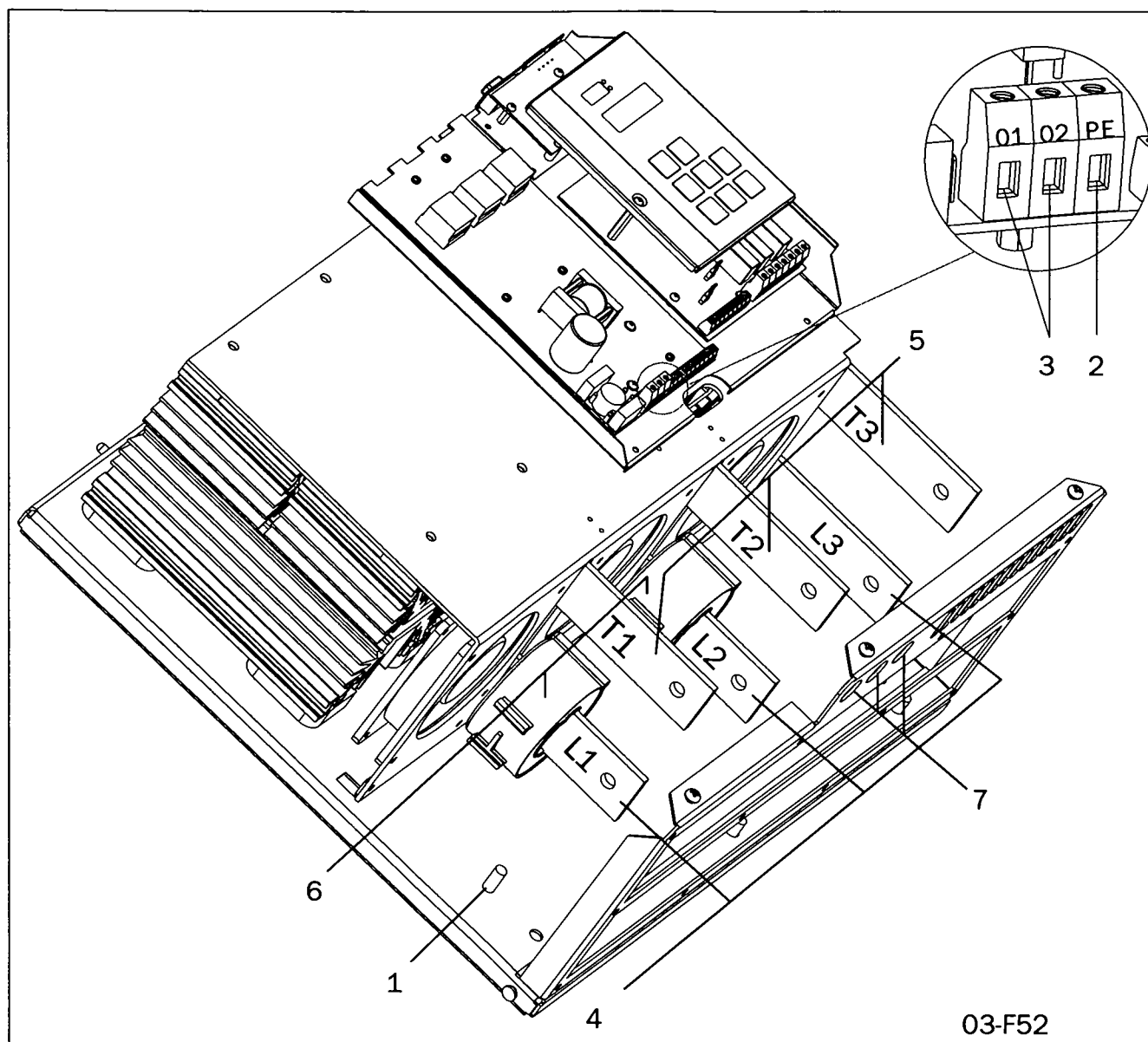


Fig. 22 Connection of MSF-310 to MSF-1400.

## Connection of MSF-310 to MSF-1400

### Device connections

1. Protective earth,  $\perp$  (PE), mains supply and motor
2. Protective earth,  $\perp$  (PE), control supply voltage
3. Control supply voltage connection 01, 02
4. Mains supply L1, L2, L3
5. Motor power supply T1, T2, T3
6. Current transformers (possible to mount outside for bypass see section 8.7.5, page 67)
7. Mounting of EMC gland for control cables

## 4.2 Control Connection

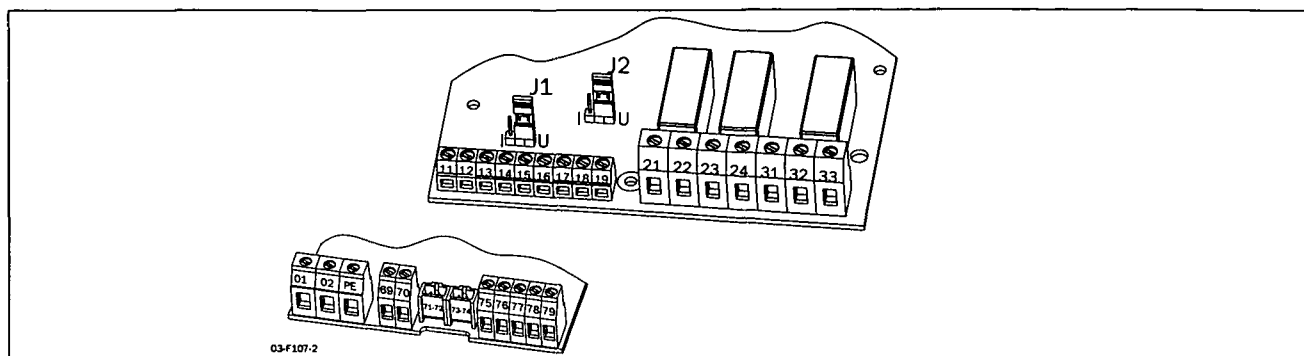


Fig. 23 PCB (control board) connections.

Table 8 PCB Terminals

Terminal	Function	Electrical characteristics
01	Control supply voltage	100-240 VAC $\pm 10\%$ alternative
02		380-500 VAC $\pm 10\%$ see rating plate
PE	Protective Earth	$\downarrow$
11	Digital input 1	0-3 V $\rightarrow$ 0; 8-27 V $\rightarrow$ 1.
12	Digital input 2	Max. 37 V for 10 sec. Impedance to 0 VDC: 2.2 k $\Omega$
13	Control signal supply voltage to PCB terminal 11 and 12, 10 k $\Omega$ potentiometer, etc.	+12 VDC $\pm 5\%$ . Max. current from +12 VDC: 50 mA. Short circuit-proof but not overload-proof.
14	Analogue input, 0-10 V, 2-10 V, 0-20 mA and 4-20 mA/digital input.	Impedance to terminal 15 (0 VDC) voltage signal: 125 k $\Omega$ , current signal: 100 $\Omega$ .
15	GND (common)	0 VDC
16	Digital input 3	0-3 V $\rightarrow$ 0; 8-27 V $\rightarrow$ 1.
17	Digital input 4	Max. 37 V for 10 sec. Impedance to 0 VDC: 2.2 k $\Omega$
18	Control signal supply voltage to PCB terminal 16 and 17, 10 k $\Omega$ potentiometer, etc.	+12 VDC $\pm 5\%$ . Max. current from +12 VDC = 50 mA. Short circuit-proof but not overload-proof.
19	Analogue output	Analogue output contact: 0-10 V, 2-10 V; min load impedance 700 $\Omega$ 0-20 mA and 4-20 mA; max load impedance 750 $\Omega$
21	Programmable relay K1. Factory setting is "Operation" with indication by closing terminal 21 to 22.	1-pole closing contact, 250 VAC 8 A or 24 VDC 8 A resistive, 250 VAC, 3 A inductive.
22		
23	Programmable relay K2. Factory setting is "Full voltage" with indication by closing terminals 23 to 24.	1-pole closing contact, 250 VAC 8 A or 24 VDC 8 A resistive, 250 VAC, 3 A inductive.
24		
31	Programmable relay K3. Factory setting is "All alarms". Indication by closing terminals 31 to 33 and opening terminals 32 to 33.	1-pole change-over contact, 250 VAC 8A or 24 VDC 8A resistive, 250 VAC, 3A inductive.
32		
33		
69-70	PTC Thermistor input	Alarm level 2.4 k $\Omega$ . Switch back level 2.2 k $\Omega$ .
71-72*	Clickson thermistor	Controlling softstarter cooling fan temperature MSF-310 - MSF-1400
73-74*	NTC thermistor	Temperature measuring of softstarter cooling fin
75	Current transformer input, cable S1 (blue)	Connection of L1 or T1 phase current transformer
76	Current transformer input, cable S1 (blue)	Connection of L3, T3 phase (MSF 017 to MSF 250) or L2, T2 phase (MSF 310 to MSF 1400)
77	Current transformer input, cable S2 (brown)	Common connection for terminals 75 and 76
78*	Fan connection	24 VDC
79*	Fan connection	0 VDC

\*Internal connection, no customer use.

### 4.3 Minimum wiring

The figure below shows the “minimum wiring”. See section 3.1.2, page 16, for tightening torque for bolts etc.

1. Connect Protective Earth (PE) to earth screw marked  $\perp$  (PE).
2. Connect the softstarter between the 3-phase mains supply and the motor. On the softstarter the mains side is marked L1, L2 and L3 and the motor side T1, T2 and T3.
3. Connect the control supply voltage (100-240 VAC) for the control card at terminals 01 and 02.
4. Connect PCB terminals 12 and 13 (PCB terminals 11 and 12 must be linked) e.g. to a 2-position switch (on/off) or a PLC, etc., to obtain control of soft start/stop (for factory configuration of the digital inputs).
5. Ensure the installation complies with the appropriate local regulations.

**NOTE!** The softstarter should be wired with a shielded control cable to fulfil the EMC regulations outlined in section 1.6, page 6.

**NOTE!** If local regulations say that a mains contactor should be used, relay K1 can control it. Always use standard commercial, slow blow fuses, e.g. gI or gG types, to protect the wiring and prevent short circuiting. To protect the thyristors against short-circuit currents, superfast semiconductor fuses can be used if preferred. The normal guarantee is valid even if superfast semiconductor fuses are not used. All signal inputs and outputs are galvanically insulated from the mains supply.

### 4.4 Wiring examples

Fig. 55 on page 79 gives an wiring example with the following functions:

- Analogue start/stop, see description on page 79.
- External control of parameter set, see section 8.9.6, page 90
- Analogue output, see “Analogue output” on page 82
- PTC input, see description of Thermal motor protection in section 8.3.1, page 46.

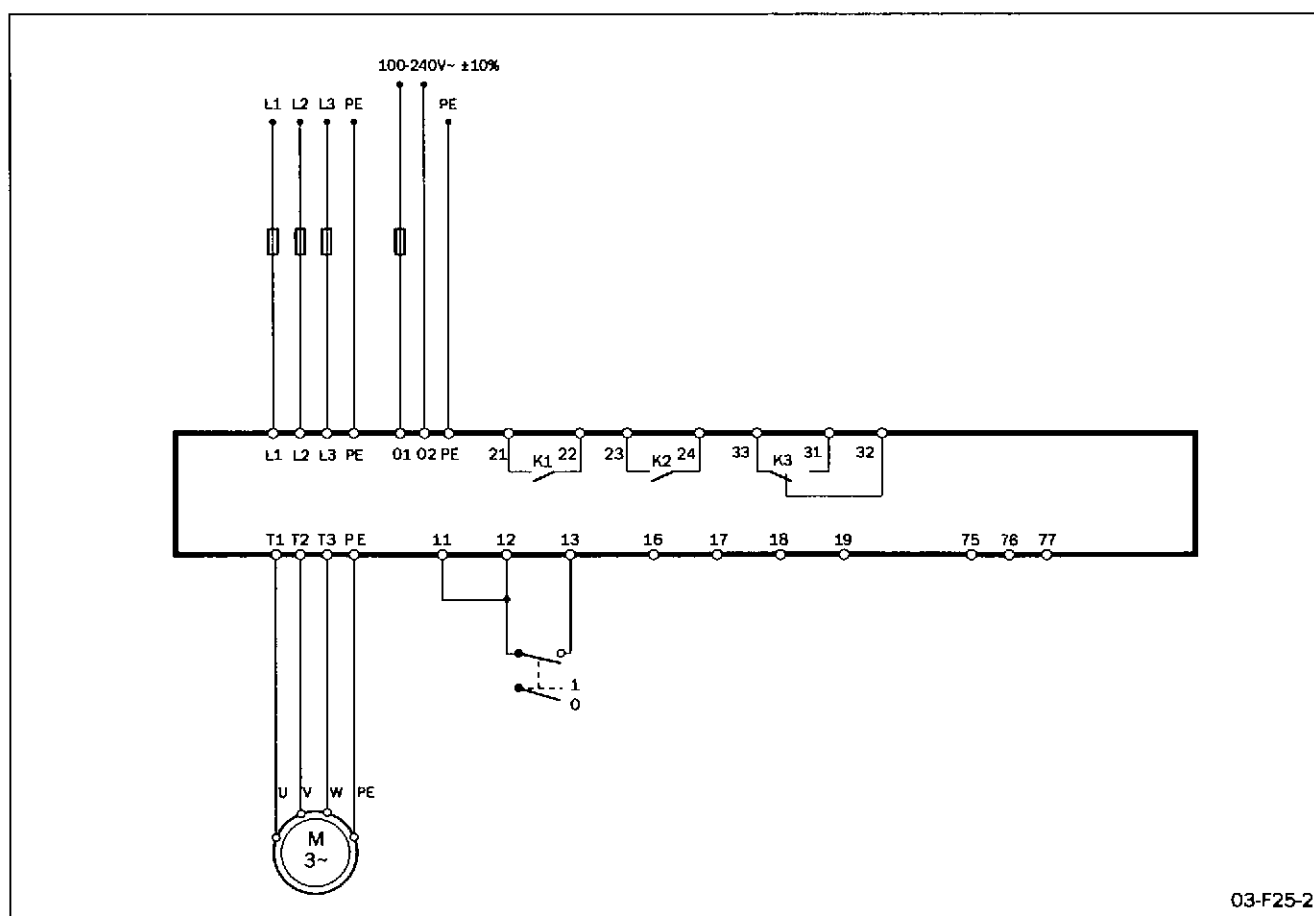


Fig. 24 Wiring circuit, “minimum wiring”.





## 5. How to get started

This chapter briefly describes the set-up for basic soft start and soft stop using the default "Torque control" function.



**WARNING! Mounting, wiring and setting the device into operation must be carried out by properly trained personnel.**

### 5.1 Checklist

- Mount the softstarter as set out in chapter 3. page 15.
- Consider the power loss at rated current when dimensioning a cabinet, max. ambient temperature is 40°C.
- Check that the motor and supply voltage corresponds to the values on the softstarter's rating plate.
- Connect the protective earth.
- Connect the motor circuit according to Fig. 25.
- Connect the control supply to terminals 01 and 02. The control supply voltage range is 100-240 VAC or 380-500 VAC, see rating plate.

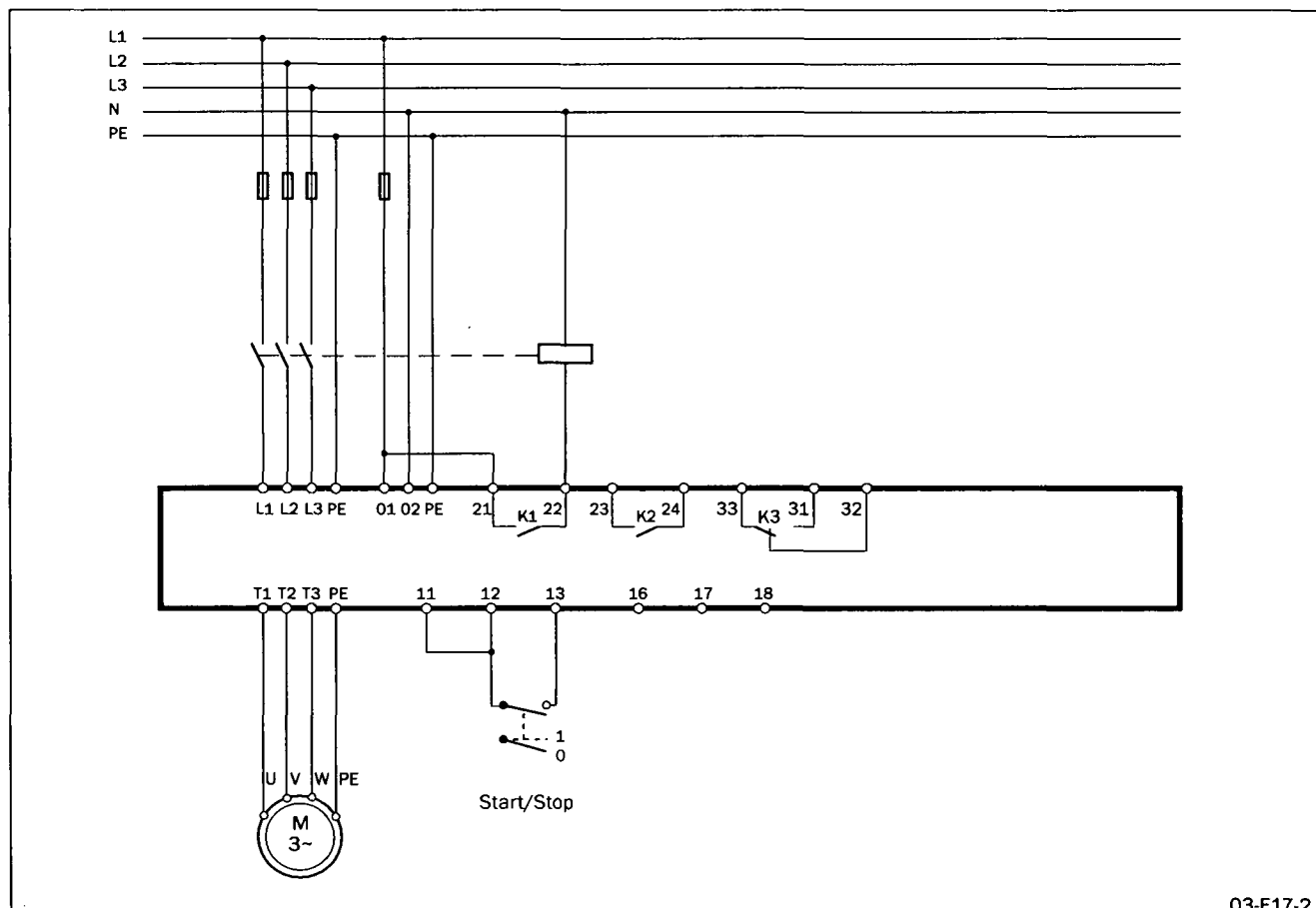
- Connect relay K1 (terminals 21 and 22 on the soft-starter) to the contactor – the softstarter then controls the contactor (for factory configuration of K1).
- Connect terminals 12 and 13 to, e.g., a 2-way switch (closing non-return) or a PLC and a jumper between 11 and 12, etc., to obtain control of soft start/soft stop. (For factory configuration of digital inputs 1 and 2.)
- Ensure the installation complies with the appropriate local regulations.

### 5.2 Applications



**WARNING! Make sure that all safety measures have been taken before switching on the power supply.**

Switch on the control supply voltage (normally 1 x 230 V); all segments in the display and the two LEDs will be illuminated for a few seconds. Then the display will show menu [100]. An illuminated display indicates there is control supply voltage to the softstarter unit. Check that you have mains supply voltage to the mains contactor or to the thyristors. The settings are carried out according as follows:



03-F17-2

Fig. 25 Standard wiring.

## 5.3 Motor data

Set the data, according to the motor type plate, to obtain optimal settings for start, stop and motor protection.

**NOTE! The default settings are for a standard 4-pole motor according to the nominal power of the softstarter. The softstarter will run even if no specific motor data is selected, but the performance will not be optimal.**

210 <sup>0</sup>				Setting
Nominal motor voltage				
4 0 0				
Default:	400 V			
Range:	200-700 V			
200-700	Nominal motor voltage.			

211 <sup>0</sup>				Setting
Nominal motor current				
1 7				
Default:	$I_{nsoft}$ in A			
Range:	25-200% of $I_{nsoft}$ in A			
25-200	Nominal motor current.			

212 <sup>0</sup>				Setting
Nominal motor power				
7.5				
Default:	$P_{nsoft}$ in kW			
Range:	25-400% of $P_{nsoft}$ in kW or HP.			
25-400	Nominal motor power.			

213 <sup>0</sup>				Setting
Nominal motor speed				
1 4 5 0				
Default:	$N_{nsoft}$ in rpm			
Range:	500-3600 rpm			
500-3600	Nominal motor speed.			

214 <sup>0</sup>				Setting
Nominal power factor				
0.86				
Default:	0.86			
Range:	0.50-1.00			
0.50-1.00	Nominal motor power factor.			

215 <sup>0</sup>				Setting
Nominal frequency				
5 0				
Default:	50 Hz			
Range:	50 Hz, 60 Hz			
50, 60	Nominal frequency.			

## 5.4 Start and stop

315 <sup>0</sup>				Setting
Start time				
1 0				
Default:	10 s			
Range:	1-60 s			
1-60	Start time.			

320 <sup>0</sup>				Setting
Stop method				
4				
Default:	4 (Coast)			
Range:	1, 2, 3, 4, 5			
1	Linear torque control			
2	Square torque control			
3	Voltage control			
4	Coast			
5	Brake			

Default "Stop method" is Coast (freewheeling).

## 5.5 Setting the start command

As default the softstarter is set up for remote operation via terminals 11, 12 and 13. For easy commissioning it is possible to give start and stop signals via the control panel.

200 <sup>o</sup>				Setting
Control source				
<div> <div></div> <div></div> <div></div> <div>2</div> </div>				
Default:	2 (Remote control)			
Range:	1, 2, 3			
1	Control panel.			
2	Remote control.			
3	Serial communication control.			

Menu [200] must be set to 1 to be able to operate from control panel.

**NOTE! Factory default setting is remote control (2).**

To start and stop from the control panel, the “START/STOP” key is used.

To reset from the control panel, the “ENTER ↵ /RESET” key is used. A reset can be done both when the motor is running and when the motor is stopped. A reset by the control panel will not start or stop the motor.

## 5.6 Viewing the motor current

Set the display to menu [100]. Now the motor current can be viewed on the display.

100 <sup>o</sup>				Read-out
Current				
<div> <div></div> <div></div> <div>0.0</div> </div>				
Range:	0.0-9999 A			

## 5.7 Starting

Start the motor by pressing the “START/STOP” key on the control panel or through the remote control, PCB terminals 11, 12 and 13. When the start command is given, the mains contactor will be activated by relay K1 (softstarter terminals 21 and 22), and the motor then starts softly.

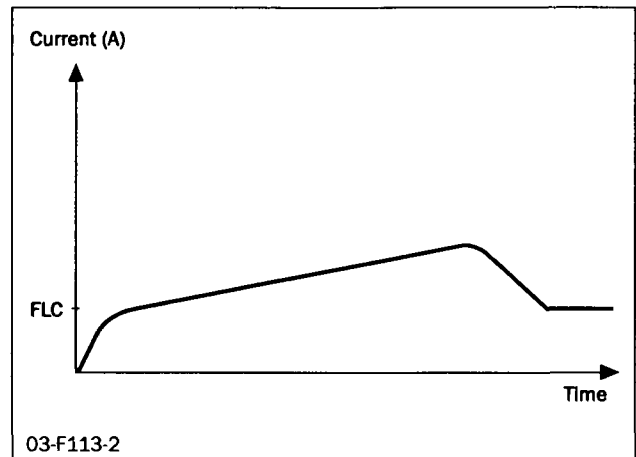


Fig. 26 Example of start current when the default torque control is used.



## 6. Applications and functions selection

This chapter is a guide to selecting the correct softstarter rating and softstarter functionality for different applications.

To make the right choice the following tools are used:

### The norms AC53a and AC53b

These norms help select the softstarter rating with regard to duty cycle, starts per hour and maximum starting current.

### The Applications Rating List

With this list the softstarter rating can be selected depending on the kind of application used. The list uses two levels, see Table 9, page 33.

### The Applications Function List

This table gives an overview of the most common applications and their challenges. For each application MSF 2.0 solutions are proposed and a reference to the MSF 2.0 menus, which can be used, is given. See Table 10, page 34.

## 6.1 Softstarter rating according to AC53a

The IEC 60947-4-2 standard for electronic softstarters defines AC53a as a norm for dimensioning of softstarters for continuous running without bypass.

The MSF 2.0 softstarter is designed to run continuously.

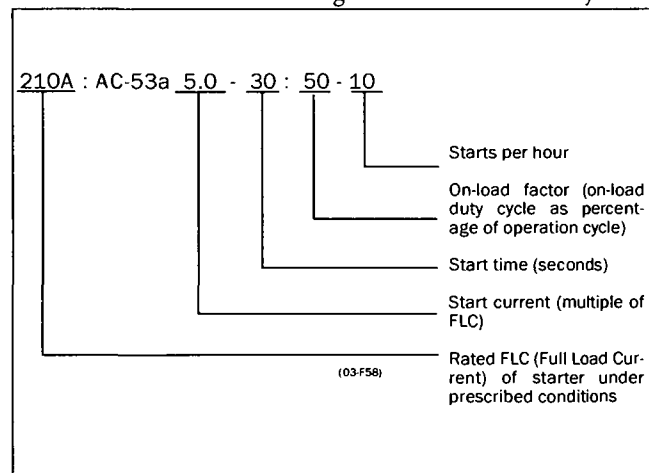


Fig. 27 AC53a rating example.

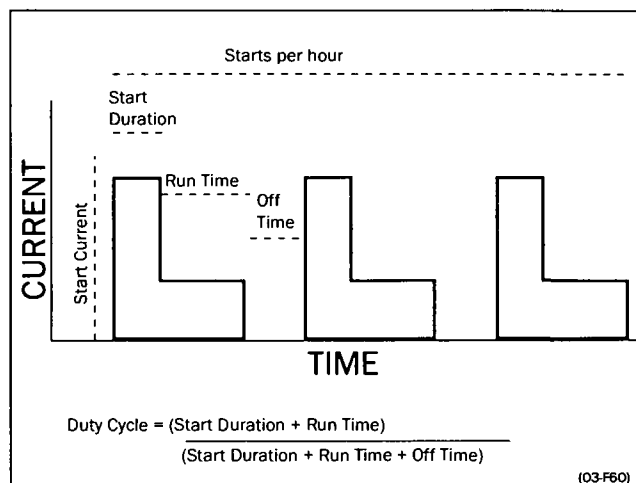


Fig. 28 Duty cycle, non-bypass.

The above example indicates a current rating of 210 Amps with a start current ratio of 5.0 x FLC (1050 A) for 30 seconds with a 50% duty cycle and 10 starts per hour.

**NOTE!** If more than 10 starts/hour or other duty cycles are needed, please contact your supplier.

In the Applications Rating List two commonly used levels of AC53a are specified. These are also given in the technical data tables (see chapter 13. on page 109).

## 6.2 Softstarter rating according to AC53b

This norm is made for bypass operation. The MSF 2.0 softstarter is designed to run continuously. In the event of high ambient temperature or for other reasons, an external bypass contactor can be used to minimize the power loss at nominal speed. In the Application Rating List, one level of AC53b is specified, normal with bypass.

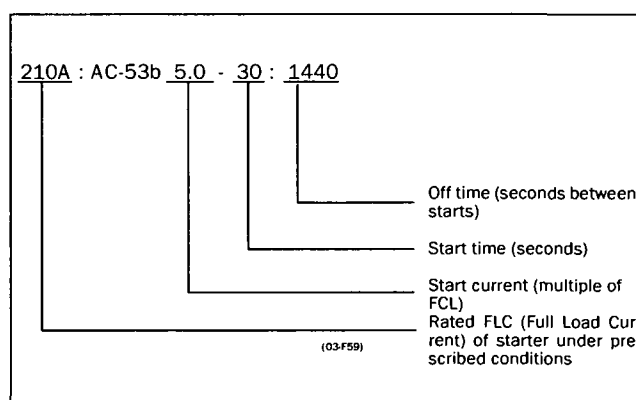


Fig. 29 AC53b rating example.

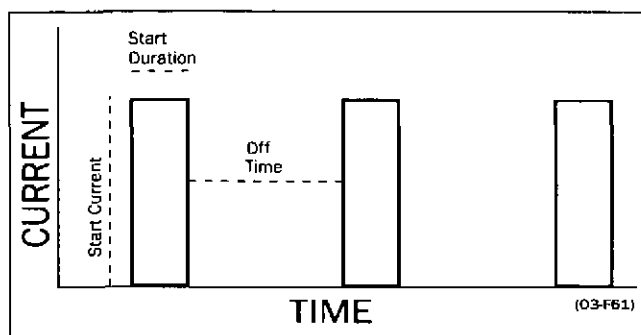


Fig. 30 Duty cycle, bypassed

The above example indicates a current rating of 210 Amps with a start current ratio of 5.0 x FLC (1050 A) for 30 seconds with a 24-minute interval between starts.

## 6.3 The Applications Rating List

According to the norms AC53a and AC53b a softstarter can have many current ratings.

With help of the Applications Rating List the correct rating can be chosen for most applications.

The Applications Rating List uses two levels for the AC53a norm and one level for the AC53b norm:

### AC53a 5.0-30:50-10 (heavy)

This level will be able to start almost all applications and follows directly the type number of the softstarter.

Example: MSF-370 is designed for 370 A full load current (FLC) and 5 times this current for a starting time of 30 seconds.

### AC 53a 3.0-30:50-10 (normal)

This level is for lighter applications and here the MSF 2.0 can manage a higher FLC.

Example: MSF-370 can be used for an application with 450 A FLC if the starting current is not more than 3 times this current for a starting time of 30 seconds.

### AC53b 3.0-30:330 (normal with bypass)

This level is for lighter applications when a bypass contactor is used. The MSF 2.0 can in this case be used for applications with an even higher nominal current.

### Example

An MSF-370 can be used for an application with a full load current of 555 A if the starting current is no more than three times this value and a bypass contactor is used.

**NOTE! To compare softstarters It is important to ensure that not only FLC (Full Load Current) is compared but also the starting performance.**

## The Applications Rating List

The first column in the Applications Rating List, see Table 9, page 33 gives various applications. If the machine or application is not in this list, try to identify a similar machine or application. If in doubt please contact your supplier. The second and third columns gives typical ratings for the machine or application. The ratings are divided in Normal/Normal with by-pass and Heavy duty.

### Example

The application is a Roller Mill. From the Applications Rating List a Roller Mill is rated as a Heavy duty application due to high starting current. The proper size of MSF 2.0 has to be selected from the Heavy rating column, see Technical data.

Table 9 Applications Rating List

Applications	Normal AC53a 3.0-30:50-10 and Normal with bypass AC53b 3.0-30:300	Heavy AC 53a 5.0-30:50-10
<b>General &amp; Water</b>		
Centrifugal Pump	x	
Submersible Pump	x	
Conveyor		x
Compressor, Screw	x	
Compressor, Reciprocating	x	
Fan	x	
Blower	x	
Mixer		x
Agitator		x
<b>Metals &amp; Mining</b>		
Belt Conveyor		x
Dust Collector	x	
Grinder	x	
Hammer Mill		x
Rock Crusher		x
Roller Conveyor		x
Roller Mill		x
Tumbler		x
Wire Draw Machine		x
<b>Food Processing</b>		
Bottle Washer	x	
Centrifuge		x
Dryer		x
Mill		x
Palletiser		x
Separator		x
Slicer:	x	
<b>Pulp and Paper</b>		
Repulper		x
Shredder		x
Trolley		x
<b>Petrochemical</b>		
Ball Mill		x
Centrifuge		x
Extruder		x
Screw Conveyor		x
<b>Transport &amp; Machine Tool</b>		
Ball Mill		x
Grinder		x
Material Conveyor		x
Palletiser		x
Press		x
Roller Mill		x
Rotary Table		x
Trolley		x
Escalator		x



Table 9 Applications Rating List

Applications	Normal AC53a 3.0-30:50-10 and Normal with bypass AC53b 3.0-30:300	Heavy AC 53a 5.0-30:50-10
Lumber & Wood Products		
Bandsaw		x
Chipper		x
Circular Saw		x
Debarker		x
Planer		x
Sander		x

## 6.4 The Application Functions List

This list gives an overview of many different applications with their challenges and a possible solution with one of the many MSF 2.0 functions.

Description and use of the table:

### Application

This column gives the various applications. If the machine or application is not on this list, try to identify a similar machine or application. If in doubt please contact your supplier.

### Challenge

This column describes possible challenges that are familiar for this kind of application.

### MSF 2.0 Solution

Gives the possible solution for the challenge using one of the MSF 2.0 functions.

### Menus

Gives the menu numbers and selection for the MSF 2.0 function.

"200;=1", means: program selection 1 in menu [200].

"323;=1 / 320, 324", means: program selection 1 in menu [323], menus [320] and [324] are related to this function.

Table 10 Application Functions List

Application	Challenge	MSF Solution	Menus
PUMP	Too fast starts and stops	Pre-setting for pump application	300
	Non-linear ramps	Square torque control for square loads.	310;=2, 320;=2
	Water hammer	Square torque control	320;=2
	High current and peaks during starts	Square torque control	310;=2
	Pump is going in wrong direction	Phase reversal alarm	440
	Dry running	Shaft power underload	401
	High load due to dirt in pump	Shaft power overload	400
COMPRESSOR	Mechanical shock for compressor, motor and transmissions	Linear Torque control	310;=1
	Small fuses and low current available.	Linear torque control and current limit at start.	310;=1, 314
	Screw compressor going in wrong direction	Phase sequence alarm	440
	Damaged compressor if liquid ammonia enters the compressor screw.	Shaft power overload	400
	Energy consumption due to compressor running unloaded	Shaft power underload	401
BLOWER	Mechanical shock for blower, motor and transmissions. High start current requires large cables and fuses.	Torque control ensures smooth starts that minimize mechanical stress. Start current is minimized by torque-controlled start.	310;=1

Table 10 Application Functions List

Application	Challenge	MSF Solution	Menus
CONVEYOR	Mechanical shocks for transmissions and transported goods.	Linear torque control	310;=1
	Loading or unloading conveyors	Slow speed and accurate position control.	330-333, 500,501
	Conveyor jammed	Shaft power overload	400
	Conveyor belt or chain is off but the motor is still running	Shaft power underload	401
	Starting after screw conveyor has stopped due to overload.	Jogging in reverse direction and then starting in forward.	335, 500
	Conveyor blocked when starting	Locked rotor function	228, 229
FAN	High starting current in end of ramps	Square torque control for square load characteristics	310;=2
	Slivering belts.		
	Fan is going in wrong direction when starting.	Catching the motor and going easy to zero speed and then starting in right direction.	310;=2
	Belt or coupling broken	Shaft power underload	401
	Blocked filter or closed damper.		
PLANER	High inertia load with high demands on torque and current control.	Linear torque control gives linear acceleration and low starting current.	310;=1
	Need to stop quickly both for emergency and production efficiency reasons.	Dynamic vector brake without contactor for medium loads.	320;=5 323;=1,324
		Reverse current brake with external contactor for heavy loads.	320;=5 323;=2,324
	High speed lines	Conveyor speed set from planer shaft power analogue output.	520-523
	Worn out tool	Shaft power overload	400
	Broken coupling	Shaft power underload	401
ROCK CRUSHER	High inertia	Linear torque control gives linear acceleration and low starting current.	310;=1
	Heavy load when starting with material	Torque boost	316,317
	Low power if a diesel powered generator is used.	Current limit at start	314
	Wrong material in crusher	Shaft power overload	400
	Vibrations during stop	Dynamic vector brake without contactor	320;=5 323;=1,324
BANDSAW	High inertia load with high demands on torque and current control.	Linear torque ramp gives linear acceleration and low starting current.	310;=1
	Need to stop quickly.	Dynamic vector brake without contactor for medium loads.	320;=5 323;=1,324
		Reverse current brake with external contactor for heavy loads.	320;=5 323;=2,324
	High speed lines	Conveyor speed set from bandsaw shaft power analogue output.	520-523
	Worn out saw blade	Shaft power overload	400
	Broken coupling, saw blade or belt	Shaft power underload	401
CENTRIFUGE	High inertia load	Linear torque control gives linear acceleration and low starting current.	310;=1
	Too high load or unbalanced centrifuge	Shaft power overload	400
	Controlled stop	Dynamic vector brake without contactor for medium loads.	320;=5 323;=1,324
		Reverse current brake with external contactor for heavy loads.	320;=5 323;=2,324
	Need to open centrifuge in a certain position.	Braking down to slow speed and then positioning control.	330-333, 500,501

Table 10 Application Functions List

Application	Challenge	MSF Solution	Menus
MIXER	Different materials	Linear torque control gives linear acceleration and low starting current.	310;=1
	Need to control material viscosity	Shaft power analogue output	520-523
	Broken or damaged blades	Shaft power overload	400
		Shaft power underload	401
HAMMER MILL	Heavy load with high breakaway torque	Linear torque control gives linear acceleration and low starting current.	310;=1
		Torque boost in beginning of ramp.	316,317
	Jamming	Shaft power overload	400
	Fast stop	Reverse current brake with reversing contactor for heavy loads.	320;=5 323;=2,324
	Motor blocked	Locked rotor function	228

**Example**

Hammer Mill:

- Linear Torque control (menu 310=1) will give the best results.
- Torque boost to overcome high breakaway torque (menus [316] and [317])
- Overload alarm function for jamming protection (menu [400])
- Stop function reverse current brake (menu [323], selection 2) can be used. Menus 324 and [325] to set the brake time and strength.

**6.5 Special conditions****6.5.1 Small motor or low load**

The minimum load current for the MSF 2.0 softstarter is 10% of the rated current of the softstarter, except for the MSF-017 where the min. current is 2 A. Example: MSF-210, rated current = 210 A. Min. Current 21 A. Please note that this is “minimum load current” and not minimum rated motor current.

**6.5.2 Ambient temperature below 0°C**

For ambient temperatures below 0°C an electric heater or similar must be installed in the cabinet. The softstarter can also be mounted somewhere else since the distance between the motor and the softstarter is not critical.

**6.5.3 Phase compensation capacitor**

If a phase compensation capacitor is to be used, it must be connected at the inlet of the softstarter, not between the motor and the softstarter.

**6.5.4 Shielded motor cable**

It is not necessary to use shielded wires together with softstarters. This is due to the very low radiated emissions.

**NOTE! The softstarter should be wired with a shielded control cable to fulfil the EMC regulations outlined section 1.6, page 6.**

**6.5.5 Pump control with softstarter and frequency inverter together**

It is possible, e.g. in a pump station with two or more pumps, to use one frequency inverter on one pump and softstarters on each of the other pumps. The flow of the pumps can then be controlled by one common control unit.

**6.5.6 Starting with counter-clockwise rotating loads**

It is possible to start a motor clockwise, even if the load and motor are rotating counterclockwise e.g. fans. Depending on the speed and the load “in the wrong direction” the current can be very high.

**6.5.7 Running motors connected in parallel**

When starting and running motors connected in parallel, the total amount of the motor current must be equal or lower than the rating of the connected softstarter. Please note that it is not possible to have individual settings for each motor or to use the internal thermal motor protection. The start ramp can only be set for an average starting ramp for all the connected motors. This means that the start time may differ from motor to motor.

For motors connected in parallel, torque control is not recommended because of the risk of oscillation between the motors. Voltage control with or without current limit is preferred instead. The use of the braking functionality is not recommended for motors connected in parallel.

### 6.5.8 Running motors linked together

When starting and running motors mechanically linked together but with one softstarter connected to each motor, there are two kinds of operation available. The first is to start the motors at the same time using voltage control with or without current limit. The second is to start one motor first with torque or voltage control and after the motor has reached full speed, the voltage to the other motors is ramped up using voltage control.

### 6.5.9 Step-up transformer for high voltage motor

A step-up transformer can be used between the MSF and the motor for controlling a motor rated at high voltage (e.g. higher than 690 V). Torque control can be used for starting and stopping. To compensate for the step-up transformer magnetization current at start, the initial torque should be set a little higher than normal. The motor data must be recalculated for the lower voltage side of the transformer.

### 6.5.10 How to calculate heat dissipation in cabinets

See chapter 13. on page 109 “Technical Data”, “Power loss at rated motor load”, “Power consumption control card” and “Power consumption fan”. For further calculations please contact your local supplier of cabinets, e.g. Rittal.

### 6.5.11 Insulation test on motor

When testing the motor with high voltage e.g. insulation test, the softstarter must be disconnected from the motor. This is due to the fact that the softstarter will be seriously damaged by the high peak voltage.

### 6.5.12 Operation above 1000 m

All ratings are stated at 1000 m over sea level.

If an MSF 2.0 is placed at 3000 m for example, it must be derated.

To get information about motors and drives at higher altitudes please contact your supplier to get technical information no 151.



## 7. Operation of the softstarter

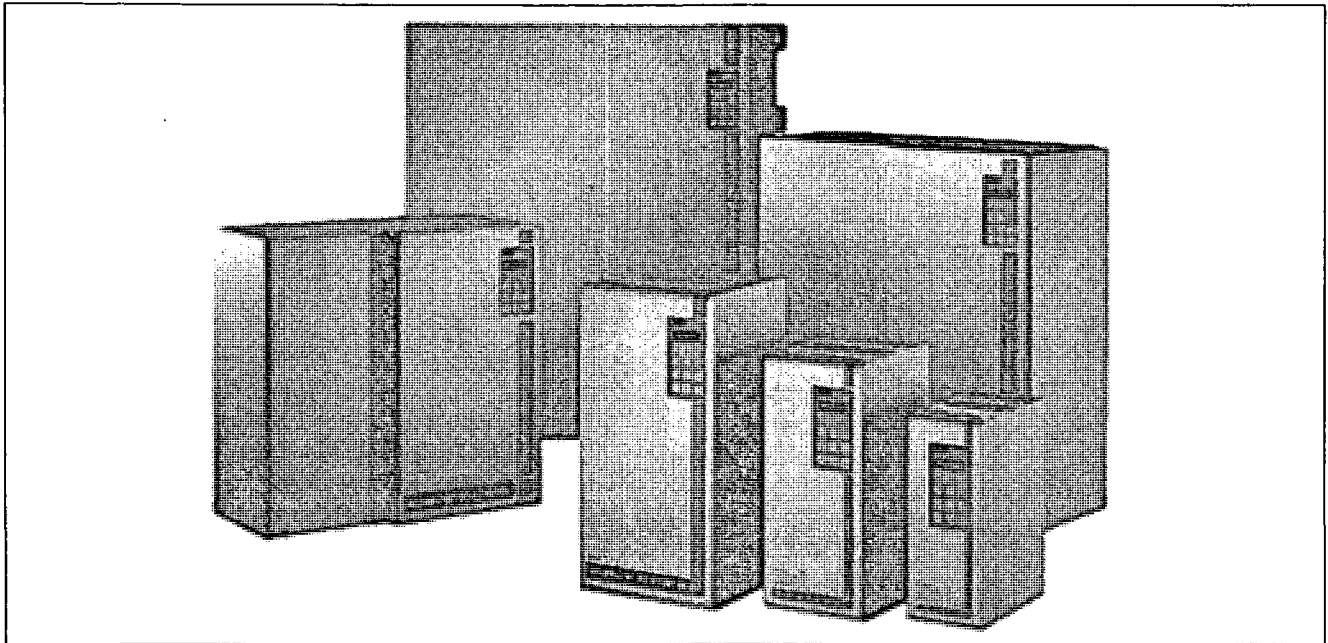


Fig. 31 MSF softstarter models MSF-017 to MSF-1400.

### 7.1 General description of user interface



**WARNING!** Never operate the softstarter with the front cover removed.

To obtain the required operation, a number of parameters must be set in the softstarter.

Configuration is carried out either from the control panel or by a computer/control system through the serial communication interface (option). Controlling the motor i.e. start/stop, selection of parameter set, is done either from the control panel, through the remote control inputs or through the serial communication interface (option).

#### Setting



**WARNING!** Make sure that all safety measures have been taken before switching on the power supply.

Switch on the control supply (normally 1\*230 V); all segments in the display will be illuminated for a few seconds. Then the display will show menu [100]. An illuminated display indicates that there is control supply voltage to the softstarter.

Check that you have voltage on the mains contactor or on the thyristors. Set the motor data, menus [210] to [215], to achieve correct functionality and optimized performance of the build-in functions such as torque control, motor protection, shaft power monitor etc.

### 7.2 Control panel

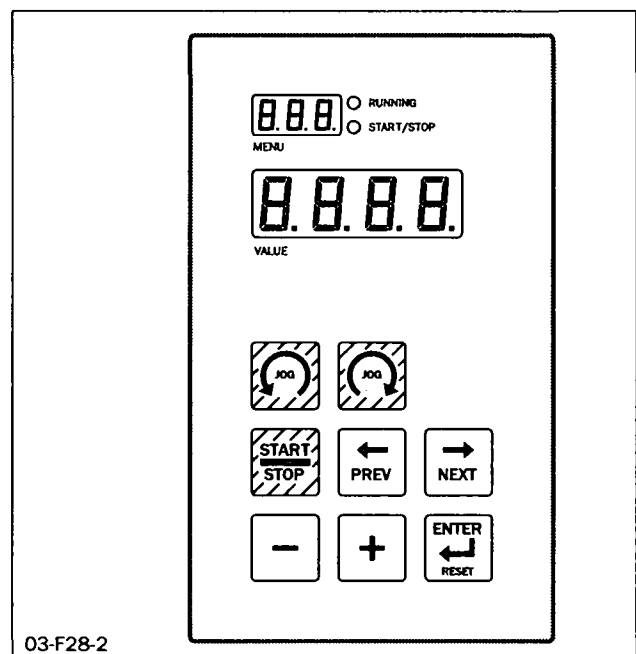


Fig. 32 Control panel.

The control panel is used for selection, programming and presentation. It consists of:

- 2 light emitting diodes (LEDs).
- 1 display with three 7-segment digits showing the actual menu number.
- 1 display with four 7-segment digits showing the actual value.
- Keyboard with eight keys.

## 7.3 LED indication

The two light emitting diodes indicate start/stop and running motor/machine.

When a start command is given either from the control panel, through the serial communication interface (option) or through the remote control inputs, the start/stop LED will be illuminated. At a stop command the start/stop LED will switch off. The start/stop LED flashes when the softstarter is in standby operation waiting for a start caused by autoreset or analogue start/stop.

When the motor is running, the running LED flashes during ramp up and down and is illuminated continuously at full motor voltage.

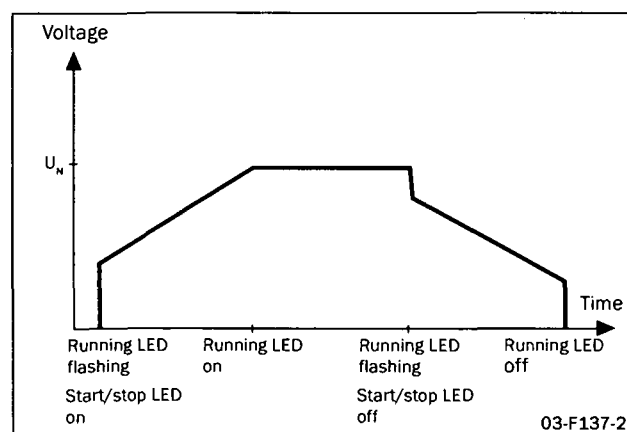


Fig. 33 LED indication at different operation situations.

## 7.4 The menu structure

The menus in MSF 2.0 are organized in a 1-level structure and they are divided into the groups set out in table 8.

For easier commissioning the menus are divided into three groups, Read-out, Setting and Multi Setting. Read-out menus are only for reading; Setting menus are for setting one parameter and Multi Setting menus are for setting several parameters which cannot be undone. The menus are selected by navigating backwards and forwards through the menu system. Sub-menus simplify setting but are not available when the corresponding main function is not activated.

Table 11 Menu structure of MSF 2.0.

Function	Menu number
General settings	100-101, 200-202
Motor data	210-215
Motor protection	220-231
Parameter set handling	240-243
Auto reset	250-263
Serial communication	270-273
Operation settings	300-342
Process protection	400-440
I/O settings	500-534
View operation	700-732
Alarm list	800-814
Softstarter data	900-902

## 7.5 The keys

The function of the control panel is based on a few simple rules.











1. At power up menu [100] is shown automatically.
2. Use the "NEXT →" and "PREV ←" keys to move between menus. To scroll through menu numbers, press and hold either the "NEXT →" or the "PREV ←" key.
3. The "+" and "-" keys are used to increase respectively decrease the value of setting. The value is flashing during setting.
4. The "ENTER ↵" key confirms the setting just made, and the value will go from flashing to stable.
5. The "START/STOP" key is only used to start and stop the motor/machine.
6. The  and  keys are only used for JOG from the control panel. The Jog function must be enabled in menu [334] or [335].

Table 12 The keys

Start/stop motor operation.	
Display previous menu.	
Display next menu.	
Decrease value of setting.	
Increase value of setting.	
Confirm setting just made. Alarm reset.	
JOG Reverse	
JOG Forward	

## 7.6 Control panel lock

The control panel can be locked to prevent parameter being set by unauthorised personnel.

- Lock control panel by simultaneously pressing both "NEXT →" and "ENTER ↵" for at least 2 sec. The message '- Loc' will be displayed for 2 seconds when locked.
- To unlock control panel, simultaneously press the same 2 keys "NEXT →" and "ENTER ↵" for at least 2 sec. The message 'unlo' will be displayed for 2 seconds when unlocked.

In locked mode it is possible to operate the softstarter from the control panel and to view all parameters and read-outs, but it is not possible to change any parameters.



## 7.7 Overview of softstarter operation and parameter set-up

Table showing how parameters can be set and operation carried out.

Table 13 Control sources

Control source	Control panel lock	Operation		Setting of parameters
		Start/Stop	Alarm reset	
Control panel Menu [200]=1	Unlocked control panel	Control panel	Control panel	Control panel
	Locked control panel	Control panel	Control panel	_____
Remote Menu [200]=2	Unlocked control panel	Remote	Remote and control panel	Control panel
	Locked control panel	Remote	Remote and control panel	_____
Serial comm. Menu [200]=3	Unlocked control panel	Serial comm.	Serial comm. and control panel	Serial comm.
	Locked control panel	Serial comm.	Serial comm. and control panel	Serial comm.

**NOTE:** If external control of parameter set is chosen in menu [240] no parameters except for parameter set [249] and control source [200] can be changed.

## 8. Functional description

This functional description for Softstarter MSF 2.0 describes the menus and parameters in the softstarter unit. You will find a short description of each function, their aims and settings.

The MSF 2.0 provides extensive setting possibilities via menus on the control panel, remote control or serial communication. The menus are numbered according to the menu overview in Table 10.

Table 14 Menu overview

Function	Menu number	Description	See section
General settings	100-101 200-202	General basic settings.	8.1
Motor data	210-215	For insertion of technical data for the actual motor.	8.2
Motor protection	220-231	Protection associated with the motor in the application.	8.3
Parameter set handling	240-243	Selection and programming of parameter sets.	8.4
Auto reset	250-263	Automatic reset of active alarm and restart of MSF 2.0.	8.5
Serial communication	270-273	Serial communication settings for the data transfer.	8.6
Operation settings	300-342	Settings associated with the operation, for example the start- and stop procedures.	8.7
Process protection	400-440	Protection associated with the process.	8.8
I/O settings	500-534	In- and output settings for control and monitoring.	8.9
View operation	700-732	For read-out of measured values.	8.10
Alarm list	800-814	Latest error. Available alarms.	8.11
Softstarter data	900-902	Displays softstarter type, software variant and version.	8.12

8.1 General settings

General settings for MSF 2.0 contains the following menus:

- [100] Current
- [101] Automatic return menu
- [200] Control source
- [201] Control panel locked for settings
- [202] Enable US units

8.1.1 Current [100]

This read-out menu shows the actual current to the motor.

100

°

Read-out

Current

0.0

Range:

0.0-9999A

NOTE! This is the same read-out as menu [700].

8.1.2 Automatic return menu [101]

When the MSF 2.0 is powered up, menu [100] (Current read-out) is shown as default. When another menu has been selected by the user (moving through the menu list with the "NEXT" or "PREV" keys) this menu will remain active. Alternatively a specific menu can be chosen as automatic return menu. The chosen menu will be shown automatically after 60 seconds without any control panel activity.

101

°

Setting

Automatic return menu

o

F

F

Default:

oFF

Range:

oFF, 1-999

oFF

Automatic return menu is disabled.

1-999

Automatic return menu.

8.1.3 Control source [200]

The softstarter can be controlled either via the control panel, remote control or the serial communication interface. Remote control via terminals 11,12 and 13 is the default setting.

NOTE: Depending on the setting in this menu, the softstarter may be configured via control panel or via serial communication. See Table 13, page 42 for more information.

NOTE: If control panel (1) or remote control (2) is configured, the setting can only be changed via control panel to serial communication control (3). However, if serial communication control (3) is configured, the setting can be changed either via serial communication or via control panel.

200

°

Setting

Control source

2

Default:

2 (remote control)

Range:

1, 2, 3

1

Control panel.

2

Remote control.

3

Serial communication control.

8.1.4 Control panel lock [201]

The MSF 2.0 Control panel can be locked to prevent parameter being set by unauthorised personnel.

- Lock control panel by simultaneously pressing both keys "NEXT →" and "ENTER ←" for at least 2 seconds. The message "- Loc" will be displayed for 2 seconds.
- To unlock control panel, simultaneously press the same two keys "NEXT →" and "ENTER ←" for at least 2 seconds. The message "unlo" will be displayed for 2 seconds.

In locked mode, all parameters and read-outs (menus) can be displayed, but it is forbidden to change any parameters via the control panel.

The message '-Loc' will be displayed if someone tries to set a parameter in locked mode.

The key lock status can be read out in menu [201].

NOTE: If menu [200] is configured for serial communication control, the softstarter may still be configured via serial communication, regardless of the control panel lock status.

201

°

Read-out

Control panel locked for settings

n

o

Default:

no

Range:

no, YES

no

Control panel is not locked

YES

Control panel is locked

### 8.1.5 Enable US units [202]

By default all read-out and configuration values are given in SI units. If preferred, US customary units can be chosen instead. In this case the following units are used:

- Powers are set and shown in HP, menus [212] and [703]
- Power consumption is shown in MHph, menu [731]
- Shaft torque is shown in lbft, menu [705]
- Temperature is shown in degrees Fahrenheit, menu [707]

**NOTE: When the setting for US units is changed, the motor data in menus [210-215] is reset to the default values for the chosen units (SI or US customary units) in all parameter sets.**

[210] Nominal motor voltage – new default value (460 V, for US units enabled)

[211] Nominal motor current – new default value depending on softstarter size.

[212] Nominal motor power – new default value depending on softstarter size

[213] Nominal motor speed – new default value depending on softstarter size

[215] Nominal frequency – new default value (60 Hz, for US units enabled)

If the setting is changed and confirmed with “ENTER”, “SEt” is displayed for 2 seconds to indicate successful selection.

202 <sup>o</sup>		Setting
Enable US units		
o F F		
Default:	oFF	
Range:	oFF, on	
oFF	Values are presented in kW, Nm etc.	
on	Values are presented in HP, lbft etc.	

## 8.2 Motor data

For optimal performance the MSF 2.0 softstarter should be configured according to the motor's rating plate:

[210] to [215] Nominal motor data

**NOTE: The default factory settings are for a standard 4-pole motor according to the nominal current and power of the softstarter. The softstarter will run even if no specific motor data is selected, but the performance will not be optimal.**

Nominal motor voltage.

210 <sup>o</sup>		Setting
Nominal motor voltage		
4 0 0		
Default:	400 V	
Range:	200-700 V	
200-700	Nominal motor voltage.	

**NOTE: Make sure the softstarter's maximum voltage rating is suitable for selected motor voltage.**

Nominal motor current. The current range is related to the size of the softstarter.

211 <sup>o</sup>		Setting
Nominal motor current		
1 7		
Default:	I <sub>nsoft</sub> in A	
Range:	25-200% of I <sub>nsoft</sub> in A	
25-200	Nominal motor current	

Nominal motor power in kW or HP. The power range is related to the size of the softstarter.

212 <sup>o</sup>		Setting
Nominal motor power		
7.5		
Default:	P <sub>nsoft</sub> in kW	
Range:	25-400% of P <sub>nsoft</sub> in kW or HP.	
25-400	Nominal motor power.	

Nominal motor speed.

213 <sup>o</sup>		Setting
Nominal motor speed		
1 4 5 0		
Default:	N <sub>nsoft</sub> in rpm	
Range:	500-3600 rpm	
500-3600	Nominal motor speed.	

Nominal motor power factor.

214 <sup>o</sup>		Setting
Nominal power factor		
0.86		
Default:	0.86	
Range:	0.50-1.00	
0.50-1.00	Nominal motor power factor.	

Nominal motor frequency

215 <sup>o</sup>		Setting
Nominal frequency		
5 0		
Default:	50 Hz	
Range:	50 Hz, 60 Hz	
50, 60	Nominal frequency.	

## 8.3 Motor protection

The MSF 2.0 softstarter is equipped with different motor protection functions. The following menus are available to configure these protection methods:

[220]-[223] Thermal motor protection

[224]-[227] Start limitation

[228]-[229] Locked rotor

[230] Single phase input failure

[231] Current limit start time expired

For these protection methods the following options are available (all options may not be available for all protection methods – check the description of the relevant menu for details):

Off

The protection method is disabled.

Warning

The appropriate alarm message is shown in the display and relay K3 is activated (for default configuration of the relays). However, the motor is not stopped and operation continues. The alarm message will disappear and the relay will be reset when the fault disappears. The alarm may also be reset manually.

Coast

The appropriate alarm message is shown in the display and relay K3 is activated (for default configuration of the relays). The motor voltage is automatically switched off. The motor freewheels until it stops.

Stop

The appropriate alarm message is shown in the display and relay K3 is activated (for default configuration of the relays). The motor is stopped according to the stop settings in menus [320] to [325].

Brake

The appropriate alarm message is shown in the display and relay K3 is activated (for default configuration of the relays). The brake function is activated according to the braking method chosen in menu [323] and the motor is stopped according to the alarm brake settings in menus [326] to [327] (braking strength and braking time).

### 8.3.1 Thermal motor protection

With MSF 2.0 an internal thermal model of the motor or an external signal from a PTC can be used for thermal motor protection. It is also possible to combine both protection methods. Slight overload for a long time and several overloads of short duration will be detected with both methods.

#### Thermal motor protection [220]

Thermal motor protection is activated by choosing an alarm action in menu [220]. After that menus [221] to [223] will be available so that the type of the protection (internal and/or PTC) can be chosen. If the operation has been interrupted due to a thermal motor protection alarm, a manual reset and a new start signal is needed to restart the motor. The reset and the start signal can be given via control panel, remote or via serial communication depending on the control source chosen in menu [200]. Regardless of the chosen control source, it is always possible to initiate a reset via the control panel.

**NOTE: A reset via the control panel will never start the motor.**

220<sup>o</sup>

Setting

2

**Thermal motor protection  
(Alarm code F2)**

Default:	2 (Coast)
Range:	oFF, 1, 2, 3, 4
oFF	Thermal motor protection is disabled.
1	Warning
2	Coast
3	Stop
4	Brake

## PTC input [221]

This menu is available if thermal motor protection is enabled in menu [220]. To use the PTC functionality, connect the PTC to terminals 69 and 70. See fig. 53. If the motor gets too warm (PTC resistance above 2.4 kOhm), an F2 alarm will occur. The alarm will remain active until the motor has cooled down (PTC resistance below 2.2 kOhm).

221<sup>o</sup>

Setting

o

F

F

**PTC input**

Default:	oFF
Range:	oFF, on
oFF	Motor PTC input is disabled.
on	Motor PTC input is enabled.

**NOTE: Open terminals will give an F2 alarm immediately. Make sure the PTC is always connected or the terminals are shorted.**

## Internal protection class [222]

This menu is available if thermal motor protection is enabled in menu [220]. In this menu an internal protection class can be chosen, which enables internal thermal motor protection. With this setting a thermal curve as set out in Fig. 34 is configured. The motor's thermal capacity is calculated continuously based on the chosen curve. If the thermal capacity exceeds 100% an F2 alarm occurs and the action chosen in menu [220] is performed. The alarm remains active until the motor model cools down to 95% of its thermal capacity. The used thermal capacity is shown in menu [223].

222<sup>o</sup>

Setting

1

0

**Internal protection class**

Default:	10 s
Range:	oFF, 2-40 s
oFF	Internal protection class is disabled.
2-40	Selection of the thermal curve as set out in Fig. 34.

**NOTE: Check that the motor current is configured properly in menu [211].**

**NOTE! If an external bypass contactor is used, check that the current transformers are placed and connected correctly.**



**CAUTION! Used thermal capacity is set to 0 if the control board loses its supply (terminal 01 and 02). This means that the internal thermal model starts with a "cold" motor, which perhaps in reality is not the case. This means that the motor can be overheated.**

## Used thermal capacity [223]

This menu is available if thermal motor protection is activated in menu [220] and an internal protection class is chosen in menu [222]. The menu shows the thermal capacity of the motor according to the thermal curve chosen in menu [222].

223<sup>o</sup>

Read-out

0

**Used thermal capacity**

Range:	0-150%
--------	--------

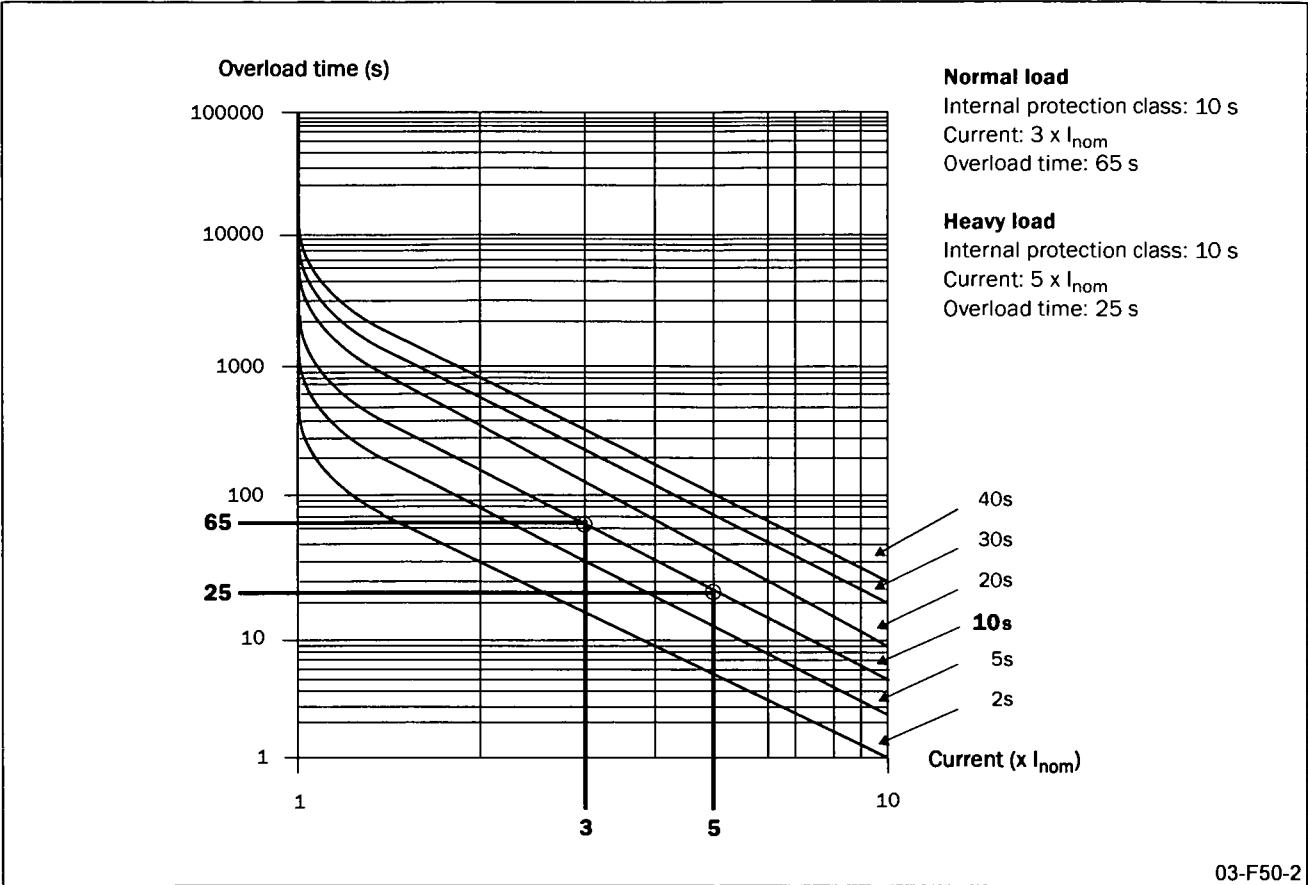


Fig. 34 The thermal curve

8.3.2 Start limitation

Start limitation is used to protect the motor by limiting the numbers of starts per hour or securing a minimum time delay between starts. Both protection methods can be used separately or in combination.

Start limitation [224]

Start limitation is enabled in this menu by choosing a proper alarm action. The available options are:

Off

The protection method is disabled.

Warning

Alarm message F11 is shown in the display and relay K3 is activated (for default configuration of the relays). However, the start will be allowed.

Coast

Alarm message F11 is shown in the display and relay K3 is activated (for default configuration of the relays). The start will not be allowed.

A Start limitation alarm is automatically reset when a new start signal is given. The start signal can be given via control panel, remote or via serial communication depending on the control source chosen in menu [200]. Regardless of the cho-

sen control source, it is always possible to initiate a reset via the control panel.

**NOTE: A reset via the control panel will never start the motor.**

224<sup>o</sup>

Setting

OFF

Start limitation (Alarm code F11)

Default:	oFF
Range:	oFF, 1, 2
oFF	Start limitation is disabled.
1	Warning
2	Coast

## Number of starts per hour [225]

This menu is available if start limitation is enabled in menu [224]. In this menu the allowed number of starts per hour is configured. If this number is exceeded, an F11 alarm occurs and the action chosen in menu [224] is performed. The alarm is active until the hour has expired and a new start can be allowed.

225 <sup>o</sup>		Setting
Number of starts per hour		
o F F		
Default:	oFF	
Range:	oFF, 1-99	
oFF	Starts per hour protection is disabled	
1-99	Number of starts per hour.	

## Min. time between starts [226]

This menu is available if start limitation is enabled in menu [224]. In this menu a minimum time between consecutive starts can be configured. If a new start attempt is made before the configured minimum time is expired an F11 alarm will occur and the action chosen in menu [224] is performed. The alarm remains active until the chosen minimum time has expired and a new start can be allowed.

226 <sup>o</sup>		Setting
Min. time between starts		
o F F		
Default:	oFF	
Range:	oFF, 1-60 min	
oFF	Min. time between starts protection is disabled.	
1-60	Min. time between starts.	

## Time to next allowed start [227]

This menu is available if start limitation is enabled in menu [224] and at least one of the protection methods described above is configured (number of starts per hour or minimum time between starts). In this menu the remaining time to the next allowed start is shown. If both protection methods mentioned above are activated, the shown time is the total time delay to the next start, which is allowed by both methods.

227 <sup>o</sup>		Read-out
Time to next allowed start		
o		
Range:	0- 60 min	

## 8.3.3 Locked rotor

This alarm is used to avoid high motor current due to a mechanically locked rotor. If the operation has been interrupted due to a locked rotor alarm, a manual reset and a new start signal is needed to restart the motor. The reset and the start signal can be given via control panel, remote or via serial communication depending on the control source chosen in menu [200]. Regardless of the chosen control source, it is always possible to initiate a reset via the control panel.

**NOTE: A reset via the control panel will never start the motor.**

## Locked rotor [228]

Locked rotor alarm is activated in this menu by choosing a proper alarm action.

228 <sup>o</sup>		Setting
Locked rotor alarm (Alarm code F5)		
o F F		
Default:	oFF	
Range:	oFF, 1, 2	
oFF	Locked rotor alarm is disabled.	
1	Warning	
2	Coast	

## Locked rotor time [229]

This menu is available if Locked rotor alarm is enabled in menu [228]. In this menu the time delay for detection of a locked rotor is configured. If a high motor current (4.8 times the nominal motor current) is floating for a time exceeding the chosen value, an F5 alarm will occur and the action chosen in menu [228] will be performed.

229 <sup>o</sup>		Setting
Locked rotor time		
5.0		
Default:	5.0 s	
Range:	1.0-10.0 s	
1.0-10.0	Locked rotor time.	



**NOTE: Check that the motor current is configured properly in menu [211].**

### 8.3.4 Phase input failure

All phase input failures shorter than 100 ms are ignored.

#### Multiple phase input failure

If the failure duration time is above 100 ms, operation is temporary stopped and a new soft start is made if the failure disappears within 2 s. If the failure duration time is longer than 2 s an F1 alarm occurs and the voltage to the motor remains off. During deceleration, regardless of the failure duration time, the motor voltage is automatically switched off and the motor freewheels until it stops.

#### Single phase input failure

During acceleration and deceleration the behaviour is the same as described above for multiple phase input failure. When running with full voltage, the softstarter can be configured for different actions in the event of a single phase input failure (menu [230]).

A phase input failure alarm is automatically reset when a new start signal is given. The start signal can be given via control panel, remote or via serial communication depending on the control source chosen in menu 200. Regardless of the chosen control source, it is always possible to initiate a reset via the control panel.

**NOTE: A reset via the control panel will never start the motor.**

#### Single phase input failure [230]

The softstarter's action on a single phase input failure occurring during full voltage running can be configured in this menu. In the event of a single phase input failure, alarm F1 is activated after 2 s (see description above) and the chosen action is performed. The alarm remains active until the failure disappears.

230 <sup>o</sup>		Setting
<div> <div></div> <div></div> <div></div> <div>2</div> </div>		Single phase input failure (alarm code F1)
Default:	2	
Range:	1, 2	
1	Warning	
2	Coast	

### 8.3.5 Current limit start time expired

If current limit at start is activated in menu [314], an F4 alarm can be activated if the operation is still at current limit when the configured start time has expired. A current limit start time expired alarm is automatically reset when a new start signal is given. The start signal can be given via control panel, remote or via serial communication depending on the control source chosen in menu [200]. Regardless of the chosen control source, it is always possible to initiate a reset via control panel.

**NOTE: A reset via the control panel will never start the motor.**

#### Current limit start time expired [231]

In this menu the alarm for current limit start time expired can be enabled and a proper action can be selected.

231 <sup>o</sup>		Setting
<div> <div></div> <div></div> <div></div> <div>2</div> </div>		Current limit start time expired (alarm code F4)
Default:	2	
Range:	oFF, 1, 2, 3, 4	
oFF	Current limit start time expired protection is disabled.	
1	Warning	
2	Coast	
3	Stop	
4	Brake	

**NOTE: If the action for current limit start time expired is configured as Warning or the protection is not activated at all, the softstarter will ramp up to full voltage with a ramp time of 6 s if the start time has expired in current limit mode. The current is then no longer controlled.**

## 8.4 Parameter set handling

The use of different parameter sets can be helpful when using one softstarter to start different motors or when working under various load conditions. There are four parameter sets available in MSF 2.0. Parameter set handling is controlled by the following menus:

- [240] Select parameter set
- [241] Actual parameter set
- [242] Copy parameter set
- [243] Reset to factory setting

### 8.4.1 Select parameter set [240]

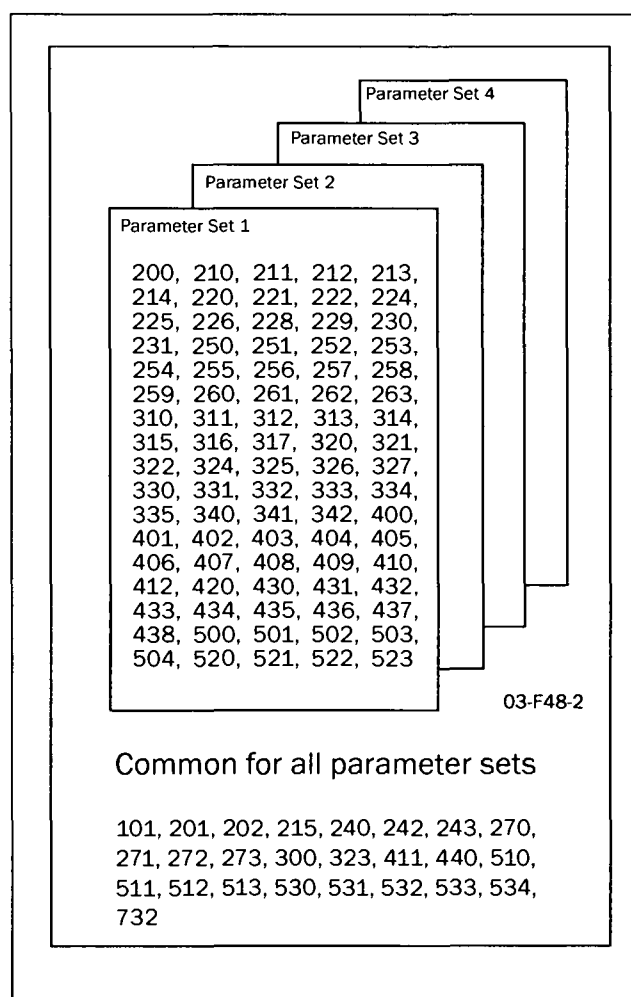


Fig. 35 Parameter overview

### Select parameter set [240]

In this menu one of the parameter sets 1-4 can be selected directly or external control of parameter sets via digital inputs can be chosen. If external control of parameter sets is chosen, the digital inputs have to be configured properly (see description of menus [510] to [513]). By default digital inputs 3 and 4 (terminals 16 and 17) are configured for external control of parameter sets.

240 <sup>o</sup>		Setting
Select parameter set		
<div> <div></div> <div></div> <div></div> <div>1</div> </div>		
Default:	1	
Range:	0, 1, 2, 3, 4	
0	External control of parameter sets.	
1, 2, 3, 4	Selection of parameter sets 1-4.	

### Actual parameter set [241]

This menu is available when external control of parameter sets is chosen in menu [240]. This menu shows which parameter set is actually selected via the digital inputs.

241 <sup>o</sup>		Read-out
Actual parameter set		
<div> <div></div> <div></div> <div></div> <div>1</div> </div>		
Range:	1, 2, 3, 4	

### 8.4.2 Copy parameter set [242]

When programming a new parameter set, this function will simplify the procedure. It is possible to copy an already programmed parameter set into another set as follows:

- Select a copy alternative in this menu, for example P1-2. Press Enter. "CoPY" is displayed for 2 seconds to indicate successful copy process. After that, "no" is displayed.
- Go to menu [240] and select parameter set 2.
- Make the required new settings in corresponding menus for parameter set 2.

242 <sup>o</sup>		Multi Setting
Copy parameter set		
<div> <div></div> <div></div> <div>n</div> <div>o</div> </div>		
Default:	no	
Range:	no, P1-2, P1-3, P1-4, P2-1, P2-3, P2-4, P3-1, P3-2, P3-4, P4-1, P4-2, P4-3	
no	No action	
P1-2 etc.	Copy parameter set 1 to parameter set 2 etc.	

**NOTE: Copying parameter sets is only allowed when the softstarter is not running.**

8.4.3 Reset to factory setting [243]

This menu enables all parameters to be reset to the default values. This includes all four parameter sets and the common parameters except for parameter [202] (enable US units). As Enable US units is not reset to default, the values loaded for the normal motor data in menus [210] to [215] correspond to the chosen units (SI or US customary), see description of menu [202] on page 45 for more information. The alarm list, the power consumption and the operation time will not be affected by resetting the parameters. When the reset of all parameters to the factory default values has been executed successfully, menu [100] is shown on the display.

243

o

Multi Setting

n

o

Reset to factory settings

Default:	no
Range:	no, YES
no	No action
YES	Reset all parameters to the factory default values.

**NOTE!** Reset to factory settings is not allowed when the softstarter is running.

8.5 Autoreset

For several non-critical application-related failure conditions, it is possible to automatically generate a reset and initiate a restart to overcome the fault condition. Autoreset functionality is configured using the following menus:

[250] Autoreset attempts.

[251] to [263] Autoreset items.

In menu [250] the maximum number of automatically generated restarts allowed can be set. When this number is exceeded and a new fault occurs, the softstarter will stay in fault condition because external assistance is required. In menus [251] to [263], autoreset is enabled for the different protection types by choosing a delay time. If a fault occurs for which autoreset is enabled, the motor is stopped according to the action chosen for the relevant protection method (see menus [220] to [231] and [400] to [440] for description of protection methods and configuration of actions on failures). When the fault has disappeared, and the configured delay time has elapsed, the motor is restarted.

Example:

The motor is protected by internal thermal protection. When a thermal protection alarm occurs, the softstarter should wait until the motor is cooled down enough before resuming normal operation. When this problem occurs several times in a short period of time, external assistance is required.

The following settings should be applied:

- Activate thermal motor protection, e.g. set menu [220] to 2 (Coast).
- Activate internal thermal motor protection, e.g. set menu [222] to 10 (thermal curve for 10 s).
- Insert maximum number of restarts: e.g. set menu [250] to 3.
- Activate thermal motor protection to be automatically reset: e.g. set menu [251] to 100.
- Configure one of the relays to give an alarm when external assistance is required: e.g. set menu [532] to 19 (all alarms which need manual reset).

The autoreset functionality is not available if control panel is chosen as control source in menu [220].



**WARNING:** A flashing start/stop LED indicates standby mode e.g. waiting for autoreset. The motor may be started automatically at a moment's notice.

**NOTE:** The autoreset cycle will be interrupted when a stop signal is given (remote or via serial communication) or if the control source is changed to control panel in menu [200].

8.5.1 Autoreset attempts [250]

In this menu the maximum allowed number of automatically generated restart attempts is set. If any number of autoreset attempts is selected in this menu the Autoreset functionality is activated and menus [251] to [263], will become available. If an alarm occurs for which autoreset is enabled (in menus [251] to [263]), the motor will automatically be restarted when the fault has disappeared and the delay time has expired. For each automatically generated restart, the internal autoreset counter (not visible) will go up one place. If no alarm occurs for more than 10 minutes, the autoreset counter will be decreased by one. When the maximum number of autoreset attempts is reached, no further restart will be allowed and the softstarter will remain in fault condition. In this case a manual reset (either via control panel, remote or serial communication, see description on page 39) is needed.

Example:

- Autoreset attempts (menu [250]=5)
- Within 10 minutes 6 alarms occur.
- At the 6th trip there is no autoreset, because the autoreset counter contains already 5 autoreset attempts.
- To reset, apply a normal reset. This will also reset the autoreset counter.

**NOTE: The internal autoreset counter is reset to zero if a stop signal is given. After each new start signal (via remote or serial communication) the maximum number of restart attempts will be allowed as configured in menu [250].**

250		Setting
Autoreset attempts		
OFF		
Default:	oFF	
Range:	oFF, 1-10	
oFF	Autoreset disabled.	
1-10	Number of Autoreset attempts.	

### 8.5.2 Autoreset items [251]-[263]

Menus [251] to [263] are available if autoreset is enabled in menu [250]. With these menus the delay time for autoreset is configured. The delay time starts counting when the fault is gone. When the delay time has elapsed, the alarm will be reset and a restart attempt will automatically be made.

**NOTE: Enabling autoreset for an alarm has no effect if the alarm action for the respective alarm is set to oFF or Warning (1).**

#### Thermal motor protection autoreset [251]

This menu is available if autoreset is activated in menu [250]. In this menu the delay time for thermal motor protection autoreset is configured. The delay time starts counting when the fault is gone. This means the internal thermal motor model has to cool down to a thermal capacity of 95% (if internal thermal motor protection is enabled) and the PTC resistance has to go down to 2.2 kOhm (if PTC is enabled), which indicates that the motor has cooled down. When the delay time has elapsed, the alarm will be reset and a restart attempt will automatically be made.

251		Setting
Thermal motor protection autoreset		
OFF		
Default	oFF	
Range:	oFF, 1-3600 s	
oFF	Thermal motor protection autoreset is disabled	
1-3600	Delay time for thermal motor protection autoreset	

#### Start limitation autoreset [252]

This menu is available if autoreset is activated in menu [250]. In this menu the delay time for an autoreset after a start limitation alarm (alarm code F11) is configured. The delay time starts counting when the fault is gone. This means the minimum time between starts has to be expired (if Minimum time between starts protection is enabled) and a start has to be allowed for the actual hour (if starts per hour protection is enabled). When the delay time has elapsed, the alarm will be reset and a restart attempt will automatically be made.

#### Locked rotor alarm autoreset [253]

This menu is available if autoreset is activated in menu [250]. In this menu the delay time for an autoreset after a locked rotor alarm (alarm code F5) is configured. As a locked rotor cannot be detected in stopped state, the delay time starts counting immediately after the alarm action has been executed. When the delay time has elapsed, the alarm will be reset and a restart attempt will automatically be made.

#### Current limit start time expired autoreset [254]

This menu is available if autoreset is activated in menu [250]. In this menu the delay time for an autoreset after a current limit start time expired alarm (alarm code F4) is configured. As a current limit start time expired fault condition cannot be detected in stopped state, the delay time starts counting immediately after the alarm action has been executed. When the delay time has elapsed, the alarm will be reset and a restart attempt will automatically be made.

#### Max power alarm autoreset [255]

This menu is available if autoreset is activated in menu [250]. In this menu the delay time for an autoreset after a max power alarm (alarm code F6) is configured. As a max power fault condition cannot be detected in stopped state, the delay time starts counting immediately after the alarm action has been executed. When the delay time has elapsed, the alarm will be reset and a restart attempt will automatically be made.

#### Min power alarm autoreset [256]

This menu is available if autoreset is activated in menu [250]. In this menu the delay time for an autoreset after a min power alarm (alarm code F7) is configured. As a min power fault condition cannot be detected in stopped state, the delay time starts counting immediately after the alarm action has been executed. When the delay time has elapsed, the alarm will be reset and a restart attempt will automatically be made.

External alarm autoreset [257]

This menu is available if autoreset is activated in menu [250]. In this menu the delay time for an autoreset after a external alarm (alarm code F17) is configured. The delay time starts counting when the fault is gone. This means the external alarm signal input has to be closed. When the delay time has elapsed, the alarm will be reset and a restart attempt will automatically be made.

Phase input failure autoreset [258]

This menu is available if autoreset is activated in menu [250]. In this menu the delay time for an autoreset after a phase input failure (alarm code F1) is configured. As a phase input failure cannot be detected in stopped state, the delay time starts counting immediately after the alarm action has been executed. When the delay time has elapsed, the alarm will be reset and a restart attempt will automatically be made.

Voltage unbalance alarm autoreset [259]

This menu is available if autoreset is activated in menu [250]. In this menu the delay time for an autoreset after a voltage unbalance alarm (alarm code F8) is configured. The delay time starts counting when the fault is gone. Usually, the mains voltage will not be available to the softstarter in stopped state as the mains contactor is deactivated. In this case a voltage unbalance failure cannot be detected in stopped state and the delay time starts counting immediately after the alarm action has been executed. When the delay time has elapsed, the alarm will be reset and a restart attempt will automatically be made.

Over voltage alarm autoreset [260]

This menu is available if autoreset is activated in menu [250]. In this menu the delay time for an autoreset after an over voltage alarm (alarm code F9) is configured. The delay time starts counting when the fault is gone. Usually, the mains voltage will not be available to the softstarter in stopped state as the mains contactor is deactivated. In this case an over voltage failure cannot be detected in stopped state and the delay time starts counting immediately after the alarm action has been executed. When the delay time has elapsed, the alarm will be reset and a restart attempt will automatically be made.

Under voltage alarm autoreset [261]

This menu is available if autoreset is activated in menu [250]. In this menu the delay time for an autoreset after an under voltage alarm (alarm code F10) is configured. The delay time starts counting when the fault is gone. Usually, the mains voltage will not be available to the softstarter in stopped state as the mains contactor is deactivated. In this case an under voltage failure cannot be detected in stopped state and the delay time starts counting immediately after the alarm action has been executed. When the delay time

has elapsed, the alarm will be reset and a restart attempt will automatically be made.

Serial communication autoreset [262]

This menu is available if autoreset is activated in menu [250]. In this menu the delay time for autoreset after a serial communication broken alarm (alarm code F15) is configured. The delay time starts counting when the fault is gone. This means serial communication has to be re-established. When the delay time has elapsed, the alarm will be reset and a restart attempt will automatically be made.

Softstarter overheated autoreset [263]

This menu is available if autoreset is activated in menu [250]. In this menu the delay time for autoreset after a softstarter overheated alarm (alarm code F3) is configured. The delay time starts counting when the fault is gone. This means the softstarter has to be cooled down. When the delay time has elapsed, the alarm will be reset and a restart attempt will automatically be made.

8.6 Serial communication

There are several serial communication options available for MSF 2.0 (see page 107 for more information). The softstarter can be configured and controlled via serial communication if this is configured in menu [200] (see page 44). The following parameters are available to configure serial communication:

- [270] Serial comm. unit address
- [271] Serial comm. baudrate
- [272] Serial comm. parity
- [273] Serial comm. contact broken

**NOTE: The communication parameters [270] to [272] must be set up via the control panel. To enable configuration via the control panel, menu [200] must be set to 1 (control panel) or 2 (remote control).**

Serial comm. unit address [270]

Serial communication unit address.

270

Setting

1

Serial comm. unit address

Default:	1
Range:	1-247
1-247	Unit address.

## Serial comm. baudrate [271]

Serial communication baudrate.

271 <sup>o</sup>		Setting
Serial comm. baudrate		
9.6		
Default:	9.6 kBaud	
Range:	2.4 - 38.4 kBaud	
2.4-38.4	Baudrate.	

## Serial comm. parity [272]

Serial communication parity.

272 <sup>o</sup>		Setting
Serial comm. parity		
0		
Default:	0	
Range:	0, 1	
0	No parity	
1	Even parity.	

## Serial comm. contact broken [273]

If the softstarter is configured for control via serial communications (menu [200] = 3) and the serial communication contact is broken during operation, an F15 alarm can be configured to occur. In this menu the alarm can be enabled and an action to be performed can be chosen. The following options are available:

### Off

Serial communication contact broken alarm is disabled.

### Warning

Alarm message F15 is shown in the display and relay K3 is activated (for default configuration of the relays). However, the motor is not stopped and operation continues. The alarm message will disappear and the relay will be reset when the fault disappears. The alarm may also be reset manually from the control panel.

### Coast

Alarm message F15 is shown in the display and relay K3 is activated (for default configuration of the relays). The motor voltage is automatically switched off. The motor freewheels until it stops.

### Stop

Alarm message F15 is shown in the display and relay K3 is activated (for default configuration of the relays). The motor is stopped according to the stop settings in menus [320] to [325].

## Brake

Alarm message F15 is shown in the display and relay K3 is activated (for default configuration of the relays). The brake function is activated according to the braking method chosen in menu [323] and the motor is stopped according to the alarm brake settings in menus [326] to [327] (braking strength and braking time).

A serial communication broken alarm is automatically reset when a new start signal is given. The start signal can be given via control panel, remotely or via serial communication depending on the control source chosen in menu 200. Regardless of the chosen control source, it is always possible to initiate a reset via control panel.

**NOTE: A reset via control panel will never start the motor.**

273 <sup>o</sup>		Setting
Serial comm. contact broken (alarm code F15)		
OFF		
Default:	2	
Range:	oFF, 1, 2, 3, 4	
oFF	Serial comm. contact broken disabled	
1	Warning	
2	Coast	
3	Stop	
4	Brake	

## 8.7 Operation settings

Operation settings include parameters for configuration of starting and stopping, some of these can be pre-configured for pump applications. Furthermore, some special settings for stop behaviour at alarm, parameters for slow speed and jog and additional settings such as bypass operation, power factor control and control of the internal fan are included in this section.

[300] Preset pump control parameters

[310]-[317] Start

[320]-[327] Stop including stop at alarm

[330]-[335] Slow speed/JOG

[340]-[342] Additional settings

The MSF Softstarter controls all three phases supplied to the motor. In contrast to a simple softstarter controlling only one or two phases, the three-phase control enables different starting methods, voltage, current and torque control. A current limit can even be used in combination with either voltage or torque control.

With voltage control the output voltage to the motor is linearly increased to full line voltage during the set start time. The softstarter gives a smooth start but does not get any feedback on current or torque. The typical settings to optimize a voltage controlled start are the initial voltage and the start time.

With current control the output voltage to the motor is regulated so the set current limit is not exceeded during the start. Even with this starting method the starter does not get any feedback on the motor torque. However, current control can be combined with both voltage and torque control. The typical settings to optimize a current controlled start are the current limit and the maximum starting time.

Torque control is the most sophisticated way of starting motors. The softstarter continually monitors the motor torque and controls the output voltage to the motor so the torque follows the set ramp. Both linear- and square torque ramps can be chosen according to the application requirements. In this way constant acceleration can be accomplished during start which is very important in many applications. Torque control can also be used for stopping with constant deceleration. For pumps constant deceleration is important for avoiding water hammer.

8.7.1 Preset pump control [300]

With this multi-setting parameter the MSF 2.0 softstarter can easily be configured for pump applications. The following parameters are set if preset pump control parameters are chosen.

- [310] Start method is set to square torque control (2)
- [312] Initial torque at start is set to 10%
- [313] End torque at start is set to 125%
- [315] Start time is set to 10 seconds
- [314] and [316] Current limit at start and torque boost are deactivated.
- [320] Stop method is set to square torque control (2)
- [321] End torque at stop is set to 10%
- [325] Stop time is set to 15 seconds.

These settings will lead to a smooth start with linear acceleration and a linear stop without water hammer for most pump applications. However, if the pre-set parameters need to be adapted for a specific application, the values in the relevant menus can be adapted.

The following figure shows typical current characteristics at start and speed curve at stop.

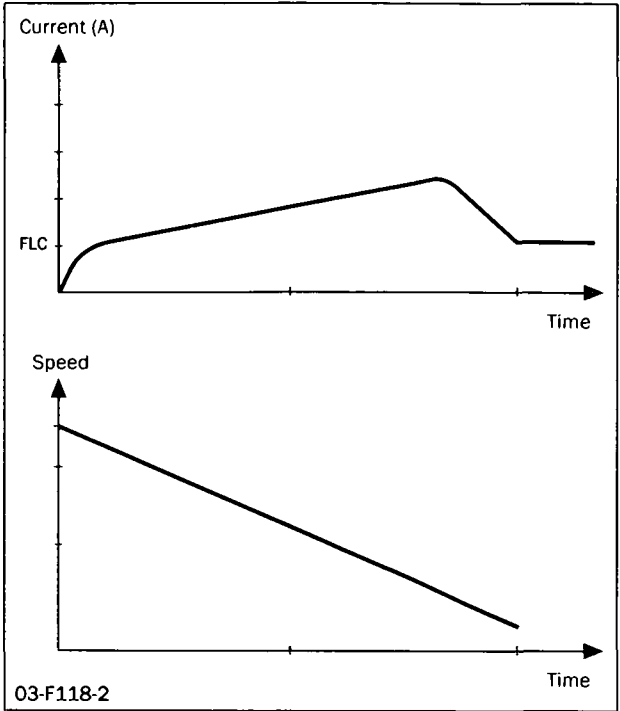


Fig. 36 Pump control. Current at start and speed at stop.

When the pre-setting of the parameters for pump control has been executed successfully, “SEt” is shown in the display for two seconds. After that “no” will be shown again.

**Note: Pre-setting of parameters for pump control is not allowed when the softstarter is running.**

300<sup>o</sup>

Multi Setting

no

Preset pump control parameters

Default:	no
Range:	no, YES
no	No action
YES	Preset parameters for pump control

## 8.7.2 Start

With MSF 2.0, torque control, voltage control and direct on-line are available as start methods. Torque control is available both for loads with a linear torque characteristic like conveyors and planers and with square torque characteristics for pumps and fans. In general torque control is recommended as a starting method; voltage control may be used when for some special reasons a linear voltage ramp is desired. With Direct on-line (DOL) as a start method, neither the current nor the voltage will be controlled; full voltage is applied to the motor immediately. DOL can be used to start the motor if the softstarter has been damaged and the thyristors are short-circuited.

All start methods can be combined with a current limit. However, only a properly configured torque-controlled start will lead to constant acceleration. For this reason it is not recommended to set a current limit for pump applications. With a proper set-up of the torque control parameters, the starting current will be very low. For applications with variable load characteristics from start to start, the current limit functionality may be useful to avoid overloading the mains fuses. However, as the motor torque is proportional to the square of the current, setting a low current limit will limit the motor torque considerably. If the current limit is set too low in relation to the application's requirements, the motor will not be able to accelerate the load.

### Start method [310]

In this menu the start method is chosen. The menus necessary for configuration of the start will be available depending on the chosen start method.

<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">3</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">1</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">0</div> </div> </div> <div style="float: right; border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">Setting</div>	
<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;"></div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;"></div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;"></div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">1</div> </div> </div> <div style="float: right; margin-top: -20px;">Start method</div>	
Default:	1
Range:	1, 2, 3, 4
1	Linear torque control
2	Square torque control
3	Voltage control
4	Direct on-line, DOL

## Torque control

The default settings for initial torque at start is 10% and for end torque at start it is 150%. In Fig. 37 the resulting torque curve is shown versus time for linear and square torque characteristics.

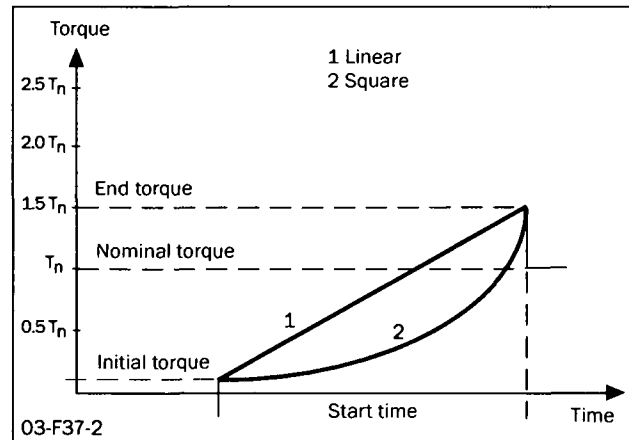


Fig. 37 Torque control at start

A Properly configured torque-controlled start will lead to a linear speed increase and low starting current without current peaks.

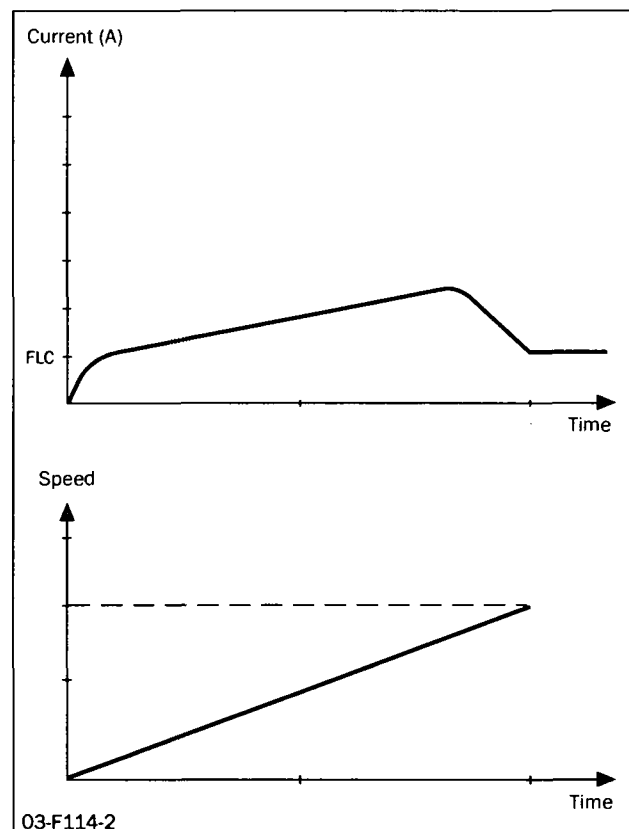


Fig. 38 Current and speed in torque control



To optimize the start, use the setting for initial torque at start, menu [311] and end torque at start, menu [312].

When the start command is given, the motor should immediately start to rotate to avoid unnecessary heat development in the motor. If required, increase the initial torque at start.

The end torque at start should be adjusted so that the time for the motor to come up to nominal speed approximately matches the start time set in menu [315]. If the actual start time is much shorter than the set start time in menu [315], the End torque at stop can be decreased. If the motor does not reach full speed before the start time set in menu [315] has expired, the end torque at stop has to be increased to avoid current peaks and jerking at the end of the ramp. This may be needed for high inertia loads such as planers, saws and centrifuges.

The read-out of shaft torque in percentage of  $T_n$  in menu [706] may be useful for fine-tuning the start ramp.

### Initial torque at start [311]

This menu is available if torque control is selected in menu [310]. In this menu the initial torque at start is set.

[311] <sup>0</sup> / <sub>0</sub>		Setting
Initial torque at start		
[ ][ ] [1] [0]		
Default:	10%	
Range:	0-250% $T_n$	
0-250	Initial torque at start.	

### End torque at start [312]

This menu is available if torque control is selected in menu [310]. In this menu the end torque at start is set.

[312] <sup>0</sup> / <sub>0</sub>		Setting
End torque at start		
[ ][ ] [1] [5] [0]		
Default:	150%	
Range:	25-250% $T_n$	
25-250	End torque at start.	

### Voltage control

Voltage control can be used when a linear voltage ramp is desired. The voltage to the motor will be ramped up linearly, from initial voltage up to full mains voltage.

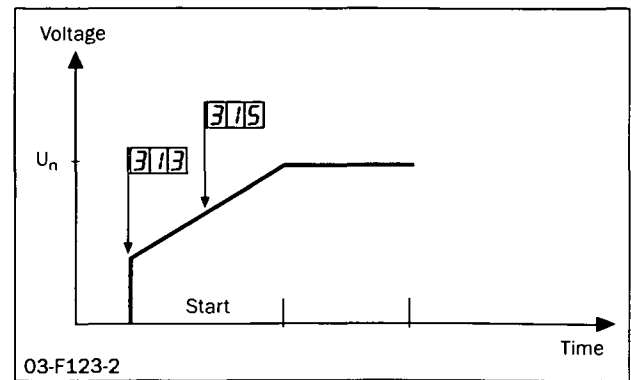


Fig. 39 Menu numbers for initial voltage and start time.

### Initial voltage at start [313]

This menu is available if voltage control is chosen as start method in menu [310]. In this menu the initial voltage at start is set.

[313] <sup>0</sup> / <sub>0</sub>		Setting
Initial voltage at start		
[ ][ ] [3] [0]		
Default:	30%	
Range:	25-90% U	
25-90	Sets initial voltage at start.	

### Direct on-line, DOL

If this alternative is selected in menu [310], the motor can be accelerated as if it was connected directly to the mains.

For this type of operation:

Check whether the motor can accelerate the required load (DOL start). This function can be used even with shorted thyristors.

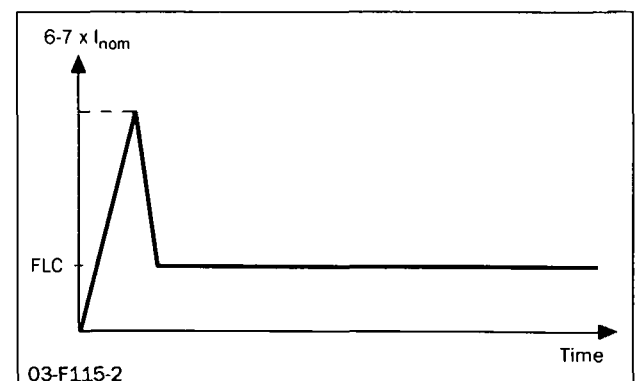


Fig. 40 DOL-start.

## Current limit

Current limit at start can be used together with all start methods to limit the current to a defined max level when starting (150-500% of  $I_n$ ). However, only a properly configured torque-controlled start will lead to linear acceleration. For this reason it is not recommended to set a current limit for pump applications. Moreover, as the motor torque is proportional to the square of the current, setting a low current limit will limit the motor torque considerably. If the current limit is set too low in relation to the application's requirements, the motor will not be able to accelerate the load.

The combination DOL start and current limit at start gives a start ramp with constant current. The softstarter will control the current up to the set current limit immediately at start, and keep it there until the start is completed or the set start-up time expires.

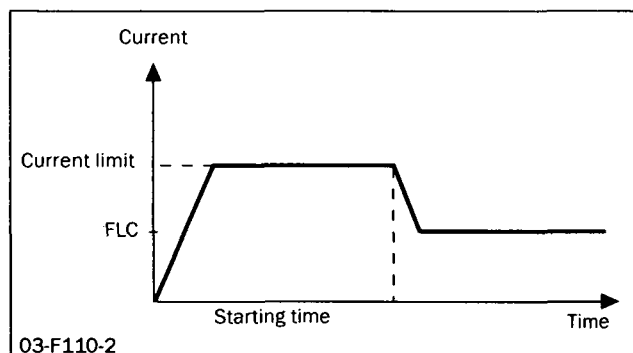


Fig. 41 Direct on-line start in combination with current limit at start.

## Current limit at start [314]

In this menu the current limit at start is set.

314 <sup>0</sup>				Setting
Current limit at start				
OFF				
Default:	oFF			
Range:	oFF, 150-500% of $I_n$			
oFF	Current limit disabled.			
150-500	Current limit at start.			

**NOTE:** Even though the current limit can be set as low as 150% of the nominal motor current value, this minimum value cannot be used generally. If the current limit is set too low in relation to the application's requirements, the motor will not be able to accelerate the load.

**NOTE:** Check that the nominal motor current is configured properly in menu [211] if the current limit functionality is used.

If the starting time is exceeded and the softstarter is still operating at current limit, an alarm will be activated according to "Current limit start time expired" settings for motor protection, menu [231]. Operation may be stopped or continued with a pre-defined voltage ramp. Note that the current will rise unchecked if the operation continues.

## Start time [315]

In this menu the desired start time is set. This menu is not available if DOL is chosen as a start method and no current limit is configured.

315 <sup>0</sup>				Setting
Start time				
10				
Default:	10 s			
Range:	1-60 s			
1-60	Start time.			

## Torque boost

In specific applications torque boost is required for the start. The torque boost parameter enables a high torque to be obtained by providing a high current for 0.1-2 seconds at start. This enables a soft start of the motor even if the break away torque is high at start. For example in crushing mills applications etc.

When the torque boost function has finished, starting continues according to the selected start method.

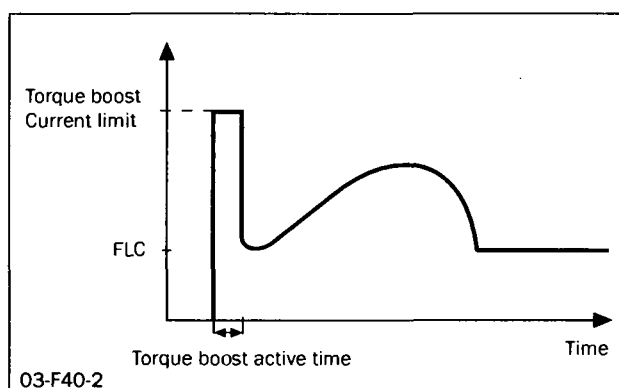


Fig. 42 The principle of the torque boost when starting the motor.

## Torque boost current limit [316]

In this menu torque boost is enabled and the current limit for torque boost is configured.

<div> <div>316</div> <div>Setting</div> </div>	
<div> <div> <div></div> <div>3</div> <div>0</div> <div>0</div> </div> <div>Torque boost current limit</div> </div>	
Default:	oFF
Range:	oFF, 300-700% of $I_n$
oFF	Torque boost disabled
300-700	Torque boost current limit.

## Torque boost active time [317]

This menu is available if torque boost is enabled in menu [316]. In this menu the time for the torque boost to be active is selected.

<div> <div>317</div> <div>Setting</div> </div>	
<div> <div> <div></div> <div>0</div> <div>F</div> <div>F</div> </div> <div>Torque boost active time</div> </div>	
Default:	1.0 s
Range:	0.1-2.0 s
0.1-2.0	Torque boost active time.

**NOTE! Check whether the motor can accelerate the load with "Torque boost" without any harmful mechanical stress.**

**NOTE: Check that the nominal motor current is configured properly in menu [221].**

## 8.7.3 Stop

With MSF 2.0, four stop methods are available: torque control, voltage control, coast and braking. Torque control is available for loads with linear or square torque characteristic. A torque or voltage-controlled stop is used for applications where the motor stopping suddenly could harm the application, e.g. water hammer in pump applications. In general a torque-controlled stop is recommended for these applications. The voltage-controlled stop can be used if a linear voltage ramp is desired. When coast is selected as a stop method, the voltage to the motor will be switched off and the motor will be left freewheeling. Braking may be used in applications where the motor needs to be stopped quickly, e.g. for planers and bandsaws.

Any start method except for direct on-line (DOL) can be combined with any stop method, e.g. torque control can be used at start and brake for stop. The DOL start method can only be combined with coast or brake stop methods.

## Stop method [320]

In this menu the stop method is chosen. The menus necessary for configuring the stop will be available depending on the chosen stop method.

<div> <div>320</div> <div>Setting</div> </div>	
<div> <div> <div></div> <div></div> <div></div> <div>4</div> </div> <div>Stop method</div> </div>	
Default:	4
Range:	1, 2, 3, 4, 5
1	Linear torque control
2	Square torque control
3	Voltage control
4	Coast
5	Brake

## Torque control

With torque control at stop, the torque to the motor will be controlled from the nominal torque down to the chosen end torque at stop (menu [321]). Examples for the torque ramps for linear and square torque control are shown in Fig. 43. The default value for end torque at stop is 0; this value may be increased if the motor is standing still before the stop is finished to avoid unnecessary heat development in the motor. With the end torque at stop set properly, the motor speed will decrease linearly down to standstill.

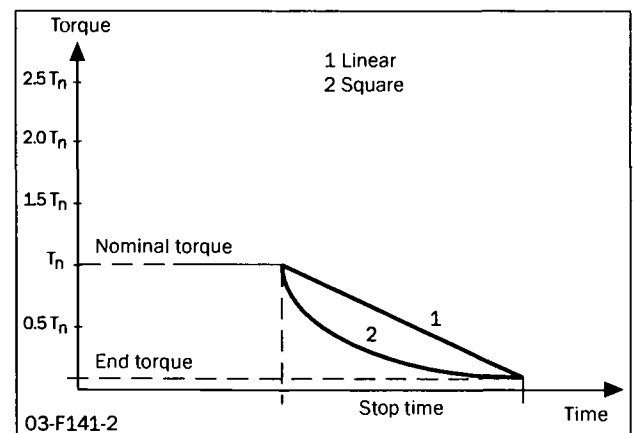


Fig. 43 Torque control at stop

## End torque at stop [321]

This menu will be available if torque control is chosen as stop method in menu [320] (alternative 1 or 2). In this menu the end torque at stop is configured.

321 <sup>0</sup>		Setting
End torque at stop		
<div> <div></div> <div></div> <div></div> <div>0</div> </div>		
Default:	0%	
Range:	0-100% of $T_n$	
0-100	End torque at stop.	

## Voltage control

With voltage control at stop, the voltage to the motor will be decreased to the chosen step down voltage at stop immediately after a stop signal. Then the voltage to the motor will follow a linear ramp down to the minimum voltage of 25% of the nominal voltage. An example of this voltage ramp is shown in Fig. 44.

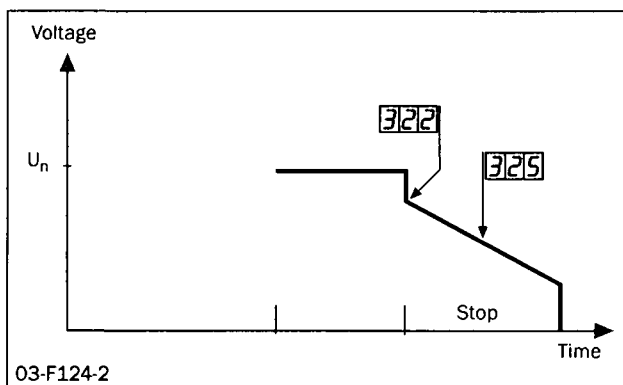


Fig. 44 Menu numbers for step down voltage at stop and stop time.

## Step down voltage at stop [322]

This menu is available if voltage control is chosen as stop method in menu [320] (alternative 3). In this menu the step down voltage at stop is chosen in percentage of the nominal motor voltage.

322 <sup>0</sup>		Setting
Step down voltage at stop		
<div> <div></div> <div>1</div> <div>0</div> <div>0</div> </div>		
Default:	100%	
Range:	100-40% of U	
100-40	Step down voltage at stop.	

## Braking

Braking can be used in applications where there is a need for a quick stop.

There are two built-in braking methods: dynamic vector brake for normal loads and reverse current brake for heavy loads with high inertia. In both braking methods the MSF 2.0 continuously detects the motor speed. At low speed the DC brake mode is activated until the motor is standing still. The MSF 2.0 will automatically turn off the output voltage when the motor has stopped or when the stop time has expired. Optionally an external rotation sensor can be connected via digital input, see description for menu [500] on page 77 for more information.

## Dynamic vector brake

With dynamic vector brake, the braking torque applied to the motor will increase with decreasing speed. Dynamic vector brake can be used for all loads which are not rotating too close to synchronous speed when the motor voltage is switched off. This is valid for most applications as the load speed usually decreases because of frictional losses in gears or belt drives as soon as the motor voltage is switched off. However, loads with very high inertia may remain at high speed even though the motor is not supplying any torque. For these applications the reverse current brake can be used instead.

When the dynamic vector brake is used, no additional connections or contactors are needed.

## Reverse current brake

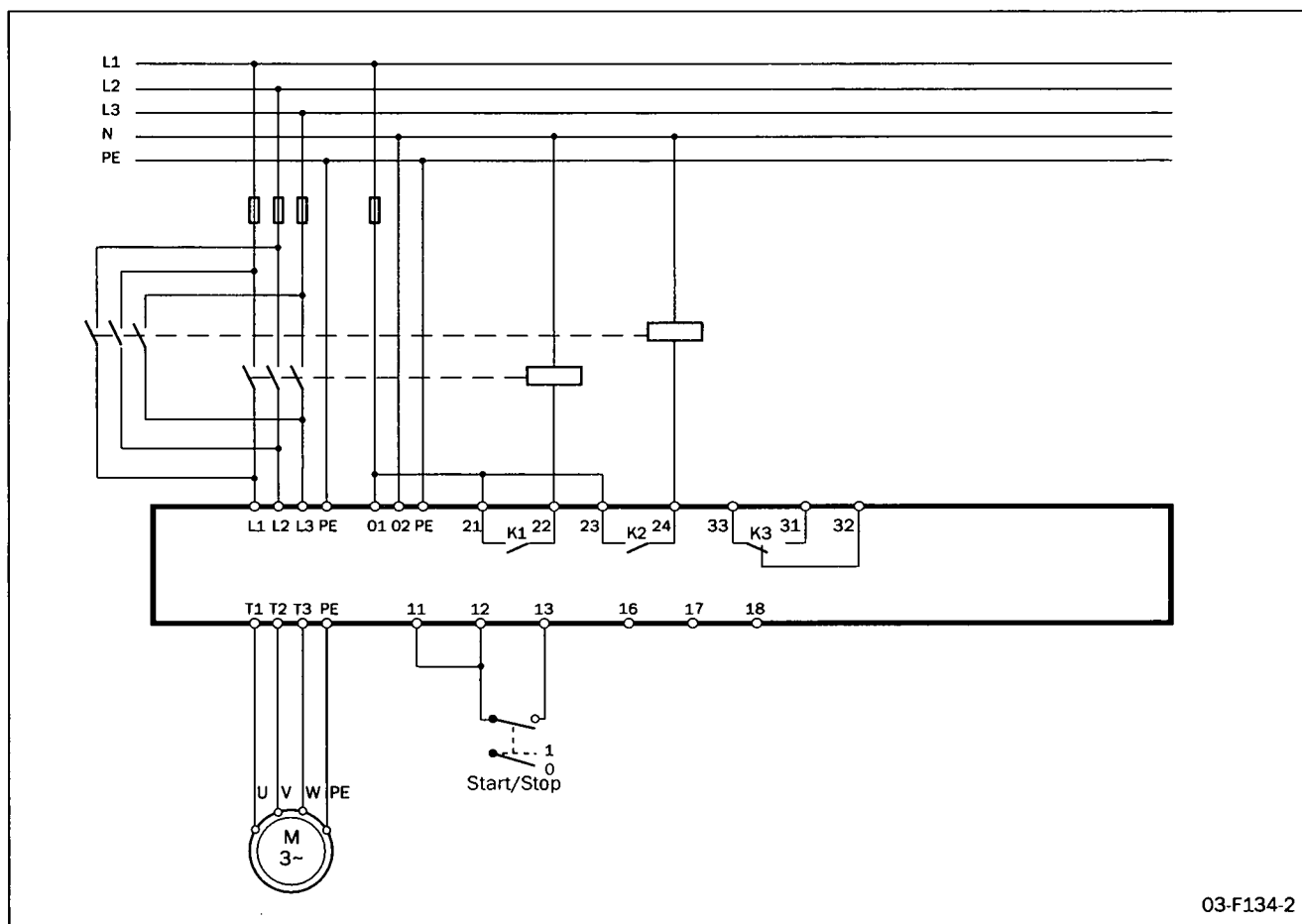
With reverse current brake, a very high braking torque can be applied to the motor even close to synchronous speed. All kind of loads can be stopped quickly using reverse current brake, including loads with very high inertia. If high braking torques are needed, it should be checked carefully whether the motor, the gear or belt drive and the load can withstand the high mechanical forces. To avoid harmful vibrations, it is generally recommended to select as low a braking torque as possible which also fulfils the demands for a short braking time.

For reverse current brake, two mains contactors are needed. The connection is shown in Fig. 45. The contactors have to be controlled by the MSF's relay outputs. During start and full voltage operation contactor K1 will be closed, for braking K1 will be opened and after a time delay K2 will be closed to change the phase sequence.

**NOTE:** For several start/stops it is recommend that the motor temperature be monitored using the PTC input.



**WARNING:** When reverse current brake is selected, the relays K1 and K2 are automatically programmed for reverse current brake functionality. The relay setting remains even if reverse current brake is deactivated. Therefore it may be necessary to adapt the relay functions manually.



03-F134-2

Fig. 45 Reverse current brake wiring example.

## Braking method [323]

This menu is available if brake is selected as stop method in menu [320] (alternative 5) or if alarm brake is activated in menu [326] (see description of menus [326] to [327] for more information). In this menu the brake method is selected.

323 <sup>0</sup> <sub>0</sub>		Setting
Braking method		
1		
Default:	1	
Range:	1, 2	
1	Dynamic vector brake	
2	Reverse current brake	

## Braking strength [324]

This menu is available if brake is selected as stop method in menu [320] (alternative 5). In this menu the braking strength is selected. To avoid unnecessary heat development in the motor and high mechanical stress it is generally recommended to select as low a braking strength as possible which still fulfils the demands for a short braking time.

324 <sup>0</sup> <sub>0</sub>		Setting
Braking strength		
150		
Default:	150%	
Range:	150-500%	
150-500	Braking strength.	

Stop time [325]

This menu is available if any stop method except coast is selected in menu [320] (alternative 1, 2, 3 or 5). In this method the desired stop time is selected.

325<sup>o</sup>

Setting

Stop time

10

Default:	10 s
Range:	1-120 s
1-120	Stop time.

Alarm braking

For most alarms it is possible to configure them so that when they are triggered either operation continues or the motor stops (see chapter 9, page 95 for more information). Brake is one of the actions available. If this option is chosen, the braking functionality is activated according to the brake method selected in menu [323] (see description of the braking functionality above for more information). While the braking strength and stop time chosen in menus [324] and [325] are used for braking on a stop signal, different braking strengths and times can be configured in menus [326] and [327] if braking is activated by an alarm. This function may mainly be used in combination with an external alarm (see description on page 73), where an external signal is used to initiate a quick stop with a higher braking strength and a shorter braking time compared to normal operation.

If alarm braking is disabled in menu [326] and brake is chosen as an alarm action, the voltage to the motor will be switched off and the motor will freewheel if the specific alarm occurs.

Alarm braking strength [326]

In this menu braking as an alarm action is enabled and the alarm braking strength is selected. If alarm braking is not activated, the motor will be left freewheeling if an alarm occurs for which brake is configured as alarm action.

326<sup>o</sup>

Setting

Alarm braking strength

oFF

Default:	oFF
Range:	oFF, 150-500%
oFF	Coast – motor voltage is switched off.
150-500	Alarm braking strength.

**NOTE: If alarm brake is enabled, the braking method chosen in menu [323] is used.**

Alarm braking time [327]

This menu is available if alarm brake is enabled in menu 327. In this menu the braking time to be used in the event of braking as an alarm action is configured.

327<sup>o</sup>

Setting

Alarm braking time

10

Default:	10 s
Range:	1-120 s
1-120	Alarm braking time.

8.7.4 Slow speed and JOG functions

MSF 2.0 is able to run the motor at a fixed slow speed for a limited period of time. The slow speed will be about 14% of the full speed in the forward direction and 9% in the reverse direction.

**NOTE: As the motor torque during slow speed is limited to about 30% of the nominal torque, slow speed can not be used in applications which need a high brake-away torque to start rotating.**

The following functions are possible:

Slow speed during a selected time period

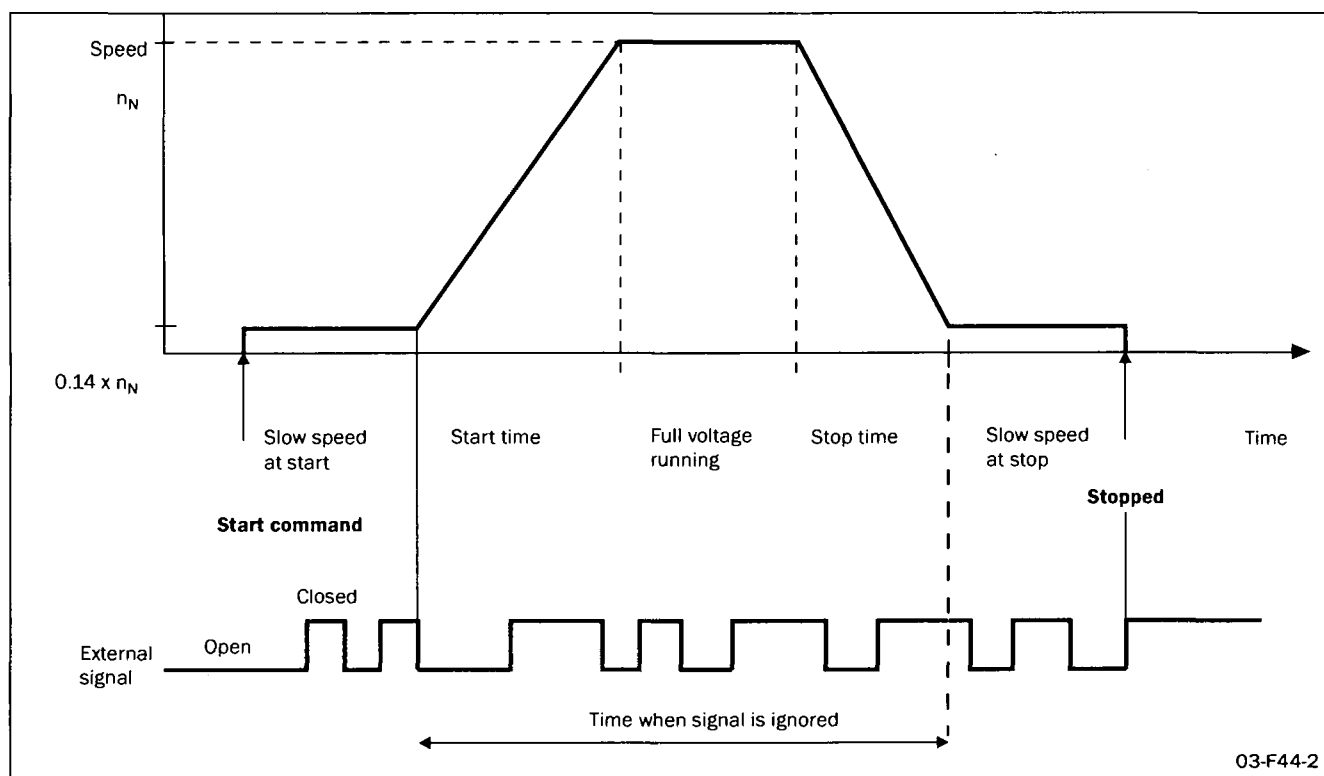
Slow speed will be active for a selected time period before a start is initiated or after a stop is performed.

Slow speed controlled by an external signal

The time period during which slow speed is active before a start is initiated or after a stop is performed is controlled by an external signal via the analogue/digital input. Slow speed will be active until a selected number of pulses has been detected on the input.

Slow speed using the JOG commands

Slow speed can be activated independently from a start or stop via the control panel using the jog keys, via remote control using the analogue/digital input or via serial communication depending on the control source chosen in menu [200].



03-F44-2

Fig. 46 Slow speed controlled by an external signal.

## Slow speed for a selected time

Slow speed in forward direction can be activated before a start and/or after a stop. The resulting speed curve is shown in Fig. 47 overleaf. Slow speed will be active for the time period selected in menus [331] and [332]. Slow speed can be combined with any start and stop method. However, when slow speed at stop is used, it should be ensured that the motor speed is decreased to a low value when slow speed is activated. If necessary, brake can be activated as stop method in menu [320].

The slow speed strength can be adapted to the application's requirements in menu [330]. Maximum available slow speed strength corresponds to about 30% of nominal motor torque.

If so desired, the DC brake can be activated after slow speed at stop. If activated, the DC brake will be active for the time period chosen in menu [333].

Slow speed during a selected time is configured using the following menus:

- [330] Slow speed strength
- [331] Slow speed time at start
- [332] Slow speed time at stop
- [333] DC-brake at slow speed
- [324] Braking strength

## Slow speed controlled by an external signal

Slow speed controlled by an external signal is basically the same functionality as slow speed during a selected time described above. An external signal connected to the analogue/digital input is also used to deactivate slow speed before the set time period has expired.

When slow speed at start is configured and the analogue/digital input (menu [500]) is configured for slow speed, the motor will start rotating at slow speed in a forward direction after a start signal. When the number of edges set in menu [501] is detected on the analogue/digital input, slow speed is deactivated and a start is performed according to the start settings (menu [310] Off).

When slow speed at stop is configured and the analogue/digital input (menu [500]) is configured for slow speed, the motor will start rotating with slow speed in forward direction after a stop has performed. When the number of pulses set in menu [501] is detected on the analogue/digital input, slow speed is deactivated and the DC brake is activated if configured in menu [333].

Slow speed controlled by an external signal is configured using the following menus:

- [500] Digital/analogue input
- [501] Digital input pulses
- [330] Slow speed strength
- [331] Slow speed time at start
- [332] Slow speed time at stop
- [333] DC-brake at slow speed
- [324] Braking strength

Slow speed strength [330]

In this menu the slow speed strength is selected. The chosen setting applies for both slow speed during a selected time period, slow speed controlled by an external signal and slow speed using the JOG commands. The maximum setting (100) for the slow speed strength corresponds to about 30% of the nominal motor torque.

330<sup>o</sup>

Setting

Slow speed strength

10

Default:	10
Range:	10-100
10-100	Slow speed strength.

Slow speed time at start [331]

In this menu slow speed at start is activated and the time is set for which slow speed is active before a start. If slow speed at start is controlled by an external signal via the analogue/digital input, the set time becomes the maximum time for which slow speed is activated before a start is performed – if the number of edges set in menu [501] is not detected during the slow speed period.

331<sup>o</sup>

Setting

Slow speed time at start

OFF

Default:	oFF
Range:	oFF, 1-60 s
oFF	Slow speed at start is disabled
1-60	Slow speed time at start.

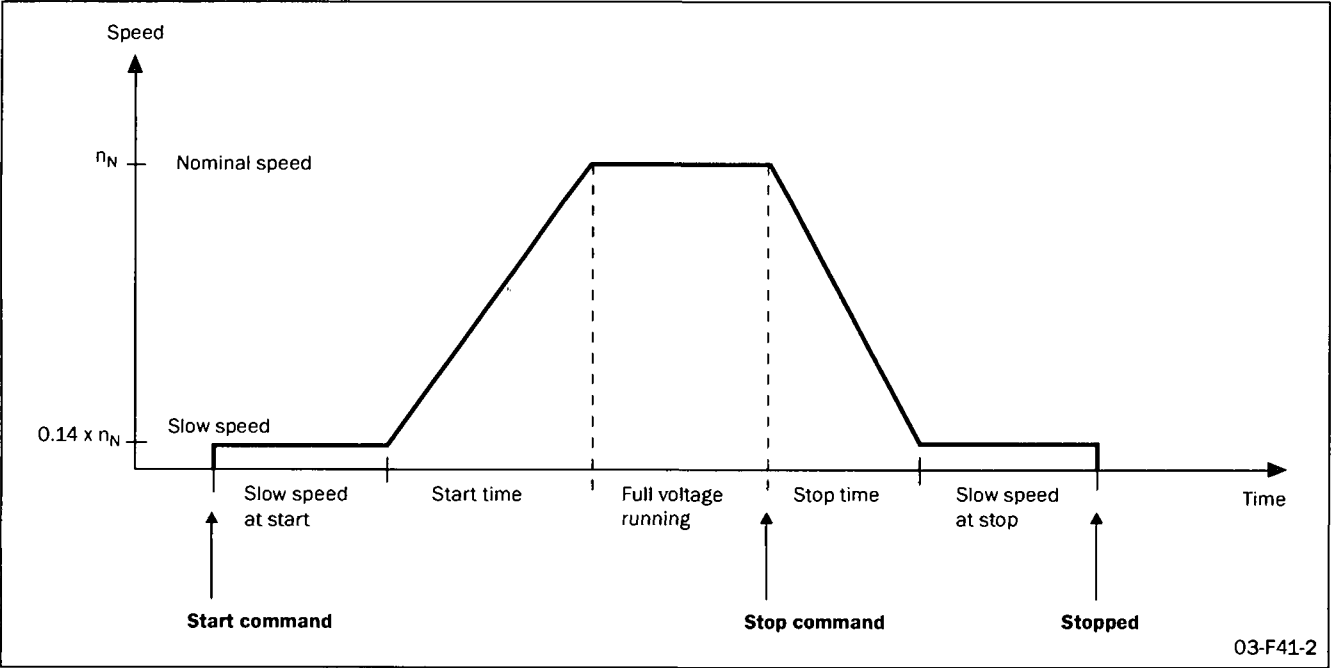


Fig. 47 Slow speed at start/stop during a selected time period.



## Slow speed time at stop [332]

In this menu slow speed at stop is activated and the time is set for which slow speed is active after a stop. If slow speed at stop is controlled by an external signal via the analogue/digital input, the set time becomes the maximum time for which slow speed is activated after a stop – if the number of edges is set in menu [501] is not detected during the slow speed period.

332 <sup>o</sup>		Setting
Slow speed time at stop		
o F F		
Default:	oFF	
Range:	oFF, 1-60 s	
oFF	Slow speed at stop is disabled	
1-60	Slow speed time at stop.	

## DC brake at slow speed [333]

In this menu the DC brake can be activated after slow speed at stop. This may be useful for loads with high inertia or if an exact stop position is desired. The DC brake will be active during the time set in this menu.

**NOTE: The brake strength used for DC brake after slow speed corresponds to the brake strength used for braking as stop method. The braking strength can be adjusted in menu [324].**

333 <sup>o</sup>		Setting
DC Brake at slow speed		
o F F		
Default:	oFF	
Range:	oFF, 1-60 s	
oFF	DC brake at slow speed disabled.	
1-60	DC brake duration time at slow speed.	

## Slow speed using the JOG commands

Slow speed in forward or reverse direction can be activated using the JOG commands. To use the JOG commands these have to be independently enabled for slow speed in forward or reverse direction in menus [334] and [335]. Depending on the control source chosen in menu [200], the JOG commands are accepted via control panel, remotely via analogue/digital input or via serial communications.

If the control panel is chosen as control source (menu [200]=1) and the JOG commands are enabled in menus [334] and [335], the JOG keys on the control panel can be used. Slow speed in forward or reverse direction will be active as long as the relevant button is pushed.

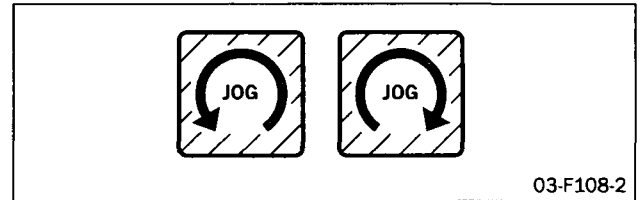


Fig. 48 Jog keys

If remote control is chosen (menu [200]=2) and the JOG commands are enabled in menus [334] and [335], the JOG commands can be given via analogue/digital input. The analogue/digital input can be configured either for jog forward or jog reverse (see description of menu [500] on page 77 for more information). Slow speed will be active as long as the signal on the analogue/digital input is active.

If serial communication control is chosen (menu [200]=3) and the JOG commands are enabled in menus [334] and [335], the JOG commands can be given via serial communication. (See separate instruction manual for serial communications options.)

## JOG forward enable [334]

In this menu the command for JOG in forward direction is enabled. Depending on the control source chosen in menu [200], the JOG forward command may be accepted from the control panel, via remote control or serial communication.

**NOTE! The enable functions are for all control sources.**

334 <sup>o</sup>		Setting
JOG forward enable		
o F F		
Default:	oFF	
Range:	oFF, on	
oFF	JOG forward disabled	
on	JOG forward enabled	

JOG reverse enable [335]

In this menu the command for JOG in reverse direction is enabled. Depending on the control source chosen in menu [200,], the JOG reverse command may be accepted from the control panel, via remote control or serial communication.



**CAUTION:** If the current transformers are not moved outside the softstarter, several alarm functions will not work properly.

335<sup>o</sup><sub>o</sub>

Setting

o

F

F

JOG reverse enable

Default:	oFF
Range:	oFF, on
oFF	JOG reverse disabled
on	JOG reverse enabled

8.7.5 Additional settings [340]-[342]

In this section the bypass functionality, power factor control and the control of the internal fan are described.

Bypass [340]

As the MSF 2.0 is designed for continuous running, a bypass contactor is not normally needed. However, where there is high ambient temperature or other special conditions, the use of a bypass contactor can be advantageous. In this case the by-pass contactor can be controlled by one of the relays. By default, relay K2 is configured to control a bypass contactor (for full voltage functionality, see description of menus [530]-[532] on page 85 for more information).

The use of a bypass contactor can be combined with any start and stop method without any connection changes being necessary. However, to use the motor protection functions, the load monitor and the viewing functions in bypassed state, the current transformers have to be moved outside the softstarter. For this purpose an optional extension cable is available, see chapter 12. page 107 (Options) for more information. Figures 49 - 51 below show a connection example.

If a bypass contactor is used, bypass operation must be enabled in menu [340] for the softstarter to work properly.

340<sup>o</sup><sub>o</sub>

Setting

o

F

F

Bypass

Default:	oFF
Range:	oFF, on
oFF	Bypass disabled
on	Bypass enabled.

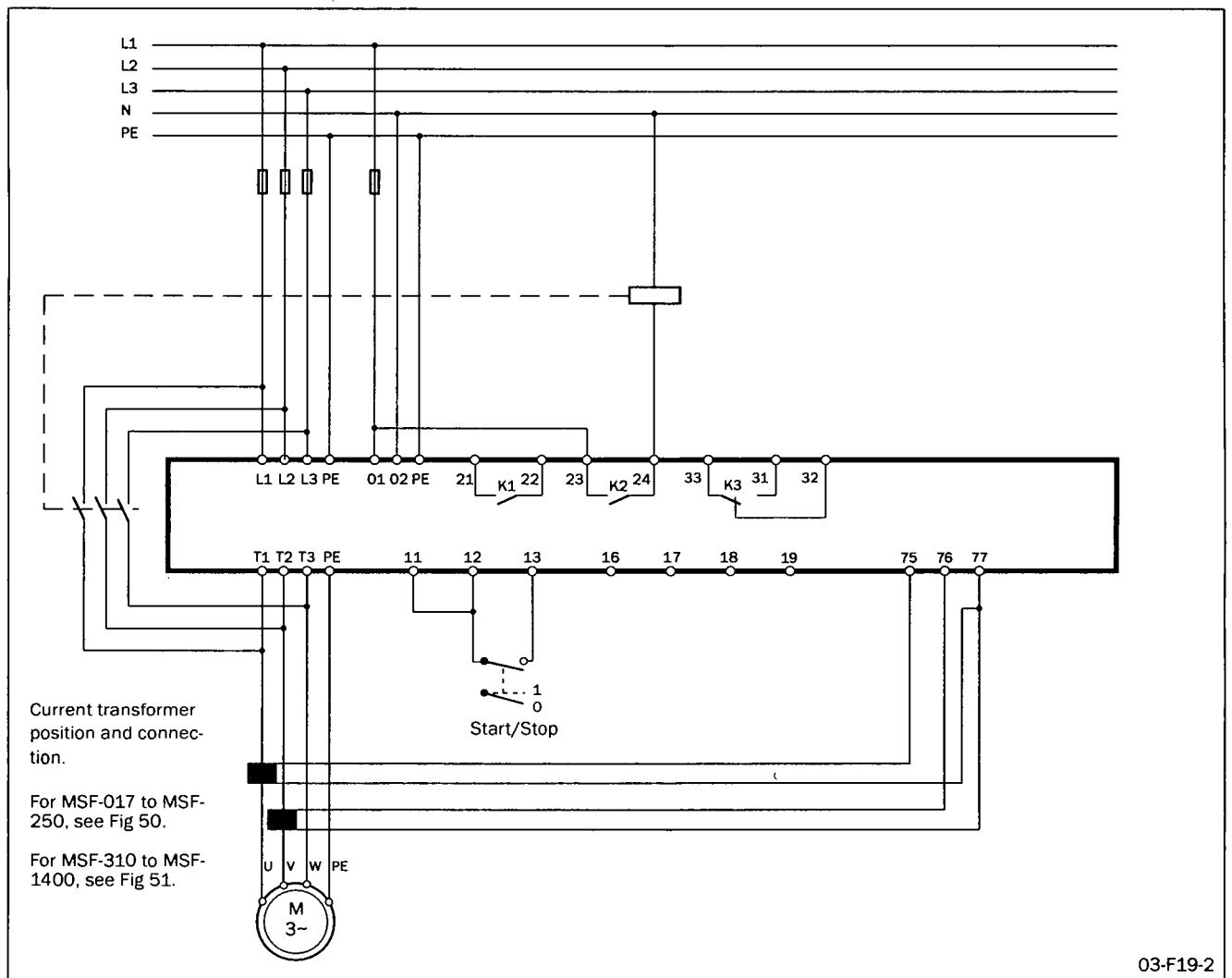


Fig. 49 Bypass wiring example MSF 310-1400.

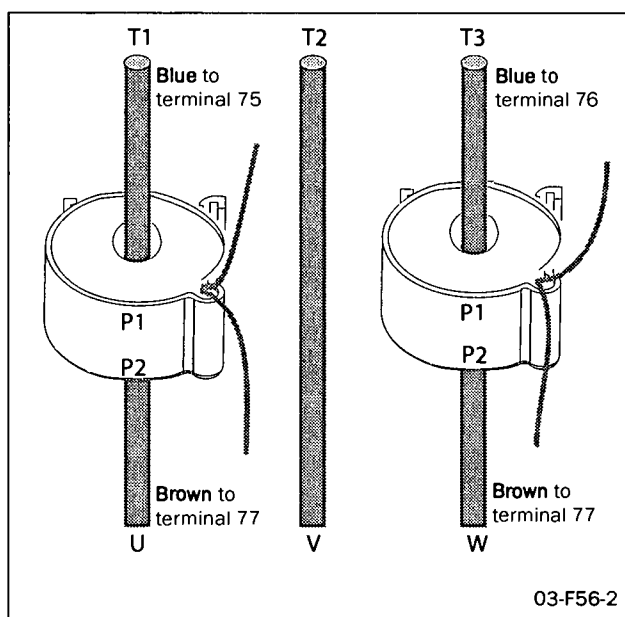


Fig. 50 Current transformer position for Bypass on MSF-017 to MSF-250.

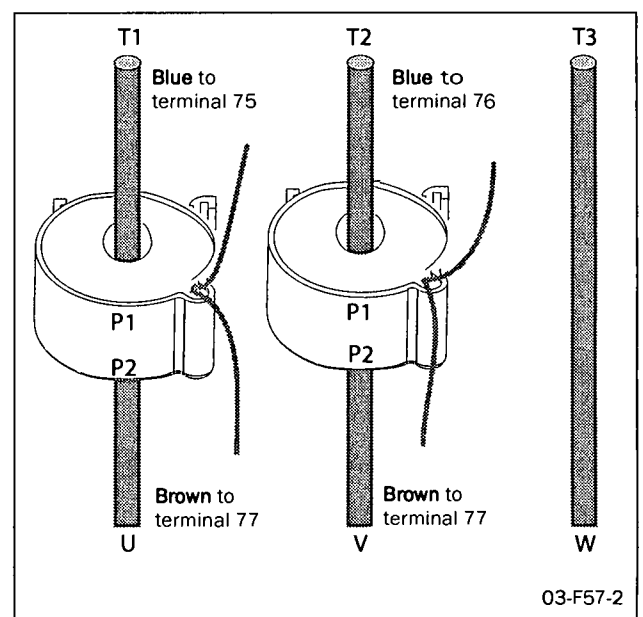


Fig. 51 Current transformer position for Bypass on MSF-310 to MSF-1400.

## Power Factor Control PFC [341]

During operation, the softstarter continuously monitors the load of the motor. Particularly when idling or when only partially loaded, it is sometimes desirable to improve the power factor. If Power Factor Control (PFC) is selected, the softstarter reduces the motor voltage when the load is lower. Power consumption is reduced and the degree of efficiency improved.

341 <sup>o</sup>		Setting
Power Factor Control PFC		
OFF		
Default:	oFF	
Range:	oFF, on	
oFF	PFC disabled	
on	PFC enabled.	



**CAUTION: If Power Factor Control is used, the EMC Directive will not be complied with. External measures will be necessary to meet the requirements of the EMC Directive.**

## Fan continuously on [342]

This menu enables the internal fan to be switched on continuously. the default setting is for the fan only to run when the softstarter heatsink is too warm. The lifetime of the fan is increased by only running it when needed.

342 <sup>o</sup>		Setting
Fan continuously on		
OFF		
Default:	oFF	
Range:	oFF, on	
oFF	Fan is controlled by the heatsink temperature	
on	Fan is running continuously.	

## 8.8 Process protection

The MSF 2.0 softstarter is equipped with different functions for process protection:

[400]-[413] Load monitor

[420] External alarm

[430]-[440] Mains protection

### 8.8.1 Load monitor

The MSF 2.0 has a built-in load monitor, which continuously supervises the motor shaft power. This means, the process can easily be protected both from overload and underload conditions. The load monitor functionality includes both alarms and pre-alarms for overload (max power) and underload (min power). While the max. and min power alarms can be configured to affect operation (OFF, Warning, Coast, Stop, Brake), the respective pre-alarms only give an indication that an over- or underload situation may be close. The pre-alarm status is available on one of the programmable relays K1 to K3 if so configured (see description of the relays, menus [530] to [532] on page 85 for more information)

All load monitor alarms and pre-alarms are configured using a delay time and an alarm margin. The alarm margin is chosen as a percentage of nominal motor load. A max power alarm will occur when the actual power exceeds the normal load plus the max power alarm margin and a min power alarm will occur when the actual load is lower than the normal load minus the min power margin. Normal load is the shaft power needed under normal operation conditions. The default normal load is considered to be 100% of the nominal motor power. Depending on the dimensioning of the motor with respect to the application, this value may need to be adapted. Normal load can easily be adapted by using the Autoset function in menu [411]. When an Autoset is performed the actual motor shaft power will be measured and stored to the Normal load.

A start delay can be configured to avoid faulty alarms due to initial over- or underload situations at start.

Fig. 52 illustrates the load monitor functionality with an example of a load curve.

If the operation has been interrupted due to a max or min power alarm, a manual reset and a new start signal is needed to continue operation. The reset and the start signal can be given via control panel, remotely or via serial communication depending on the control source chosen in menu [200]. Regardless of the chosen control source, it is always possible to initiate a reset via control panel.

**NOTE: A reset via control panel will never start the motor.**

**NOTE! The load monitor alarms are disabled during deceleration.**

**NOTE: When using the load monitor, check that the nominal motor power is set properly in menu [212].**

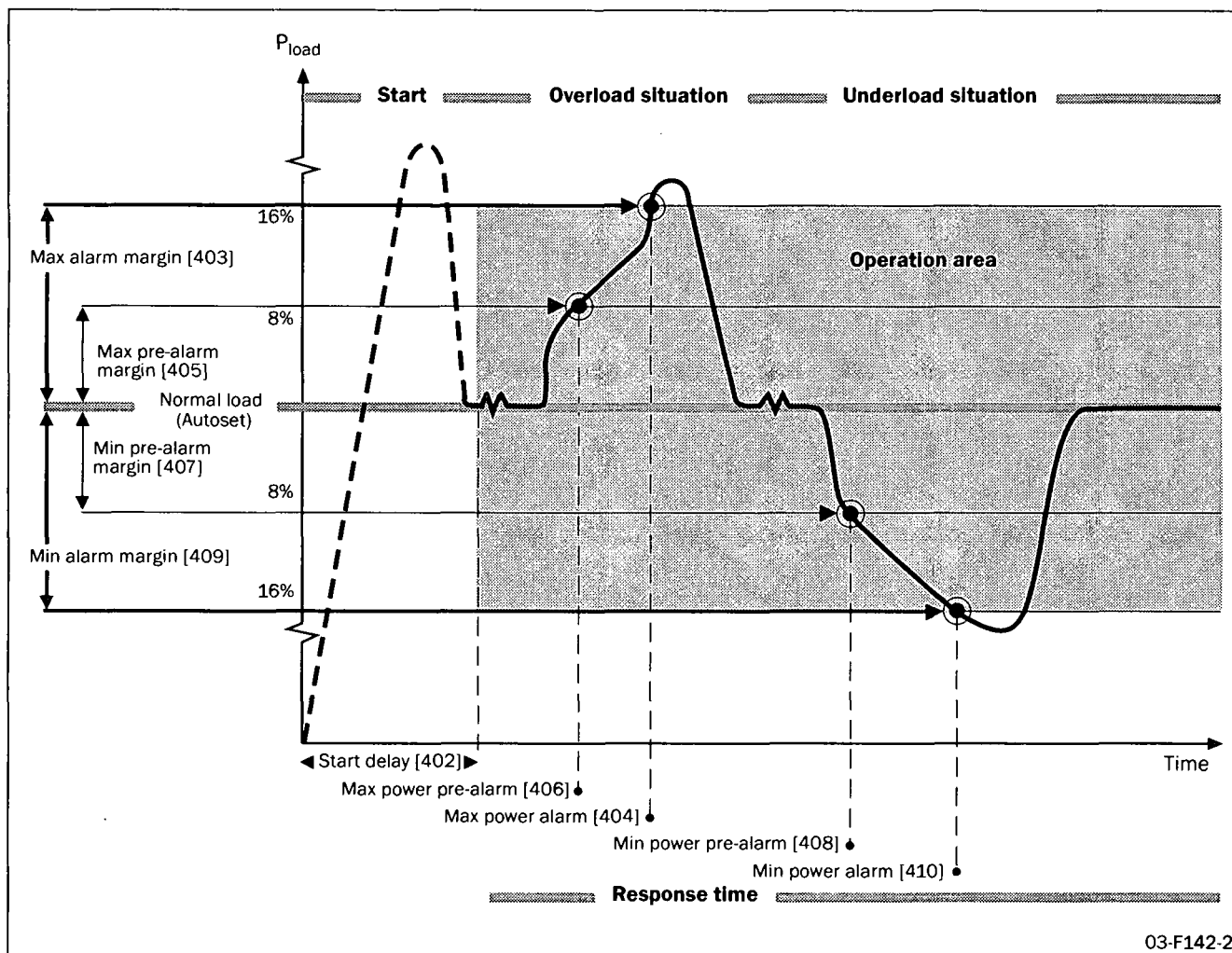


Fig. 52 Load monitor alarm functions

For max and min power alarms the following alarm actions are available:

#### Off

The protection method is deactivated.

#### Warning

The appropriate alarm message is shown in the display and relay K3 is activated (for default configuration of the relays). However, the motor is not stopped and operation continues. The alarm message will disappear and the relay will be reset when the fault disappears. The alarm may also be reset manually.

#### Coast

The appropriate alarm message is shown in the display and relay K3 is activated (for default configuration of the relays). The motor voltage is automatically switched off. The motor freewheels until it stops.

#### Stop

The appropriate alarm message is shown in the display and relay K3 is activated (for default configuration of the relays). The motor is stopped according to the stop settings in menus [320] to [325].

#### Brake

The appropriate alarm message is shown in the display and relay K3 is activated (for default configuration of the relays). The brake function is activated according to the braking method chosen in menu [323] and the motor is stopped according to the alarm brake settings in menus [326] to [327] (braking strength and braking time).

If the operation has been interrupted due to a max or min power alarm, a reset signal and a new start signal are needed to restart the motor. The reset and the start signal can be given via control panel, remotely or via serial communication depending on the control source chosen in menu [200]. Regardless of the chosen control source, it is always possible to initiate a reset via control panel.

**NOTE: A reset via control panel will never start the motor.**

## Max power alarm [400]

In this menu max power alarm is enabled and a proper alarm action is selected. The pre-alarm functionality for max power is automatically enabled together with the max power alarm.

400 <sup>o</sup>				Setting
<div> <div></div> <div>0</div> <div>F</div> <div>F</div> </div>				<b>Max power alarm (alarm code F6)</b>
Default:	oFF			
Range:	oFF, 1, 2, 3, 4			
oFF	Max power alarm is disabled.			
1	Warning			
2	Coast			
3	Stop			
4	Brake			

## Min power alarm [401]

In this menu min power alarm is enabled and a proper alarm action is selected. The pre-alarm functionality for min power is automatically enabled together with the min power alarm.

401 <sup>o</sup>				Setting
<div> <div></div> <div>0</div> <div>F</div> <div>F</div> </div>				<b>Min power alarm (alarm code F7)</b>
Default:	oFF			
Range:	oFF, 1, 2, 3, 4			
oFF	Min power alarm is disabled.			
1	Warning			
2	Coast			
3	Stop			
4	Brake			

## Start delay power alarms [402]

This menu is available if max or min power alarm is enabled in menu [400] or [401]. In this menu the start delay for the power alarms and pre-alarms is selected. A start delay is useful for avoiding faulty alarms due to initial over- or under-load situations. The start delay begins when a start of the motor is initiated.

402 <sup>o</sup>				Setting
<div> <div></div> <div></div> <div>1</div> <div>0</div> </div>				<b>Start delay power alarms</b>
Default:	10 s			
Range:	1-999 s			
1-999	Start delay for power alarms and pre-alarms.			

## Max power alarm margin [403]

This menu is available if Max power alarm is enabled in menu [400]. In this menu the max power alarm margin is configured. The margin is selected as percentage of nominal motor power. A max power alarm will occur if the actual motor shaft power exceeds the normal load (menu [412]) plus the chosen max power alarm margin for a longer time period than the max power alarm response delay set in menu [404].

403 <sup>o</sup>				Setting
<div> <div></div> <div></div> <div>1</div> <div>6</div> </div>				<b>Max power alarm margin</b>
Default:	16%			
Range:	0-100% of P <sub>n</sub>			
0-100	Max power alarm margin			

## Max power alarm response delay [404]

This menu is available if max power alarm is enabled in menu [400]. In this menu the response delay for the max power alarm is configured. A max power alarm will occur if the actual motor shaft power exceeds the normal load (menu [412]) plus the max power alarm margin set in menu [403] for a longer time period than the chosen max power alarm response delay.

404 <sup>o</sup>				Setting
<div> <div></div> <div></div> <div>0.5</div> </div>				<b>Max power alarm response delay</b>
Default:	0.5 s			
Range:	0.1-90.0 s			
0.1-90.0	Response delay for max power alarm.			

## Max power pre-alarm margin [405]

This menu is available if max power alarm is enabled in menu [400]. In this menu the max power pre-alarm margin is configured. The margin is selected in percent of nominal motor power. A max power pre-alarm will occur if the actual motor shaft power exceeds the normal load (menu [412]) plus the chosen max power pre-alarm margin for a longer time period than the max power pre-alarm response delay set in menu [406]. The max power pre-alarm status is available on one of the programmable relays K1-K3 if so configured (see description of the relays, menus [530] to [532] for more information).

405 <sup>o</sup>		Setting
<div> <div></div> <div></div> <div></div> <div>8</div> </div>		<b>Max power pre-alarm margin</b>
Default:	8%	
Range:	0-100% of $P_n$	
0-100	Max power pre-alarm margin.	

## Max power pre-alarm response delay [406]

This menu is available if max power alarm is enabled in menu [400]. In this menu the response delay for max power pre-alarm is configured. A max power pre-alarm will occur if the actual motor shaft power exceeds the normal load (menu [412]) plus the max power pre-alarm margin set in menu [405] for a longer time period than the chosen max power pre-alarm response delay.

406 <sup>o</sup>		Setting
<div> <div></div> <div></div> <div>0.5</div> </div>		<b>Max power pre-alarm response delay</b>
Default:	0.5 s	
Range:	0.1-90.0 s	
0.1-90.0	Response delay for Max power pre-alarm.	

## Min power pre-alarm margin [407]

This menu is available if min power alarm is enabled in menu [401]. In this menu the min power pre-alarm margin is configured. The margin is selected as a percentage of nominal motor power. A min power pre-alarm will occur if the actual motor load is below the nominal load (menu [412]) minus the chosen min power pre-alarm margin for a longer time period than the min power pre-alarm response delay set in menu [408]. The min power pre-alarm status is available on one of the programmable relays K2-K3 if so configured (see description of the relays, menus [530] to [532] for more information).

407 <sup>o</sup>		Setting
<div> <div></div> <div></div> <div></div> <div>8</div> </div>		<b>Min power pre-alarm margin</b>
Default:	8%	
Range:	0-100% of $P_n$	
0-100	Min power pre-alarm margin.	

## Min power pre-alarm response delay [408]

This menu is available if min power alarm is enabled in menu [401]. In this menu the response delay for min power pre-alarm is configured. A min power pre-alarm will occur if the actual motor shaft power is below the normal load (menu [412]) minus the min power pre-alarm margin set in menu [407] for a longer time period than the chosen min power pre-alarm response delay.

408 <sup>o</sup>		Setting
<div> <div></div> <div></div> <div>0.5</div> </div>		<b>Min power pre-alarm response delay</b>
Default:	0.5 s	
Range:	0.1-90.0 s	
0.1-90.0	Response delay for Min power pre-alarm.	

## Min power alarm margin [409]

This menu is available if min power alarm is enabled in menu [401]. In this menu the min power alarm margin is configured. The margin is selected as a percentage of nominal motor power. A min power alarm will occur if the actual motor shaft power is below the normal load (menu [412]) minus the chosen min power alarm margin for a longer time period than the min power alarm response delay set in menu [410].

409 <sup>o</sup>		Setting
<div> <div></div> <div></div> <div>1</div> <div>6</div> </div>		<b>Min power alarm margin</b>
Default:	16%	
Range:	0-100% of $P_n$	
0-100	Min power alarm margin.	

## Min power alarm response delay [410]

This menu is available if min power alarm is enabled in menu [401]. In this menu the response delay for min power alarm is configured. A min power alarm will occur if the actual motor shaft power is below the normal load (menu [412]) minus the min power alarm margin set in menu [409] for a longer time period than the chosen min power alarm response delay.

410 <sup>o</sup>				Setting
<div> <div></div> <div></div> <div>0.5</div> </div>				Min power alarm response delay
Default:		0.5 s		
Range:		0.1-90.0 s		
0.1-90.0		Response delay for Min power alarm.		

## Autoset [411]

This menu is available if max or min power alarm is enabled in menu [400] or [401]. The Autoset command performs a measurement of the actual motor load and automatically sets the normal load in menu [412].

To perform an Autoset, select YES, and press Enter during normal operation. If Autoset has been executed successfully, "SEt" is shown in the display for two seconds. After that "no" is shown again. An Autoset can also be initiated via the analogue/digital input, see description of menu [500] for more information.

**NOTE: Autoset is only allowed during full voltage running.**

411 <sup>o</sup>				Multi Setting
<div> <div></div> <div></div> <div>n</div> <div>o</div> </div>				Autoset
Default:		no		
Range:		no, YES		
no		No action		
YES		Autoset		

## Normal load [412]

This menu is available if Max or Min power alarm is enabled in menu [400] or [401]. Normal load is the shaft power needed under normal operation conditions. By default, Normal load is considered to be 100% of the nominal motor power. Depending on the dimensioning of the motor with respect to the application, this value may need to be adapted. Normal load can easily be adapted by using the Autoset function in menu [411]. Normal load is set as a percentage of nominal motor power.

**NOTE: When using the load monitor, check that the nominal motor power is set properly in menu [212].**

412 <sup>o</sup>				Setting
<div> <div></div> <div>1</div> <div>0</div> <div>0</div> </div>				Normal load
Default:		100%		
Range:		0-200% of P <sub>n</sub>		
0-200		Normal load		

## Output shaft power [413]

This menu is available if max or min power alarm is enabled in menu [400] or [401]. The menu provides a read-out of the actual shaft power. It can be used as input information when the normal load is set manually.

413 <sup>o</sup>				Read-out
<div> <div></div> <div></div> <div></div> <div>0</div> </div>				Output shaft power
Range:		0-200% of P <sub>n</sub>		

## 8.8.2 External alarm [420]

The MSF 2.0 can generate an alarm according to the status of an external signal. For a detailed description of the external alarm functionality see section 8.9.5, page 89.

The following alternatives are available for external alarm:

### Off

External alarm is deactivated.

### Warning

Alarm message F17 is shown in the display and relay K3 is activated (for default configuration of the relays) if the external alarm input is opened. However, the motor is not stopped and operation continues. The alarm message will disappear and the relay will be reset when the external alarm input is closed again. The alarm may also be reset manually.

### Coast

Alarm message F17 is shown in the display and relay K3 is activated (for default configuration of the relays) if the external alarm input is opened. The motor voltage is automatically switched off. The motor freewheels until it stops.

### Stop

Alarm message F17 is shown in the display and relay K3 is activated (for default configuration of the relays) if the external alarm input is opened. The motor is stopped according to the stop settings in menus [320] to [325].



## Brake

Alarm message F17 is shown in the display and relay K3 is activated (for default configuration of the relays) if the external alarm input is opened. The brake function is activated according to the braking method chosen in menu [323] and the motor is stopped according to the alarm brake settings in menus [326] to [327] (braking strength and braking time).

## Spinbrake

The functionality for the spinbrake alternative is the same as described above for the brake alternative. However, if spinbrake is chosen, braking can even be initiated from an inactive state by opening the external alarm input. This means the softstarter can catch a freewheeling motor and brake it down to standstill. The spinbrake alternative is only available for external alarm.

If the operation has been interrupted due to an external alarm, a reset signal and a new start signal are needed to restart the motor. The reset and the start signal can be given via control panel, remotely or via serial communication depending on the control source chosen in menu [200]. Regardless of the chosen control source, it is always possible to initiate a reset via control panel.

**NOTE: A reset via control panel will never start the motor.**

420 <sup>o</sup>		Setting
External alarm (alarm code F17)		
o F F		
Default:	oFF	
Range:	oFF, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5	
oFF	External alarm is disabled.	
1	Warning	
2	Coast	
3	Stop	
4	Brake	
5	Spinbrake	

## 8.8.3 Mains protection

The MSF 2.0 continuously monitors the mains voltage. This means the motor can easily be protected from over- and undervoltages as well as from voltage unbalance conditions. A phase reversal alarm is also available.

For mains protection the following alternatives are available:

### Off

The protection method is deactivated.

### Warning

The appropriate alarm message is shown in the display and relay K3 is activated (for default configuration of the relays). However, the motor is not stopped and operation continues.

The alarm message will disappear and the relay will be reset when the fault disappears. The alarm may also be reset manually.

## Coast

The appropriate alarm message is shown in the display and relay K3 is activated (for default configuration of the relays). The motor voltage is automatically switched off. The motor freewheels until it stops.

## Stop

The appropriate alarm message is shown in the display and relay K3 is activated (for default configuration of the relays). The motor is stopped according to the stop settings in menus [320] to [325].

## Brake

The appropriate alarm message is shown in the display and relay K3 is activated (for default configuration of the relays). The brake function is activated according to the braking method chosen in menu [323] and the motor is stopped according to the alarm brake settings in menus [326] to [327] (braking strength and braking time).

An overvoltage, undervoltage or voltage unbalance alarm is automatically reset when a new start signal is given. If the operation has been interrupted due to a phase reversal alarm, a reset signal and a new start signal are needed to restart the motor. The reset and the start signal can be given via control panel, remotely or via serial communication depending on the control source chosen in menu [200]. Regardless of the chosen control source, it is always possible to initiate a reset via control panel.

**NOTE: A reset via control panel will never start the motor.**

## Voltage unbalance alarm [430]

In this menu voltage unbalance alarm is enabled and a proper action is selected.

430 <sup>o</sup>		Setting
Voltage unbalance alarm (alarm code F8)		
o F F		
Default:	oFF	
Range:	oFF, 1, 2, 3, 4	
oFF	Voltage unbalance alarm is disabled.	
1	Warning	
2	Coast	
3	Stop	
4	Brake	

## Unbalance voltage level [431]

This menu is available if voltage unbalance alarm is enabled in menu [430]. In this menu the maximum allowed voltage unbalance level is selected. If the difference between any two line voltages exceeds the chosen level for the response delay time set in menu [432], a voltage unbalance alarm will occur and the action selected in menu [430] will be executed.

431 <sup>o</sup>		Setting
Voltage unbalance level		
10		
Default:	10%	
Range:	2-25% of $U_n$	
2-25	Voltage unbalance level.	

## Response delay voltage level unbalance alarm [432]

This menu is available if voltage unbalance alarm is enabled in menu [430]. In this menu the response delay for voltage unbalance alarm is selected. If the difference between any two line voltages exceeds the level set in menu [431] for the chosen response delay time, a voltage unbalance alarm will occur and the action selected in menu [430] will be executed.

432 <sup>o</sup>		Setting
Response delay voltage unbalance alarm		
1		
Default:	1 s	
Range:	1-90 s	
1-90	Response delay for voltage unbalance alarm.	

## Overvoltage alarm [433]

In this menu overvoltage alarm is enabled and a proper action is selected.

433 <sup>o</sup>		Setting
Overvoltage alarm (alarm code F9)		
OFF		
Default:	oFF	
Range:	oFF, 1, 2, 3, 4	
oFF	Overvoltage alarm is disabled.	
1	Warning	
2	Coast	
3	Stop	
4	Brake	

## Overvoltage level [434]

This menu is available if overvoltage alarm is enabled in menu [433]. In this menu the voltage level for an overvoltage alarm is selected. If any line voltage exceeds the chosen level for the response delay time set in menu [435], an overvoltage alarm will occur and the action selected in menu [433] will be executed.

434 <sup>o</sup>		Setting
Overvoltage level		
115		
Default:	115%	
Range:	100-150% of $U_n$	
100-150	Overvoltage level	

## Response delay overvoltage alarm [435]

This menu is available if overvoltage alarm is enabled in menu [433]. In this menu the response delay for overvoltage alarm is selected. If any line voltage exceeds the level set in menu [434] for the chosen response delay time, an overvoltage alarm will occur and the action selected in menu [433] will be executed.

435 <sup>o</sup>		Setting
Response delay overvoltage alarm		
1		
Default:	1 s	
Range:	1-90 s	
1-90	Response delay for overvoltage alarm.	

## Undervoltage alarm [436]

In this menu undervoltage alarm is enabled and a proper action is selected.

436 <sup>o</sup>		Setting
Undervoltage alarm (alarm code F10)		
OFF		
Default:	oFF	
Range:	oFF, 1, 2, 3, 4	
oFF	Undervoltage alarm is disabled.	
1	Warning	
2	Coast	
3	Stop	
4	Brake	

Undervoltage level [437]

This menu is available if undervoltage alarm is enabled in menu [436]. In this menu the voltage level for an undervoltage alarm is selected. If any line voltage is below the chosen level for the response delay time set in menu [438], an undervoltage alarm will occur and the action selected in menu [436] will be executed.

437

Setting

8

5

Undervoltage level

Default:	85%
Range:	75-100% of U <sub>n</sub>
75-100	Undervoltage level

Response delay undervoltage alarm [438]

This menu is available if undervoltage alarm is enabled in menu [436]. In this menu the response delay for undervoltage alarm is selected. If any line voltage is below the level set in menu [437] for the chosen response delay time, an undervoltage alarm will occur and the action selected in menu [436] will be executed.

438

Setting

1

Response delay undervoltage alarm

Default:	1 s
Range:	1-90 s
1-90	Response delay for undervoltage alarm

Phase sequence [439]

In this menu the actual phase sequence is shown.

**NOTE! The actual phase sequence can only be shown with a motor connected.**

439

Read-out

L

-

-

-

Phase sequence

Range:	L123, L321
L123	Phase sequence L1, L2, L3
L321	Phase sequence L3, L2, L1
L--	Phase sequence can not be detected

Phase reversal alarm [440]

In this menu phase reversal alarm is enabled and a proper action can be chosen. The softstarter will detect the phase sequence prior to each start attempt. If the actual phase sequence does not match the phase sequence stored during activation of phase reversal alarm, the action chosen in this menu will be executed. If alternative 2 (Coast) is chosen, no start will be performed if the wrong phase sequence is detected.

To activate phase reversal alarm, a motor has to be connected and the mains voltage has to be switched on. This means activation of phase reversal alarm can either be done in stopped state with the mains contactor switched on manually or during full voltage running.

440

Setting

o

F

F

Phase reversal alarm (alarm code F16)

Default:	oFF
Range:	oFF, 1, 2
oFF	Phase reversal alarm is disabled.
1	Warning
2	Coast

**NOTE! The actual phase sequence can be viewed in menu [439].**

8.9 I/O settings

In this section the programmable inputs and outputs are described.

- [500]-[513] Input signals
- [520]-[534] Output signals

A connection example using most of the available in- and outputs is shown in Fig. 53.

This section includes also detailed descriptions of the following functions:

- Start/stop/reset command functionality
- Start right/left functionality
- External alarm functionality
- External control of parameter set

8.9.1 Input signals

The MSF 2.0 has one programmable analogue/digital input and four programmable digital inputs for remote control.

Analogue/digital input [500]

The analogue/digital input can either be programmed for analog or digital functionality. The following alternatives are available when using the input for digital signals:

Rotation sensor

An external rotation sensor can be used for the braking functions. If the analogue/digital input is configured for rotation sensor functionality in menu [500], braking will be deactivated if the number of edges chosen in menu [501] is detected on the input.

Slow speed

This alternative is used for slow speed controlled by an external signal (see the description of slow speed and jog functions in section 8.7.4, page 63 for more information). If the number of edges set in menu [501] is detected on the input, slow speed at start or stop will be finished.

Jog Forward

With this alternative, slow speed in forward direction can be activated via the analogue/digital input. Slow speed will be active as long as the input signal is high. See the description of slow speed and jog functions in section 8.7.4, page 63 for more information. Note that "JOG" forward has to be enabled in menu [334] to use this function.

Jog reverse

With this alternative, slow speed in reverse direction can be activated via the analogue/digital input. Slow speed will be active as long as the input signal is high. See the description of slow speed and jog functions in section 8.7.4, page 63 for more information. Note that "JOG" reverse has to be enabled in menu [335] to use this function.

Autoset

When the analogue/digital input is configured for Autoset, a rising edge on the input will initiate an Autoset. Note that an Autoset only can be performed during full voltage running. See description of load monitor functionality in section 8.8.1, page 69 for more information

The following alternatives are available when using the input for analogue signals:

Analogue start/stop: 0-10 V/0-20 mA or 2-10 V/4-20 mA:

The analogue/digital input is used for the reference signal which controls analogue start stop. Two signal ranges (0-10 V/0-20 mA or 2-10 V/4-20 mA) can be chosen. Analogue start/stop is activated if alternative 6 or 7 is chosen in menu [500]. See the description of Analogue start/stop on page 79 for more information.

500

Setting

o

F

F

Analogue/digital input

Default:	oFF
Range:	oFF, 1-7
oFF	Analogue/digital input disabled
1	Digital, Rotation sensor
2	Digital, Slow speed
3	Digital, Jog forward
4	Digital, Jog reverse
5	Digital, Autoset
6	Analogue start/stop: 0-10 V/0-20 mA
7	Analogue start/stop: 2-10 V/4-20 mA

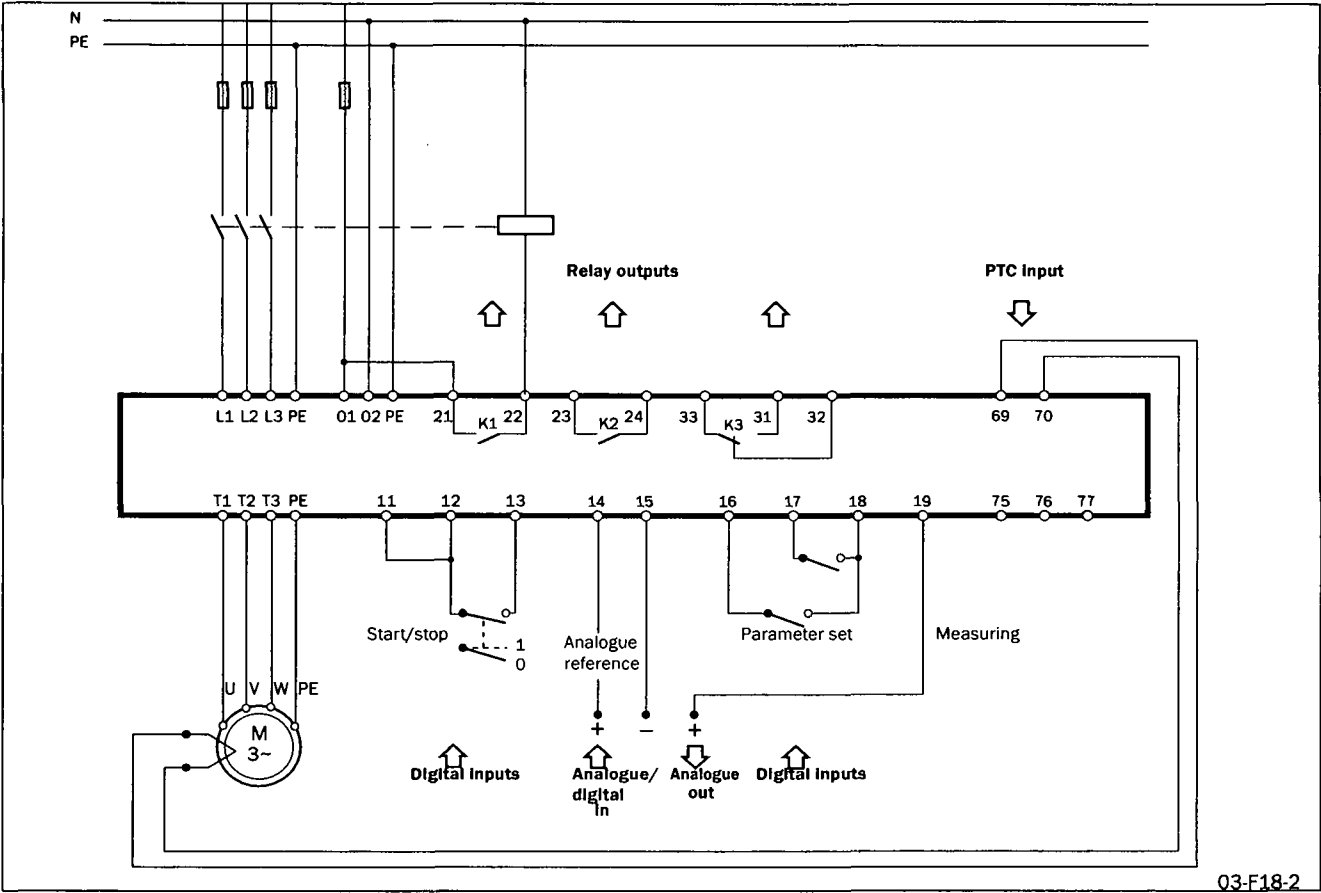


Fig. 53 Connection example when using the digital and analogue inputs and outputs

### Digital input

The analogue/digital input is used as a digital input if one of alternatives 1-5 in menu [500] is selected. Jumper J1 has to be set for voltage control, which is the default setting.

The input signal is interpreted as 1 (high) when the input voltage exceeds 5 V. When the input voltage is below 5 V the input signal is interpreted as 0 (low). The input signal can be generated using the internal control supply voltage by connecting a switch between terminal 14 (analogue/digital input) and 18 (supply voltage to terminals 14, 16 and 17).

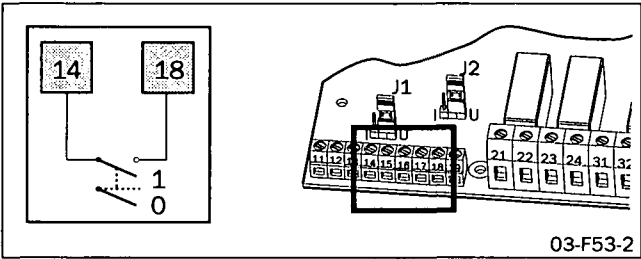


Fig. 54 Wiring for digital input signal.

### Digital input pulses [501]

This menu is available if the analogue/digital input is programmed for digital input signals for rotation sensor (alternative 1) or for slow speed (alternative 2) in menu [500]. In this menu the number of edges is chosen to deactivate the braking function or the slow speed function respectively.

**NOTE: All edges, both positive and negative transitions, will be counted.**

501 <sup>0</sup>		Setting
Digital Input pulses		
1		
Default:	1	
Range:	1-100	
1-100	Number of edges	

## Analogue input

The analogue/digital input is used as an analogue input if one of alternatives 6-7 in menu [500] is selected. In this case, the input can be configured for voltage or current signal using jumper J1 (see Fig. 55). By default jumper J1 is set to voltage signal. According to the chosen alternative in menu [500], the signal will be interpreted as 0-10 V/ 0-20 mA or 2-10 V/4-20 mA (see Fig. 56).

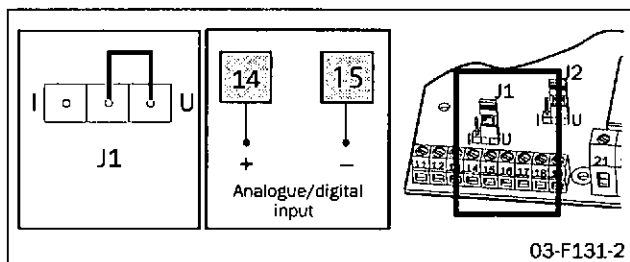


Fig. 55 Wiring for analogue/digital input and setting of J1 for analogue current or voltage control.

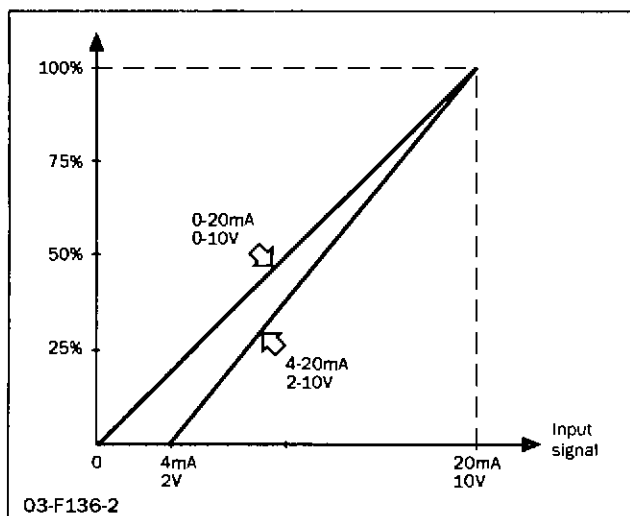


Fig. 56 Analogue input

## Analogue start/stop

Starts and stops can be performed according to a process signal on the analogue/digital input. This means that e.g. the operation of a pump may be controlled according to a flow signal.

Analogue start/stop is available if remote control or serial communication control is chosen in menu [200] (alternatives 2 or 3).

**NOTE: Analogue start/stop is not available if control panel is chosen as control source in menu [200] (alternative 1).**

If a start signal is given via remote or serial communication (according to the setting in menu [200]), the softstarter will check the reference signal on the analogue/digital signal. A start will be performed if the level of the reference signal is below the analogue start/stop on-value chosen in menu

[502] for a longer time than the analogue start/stop delay time set in menu [504]. A stop will be performed if the reference signal exceeds the analogue start/stop off-value chosen in menu [503] for a longer time than the analogue start/stop delay time set in menu [504].

**NOTE: If the selected analogue start/stop on-value is bigger than or equal to the off-value, a level above the on-value at the analogue input will cause a start. A value below the off-value will in this case cause a stop.**

The start/stop LED on the front of the MSF will be flashing if the softstarter is in standby mode waiting for an analogue start.

**Warning: A flashing start/stop LED is indicating standby mode - e.g. waiting for an analogue start. The motor may be started automatically at a moment's notice**

## Analogue start/stop on-value [502]

This menu is available if analogue start/stop is activated in menu [500] (alternative 6 or 7). If the reference signal on the analogue/digital input is below the chosen on-level for a longer time than the analogue start/stop delay time chosen in menu [504], a start will be performed..

**NOTE: If the selected analogue start/stop on-value is bigger than or equal to the off-value, a level above the on-value at the analogue/digital input will cause a start.**

**NOTE: An analogue start will only be performed if the softstarter has been set to standby mode by a valid start signal via remote control or serial communication.**

The analogue start/stop on-value is chosen as a percentage of the input signal range. This means, if the analogue/digital input is configured for 0-10 VDC/0-20 mA (alternative 6 in menu [500]), 25% corresponds to 2.5 V or 5 mA. If the analogue/digital input is configured for 2-10 VDC/4-20 mA (alternative 7 in menu [500]), 25% corresponds to 4 V or 8 mA.

502		Setting
Analogue start/stop on-value		
25		
Default:	25%	
Range:	0-100% of input signal range	
0-100	Analogue start/stop on-value.	

Analogue start/stop off-value [503]

This menu is available if analogue start/stop is activated in menu [500] (alternatives 6 or 7). If the reference signal on the analogue/digital input exceeds the chosen off-level for a longer time than the analogue start/stop delay time chosen in menu [504], a stop will be performed.

**NOTE: If the selected analogue start/stop off-value is less than or equal to the on-value, a level below the off-value at the analogue/digital input will cause a stop.**

**NOTE: A stop will also be performed if the softstarter receives a stop signal via remote control or serial communication.**

The analogue start/stop off-value is chosen as a percentage of the input signal range. This means if the analogue/digital input is configured for 0-10 V / 0-20 mA (alternative 6 in menu [500]), 25% corresponds to 2.5 V or 5 mA. If the analogue/digital input is configured for 2-10 V / 4-20 mA (alternative 7 in menu [500]), 25% corresponds to 4 V or 8 mA.

503<sup>o</sup>

Setting

Analogue start/stop off-value

75

Default:	75%
Range:	0-100% of input signal range
0-100	Analogue start/stop off-value.

Analogue start/stop delay time [504]

This menu is available if analogue start/stop is activated in menu [500] (alternatives 6 or 7). In this menu the delay time for starts and stops caused by the analogue reference signal is set.

504<sup>o</sup>

Setting

Analogue start/stop delay time

1 s

Default:	1 s
Range:	1-999 s
1-999	Delay time for analogue start/stop

Digital inputs

The MSF 2.0 has four programmable digital inputs. The four inputs and their corresponding control supply terminals are shown overleaf in Fig. 57.

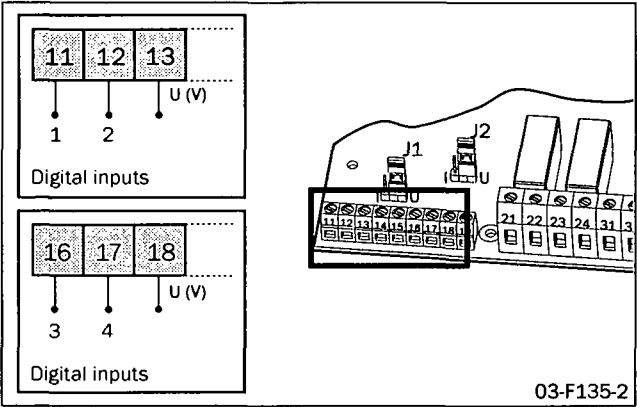


Fig. 57 Wiring for digital inputs 1-4.

The four digital inputs are electrically identical. The digital inputs can be used for remote control of start, stop and reset, for choice of parameter set and for external alarm.

Stop signal

If remote control is chosen in menu [200] (alternative 2), one digital input has to be programmed as stop signal.

**NOTE: No starts will be allowed if the input set for stop signal is open or if no input is configured for stop signal.**

If the motor is running a stop will be performed according to the stop settings in menus [320] to [325] as soon as the input configured for stop signal is opened. If more than one input is configured for stop signal, opening one of these will lead to a stop. Accordingly no starts will be allowed if any of these inputs is open.

Start and reset signal

The digital inputs can be configured for several different start signals (start, start R or start L signal). Closing any input, which is configured for start, will start the motor. Moreover, a rising edge on any input configured for start is interpreted as a reset signal.

**NOTE: If more than one digital input is configured for any of the start signals (start, start R or start L), closing more than one of these inputs at the same time will lead to a stop. However, if several digital inputs are configured for the same start functionality, e.g. start R, closing any of these inputs will lead to a start.**

Naturally the softstarter has no way of controlling the motor's running direction internally. However, if two mains contactors – one for each phase sequence – are used, these can be controlled by the softstarter using the programmable relays. The settings for the programmable relays in menus [530] to [532] correspond to the different start signals, which can be chosen for the digital inputs. In this way different running directions for the motor can be chosen.

### Example

1. If only one running direction is used, digital input 1 can be configured for start signal and digital input 2 for stop signal (default setting). In this case relay K1 may be configured for operation (default setting) and can control the mains relay. When digital inputs 1 and 2 are closed, the mains contactor will be activated and the motor will start. When digital input 2 is opened the motor will stop. The mains contactor will be deactivated after the stop has been finished.
2. If two running directions are desired, digital input 1 can be configured for start R, digital input 2 for stop and digital input 3 for start L. Relay K1 controls the mains contactor for running in right direction and may be configured for Operation R. Relay K2 controls the mains contactor with the opposite phase sequence for running in left direction and may be configured for Operation L. In this case closing digital inputs 1 and 2 (start right command) will lead to activation of the mains contactor for running in right direction and the motor will start in right direction. Opening digital input 2 will lead to a stop; the mains contactor for running right will be deactivated after the stop has been finished. Closing digital inputs 2 and 3 (while digital input 1 is open) will lead to activation of the mains contactor for running in left direction and the motor will start in left direction.

For more information see the description of the start right/left functionality in section 8.9.4, page 87.

### External alarm

The digital inputs can be configured as external alarm inputs. If an input configured for external alarm is opened, the action chosen in menu [420] for external alarm is performed. See description of the external alarm functionality in section 8.9.5, page 89 for more information.

**NOTE: If more than one digital input is configured for external alarm, opening any of these will lead to an external alarm.**

### Parameter set

This configuration enables choice of parameter set by an external signal. See description of external control of parameter set in section 8.9.6, page 90 for more information.

## Digital input 1 function [510]

In this menu the function for digital input 1 (terminal 11) is selected.

510 <sup>0</sup>				Setting
<div> <div></div> <div></div> <div></div> <div>1</div> </div>				Digital Input 1 function
Default:	1			
Range:	oFF, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7			
oFF	Digital input 1 is disabled			
1	Start signal			
2	Stop signal			
3	Parameter set, input 1			
4	Parameter set, input 2			
5	External alarm signal			
6	Start R signal			
7	Start L signal			

## Digital input 2 function [511]

In this menu the function for digital input 2 (terminal 12) is selected.

511 <sup>0</sup>				Setting
<div> <div></div> <div></div> <div></div> <div>2</div> </div>				Digital Input 2 function
Default:	2			
Range:	Off, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7			
oFF	Digital input 2 is disabled.			
1	Start signal			
2	Stop signal			
3	Parameter set, input 1			
4	Parameter set, input 2			
5	External alarm signal			
6	Start R signal			
7	Start L signal			



## Digital input 3 function [512]

In this menu the function for digital input 3 (terminal 16) is selected.

512 <sup>o</sup> <sub>o</sub>		Setting
Digital Input 3 function		
<div> <div></div> <div></div> <div></div> <div>3</div> </div>		
Default:	3	
Range:	oFF, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7	
oFF	Digital input 3 is disabled.	
1	Start signal	
2	Stop signal	
3	Parameter set, input 1	
4	Parameter set, input 2	
5	External alarm signal	
6	Start R signal	
7	Start L signal	

## Digital input 4 function [513]

In this menu the function for digital input 4 (terminal 17) is selected.

513 <sup>o</sup> <sub>o</sub>		Setting
Digital Input 4 function		
<div> <div></div> <div></div> <div></div> <div>4</div> </div>		
Default:	4	
Range:	oFF, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7	
oFF	Digital input 4 is disabled.	
1	Start signal	
2	Stop signal	
3	Parameter set, input 1	
4	Parameter set, input 2	
5	External alarm signal	
6	Start R signal	
7	Start L signal	

## 8.9.2 Output signals

The MSF 2.0 has one programmable analogue output and three programmable relays.

### Analogue output

The analogue output can present current, voltage, shaft power and torque for connection to a recording instrument, PLC etc. The external device is connected to terminals 19 (+) and 15 (-) according to Fig. 58 below. The analogue output can be configured for voltage or current signal. The

selection is made by jumper J2 on the control board. The default setting for J2 is voltage signal according to Fig. 58.

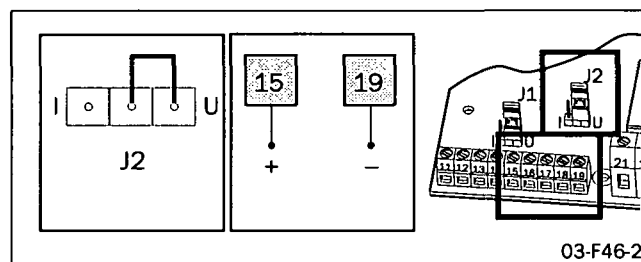


Fig. 58 Wiring for analogue output and setting of J2 for analogue current or voltage signal.

### Analogue output [520]

In this menu the analogue output can be set to provide either one of the signal ranges shown in Fig. 59.

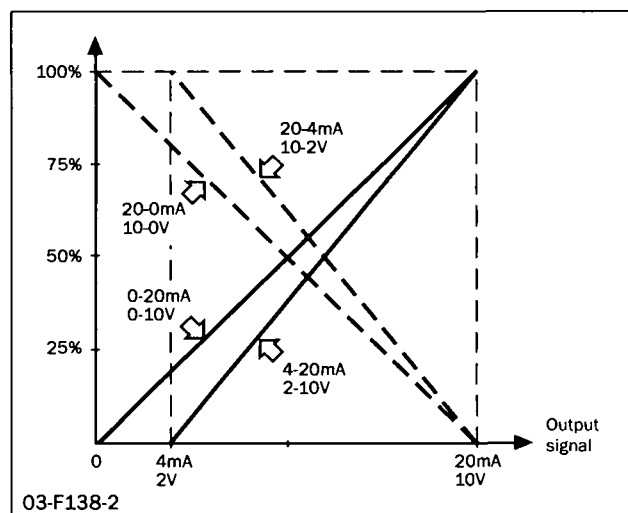


Fig. 59 Analogue output

520 <sup>o</sup> <sub>o</sub>		Setting
Analogue output		
<div> <div></div> <div>o</div> <div>F</div> <div>F</div> </div>		
Default:	oFF	
Range:	oFF, 1, 2, 3, 4	
oFF	Analogue output is disabled.	
1	Analogue signal 0-10 V/0-20 mA	
2	Analogue signal 2-10 V/4-20 mA	
3	Analogue signal 10-0 V/20-0 mA	
4	Analogue signal 10-2 V/20-4 mA	

## Analogue output function [521]

This menu is available if the analogue output is enabled in menu [520] (alternatives 1-4). In this menu the desired output function is chosen.

521 <sup>o</sup>		Setting
Analogue output function		
1		
Default:	1	
Range:	1, 2, 3, 4	
1	RMS current	
2	Line voltage	
3	Shaft power	
4	Torque	

The scaling of the analogue output is reset to the default values (0-100%) if a new output value is chosen in menu [521].

## Analogue output scaling

By default the scaling of the analogue output corresponds to Fig. 60. In this case the signal range of the analogue output chosen in menu [520] corresponds to 0 to 100% of the nominal motor current  $I_n$ , the nominal motor voltage  $U_n$ , the nominal motor power  $P_n$  or the nominal motor torque  $T_n$  respectively.

### Example

If 0-10 V / 0-20 mA is chosen in menu [520] (alternative 1) and RMS current is chosen as output value in menu [521] (alternative 1), a current of 100% of the nominal motor current gives 10 V or 20 mA at the analogue output. A current of 25% of the nominal motor current gives 2.5 V or 5 mA at the analogue output.

The scaling of the analogue output may be adapted for higher resolution or if values above the nominal values are to be monitored. The scaling is done by choosing a minimum scaling value in menu [522] and a maximum value in menu [523]. An example for a different scaling is shown in Fig. 60.

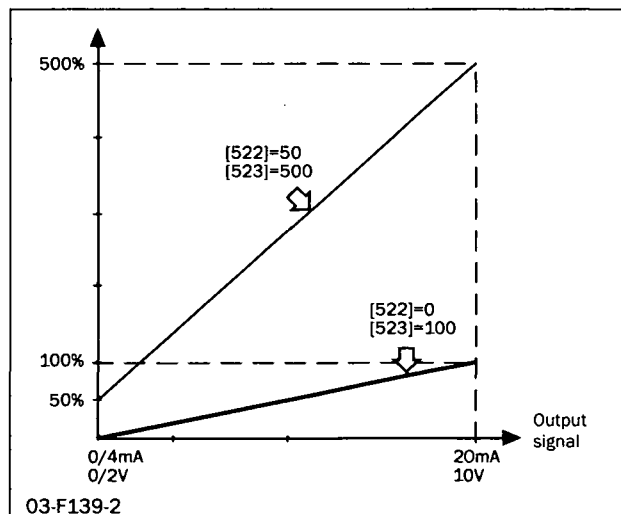


Fig. 60 Scaling of analogue output

With the scaling for wide range (menu [522]=50 and menu [523]=500) according to the example in Fig. 60 the following will apply.

If 0-10 V/0-20 mA is chosen in menu [520] (alternative 1) and RMS current is chosen as output value in menu [521] (alternative 1), a current of 100% of the nominal motor current gives approximately 1.1 V or 2.2 mA at the analogue output.

## Scaling analogue output, min [522]

This menu is available if the analogue output is enabled in menu [520]. In this menu the minimum value to be shown at the analogue output is chosen. The value is chosen in percent of  $I_n$ ,  $U_n$ ,  $P_n$  or  $T_n$  according to the output value chosen in menu [521].

522 <sup>o</sup>		Setting
Scaling analogue output, min		
0		
Default:	0%	
Range:	0-500%	
0-500	Minimum output value	

**NOTE:** The minimum value for scaling the analogue output is reset to the default value 0% if a new output value is chosen in menu [521].

Scaling analogue output, max [523]

This menu is available if the analogue output is enabled in menu [520]. In this menu the maximum value to be shown at the analogue output is chosen. The value is chosen as a percentage of  $I_n$ ,  $U_n$ ,  $P_n$  or  $T_n$  according to the output value chosen in menu [521].

523<sup>o</sup>

Setting

100

Scaling analogue output, max

Default:	100%
Range:	0-500%
0-500	Maximum output value.

**NOTE:** The maximum value for scaling the analogue output is reset to the default value 100% if a new output value is chosen in menu [521].

Programmable relay outputs

The softstarter has three built-in relays, K1, K2 and K3. All three relays are programmable.

For relay K1 (terminals 21 and 22) and K2 (terminals 23 and 24) the contact function can be programmed in menus [533] and [534] respectively to be normally open (NO) or normally closed (NC). Relay K3 is a change-over relay with three terminals (31-33), the NO functionality is available between terminals 31 and 32, NC functionality between terminals 32 and 33.

The relays can be used to control mains contactors or a bypass contactor or to indicate alarm conditions. As illustrated in Fig. 61 overleaf, the Operation setting (alternative 1) should be chosen to activate the mains contactor both during start, full voltage operation and stop. If a by-pass contactor is used, this can be controlled by a relay with the setting Full voltage (2). The settings Run (5) and Brake (4) are used when reverse current brake is chosen as stop method. In this case one relay has to be configured for Run and will control the mains contactor during the start and during full voltage operation. Another relay has to be configured for Brake and will control the contactor with reversed phase sequence during braking. For security reasons the relay configured for Brake will not be activated until after a time delay of 500 ms after deactivation of the relay configured for Run.

The settings Run R, Run L, Operation R and Operation L are used for the start right/left functionality. Consult section 8.9.4, page 87 for more information.

Different alarms can also be indicated on the relay outputs. With the setting Power pre-alarms (alternative 3), both a Max power pre-alarm or a Min power pre-alarm occurring will activate the relay. When Power alarms (10) is chosen as a setting, both a Max power alarm or a Min power alarm will activate the relay. If so desired, the relays can instead be pro-

grammed to react only to one specific power alarm or pre-alarm (11 - 14).

With setting All alarms (15) the relay will be activated for any alarm. As the power pre-alarms are not considered to be real alarms, the relay will not react to those. With alternative 16 chosen, even the power alarms are excluded. When External alarm (17) is chosen, only an External alarm will activate the relay. With setting 18, Autoreset expired, the relay will be activated when an additional fault occurs after the maximum allowed number of autoreset attempts have been executed. This may indicate that external help is needed to rectify a re-occurring fault (see description of Autoreset in section 8.5, page 52 for detailed information). With alternative 19 the relay will indicate all alarms which need a manual reset. This includes all alarms which are not solved with an automatic Autoreset, e.g. all alarms for which Autoreset is not enabled and each alarm occurring after the maximum allowed number of autoreset attempts has been executed.

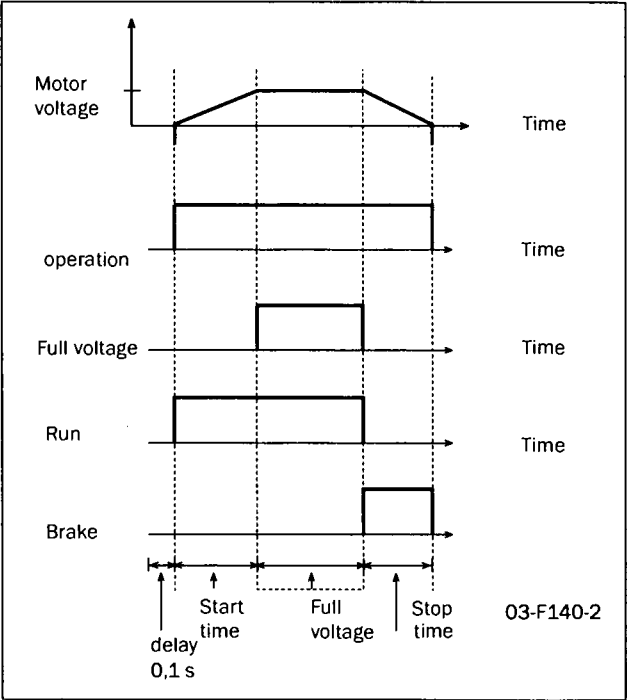


Fig. 61 The relay functions for operation, run and full voltage.

## Relay K1 [530]

In this menu the function for relay K1 (terminals 21 and 22) is chosen.

530 <sup>o</sup>		Setting
<div> <div></div> <div></div> <div></div> <div>1</div> </div> <b>Relay K1</b>		
Default:	1	
Range:	oFF, 1 - 19	
oFF	Relay inactive	
1	Operation	
2	Full voltage	
3	Power pre-alarms	
4	Brake	
5	Run	
6	Run R	
7	Run L	
8	Operation R	
9	Operation L	
10	Power alarms	
11	Max power alarm	
12	Max power pre-alarm	
13	Min power alarm	
14	Min power pre-alarm	
15	All alarms (except power pre-alarms)	
16	All alarms (except power alarms and pre-alarms)	
17	External alarm	
18	Autoreset expired	
19	All alarms which need manual reset	

**NOTE:** If relay K1 is chosen to be inactive (oFF), the relay state is determined by the contact function in menu [533].



**WARNING:** When reverse current brake is activated by changing the settings in menu [320] (stop method), [323] (braking method) or [326] (alarm brake strength), relay K1 is automatically set for Run (5). If a different setting is desired for the specific application, the relay setting has to be changed afterwards.

## Relay K2 [531]

In this menu the function for relay K2 (terminals 23 and 24) is chosen.

531 <sup>o</sup>		Setting
<div> <div></div> <div></div> <div></div> <div>2</div> </div> <b>Relay K2</b>		
Default:	2	
Range:	oFF, 1-19	
oFF	Relay inactive	
1-19	See menu "Relay K1 [530]" for setting alternatives.	

**NOTE:** If relay K2 is chosen to be inactive (oFF), the relay state is determined by the contact function in menu [534].



**WARNING:** When reverse current brake is activated by changing the settings in menu [320] (stop method), [323] (braking method) or [326] (alarm brake strength), relay K2 is automatically set for Brake (4). If a different setting is desired for the specific application, the relay setting has to be changed afterwards.

## Relay K3 [532]

In this menu the function for relay K3 (terminals 31-33) is chosen.

532 <sup>o</sup>		Setting
<div> <div></div> <div></div> <div>1</div> <div>5</div> </div> <b>Relay K3</b>		
Default:	15	
Range:	oFF, 1-19	
oFF	Relay inactive	
1-19	See menu "Relay K1 [530]" for setting alternatives.	

## K1 contact function [533]

In this menu the contact function for relay K1 can be chosen. The available alternatives are Normally open (1=Closing on relay activation) and Normally closed (2=Opening on relay activation).

533 <sup>o</sup>		Setting
K1 contact function		
<div> <div></div> <div></div> <div></div> <div>1</div> </div>		
Default:	1	
Range:	1, 2	
1	Normally open (N.O.)	
2	Normally closed (N.C.)	

## K2 contact function [534]

In this menu the contact function for relay K2 can be chosen. The available alternatives are Normally open (1=Closing on relay activation) and Normally closed (2=Opening on relay activation).

534 <sup>o</sup>		Setting
K2 contact function		
<div> <div></div> <div></div> <div></div> <div>1</div> </div>		
Default:	1	
Range:	1, 2	
1	Normally open (N.O.)	
2	Normally closed (N.C.)	

## 8.9.3 Start/stop/reset command functionality

Starting/stopping of the motor and alarm reset is done either from the control panel, through the remote control inputs or through the serial communication interface depending on the control source chosen in menu [200].

### Control panel

To start and stop from the control panel, the "START/STOP" key is used.

To reset from the control panel, the "ENTER ↵ /RESET" key is used.

Regardless of the chosen control source, it is always possible to initiate a reset via the control panel.

**NOTE! A reset via the control panel will never start the motor.**

## Serial communication

For description of the start, stop and reset commands via serial communication see the operation instruction supplied with this option.

## Remote control

When remote control is chosen in menu [200], the digital inputs are used to start and stop the motor and to reset upcoming alarms. In the following sections different possibilities for connecting the digital inputs are described. For the following explanations the following settings are assumed:

Menu	Description	Setting
510	Digital input 1 (terminal 11)	Start signal (1)
511	Digital input 2 (terminal 12)	Stop signal (2)

## 2-wire start/stop with automatic reset at start

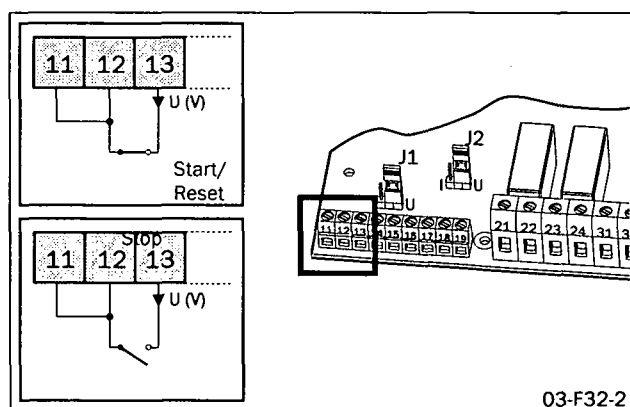


Fig. 62 2-wire connection of terminals for start/stop/automatic reset at start

An external switch is connected between terminals 12 and 13 and a jumper is connected between terminals 11 and 12.

### Start

Closing terminal 12 to terminal 13 will give a start command. If terminal 12 is closed to terminal 13 at power up, a start command is given immediately (automatic start at power up).

### Stop

Opening terminal 12 will give a stop command.

### Reset

When a start command is given there will automatically be a reset.

## 2-wire start/stop with separate reset

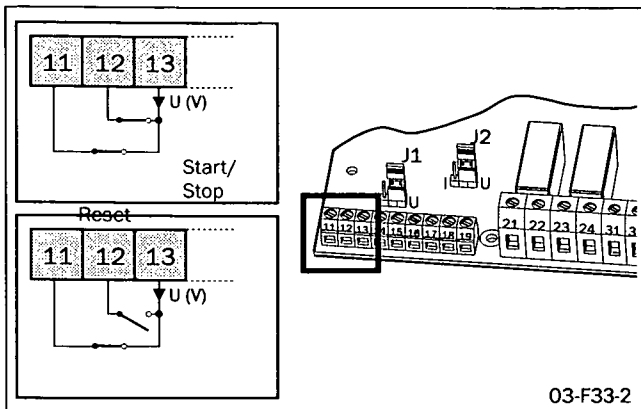


Fig. 63 2-wire connection of terminals for start/stop/separate reset

One external switch is connected between terminals 11 and 13 and a second switch is connected between terminals 12 and 13.

### Start

Closing terminals 11 and 12 to terminal 13 will give a start command. If terminals 11 and 12 are closed at power up, a start command is given immediately (automatic start at power up).

### Stop

Opening terminal 12 will give a stop command.

### Reset

When terminal 11 is opened and closed again a reset is given. A reset can be given both when the motor is running and when it is stopped.

## 3-wire start/stop with automatic reset at start

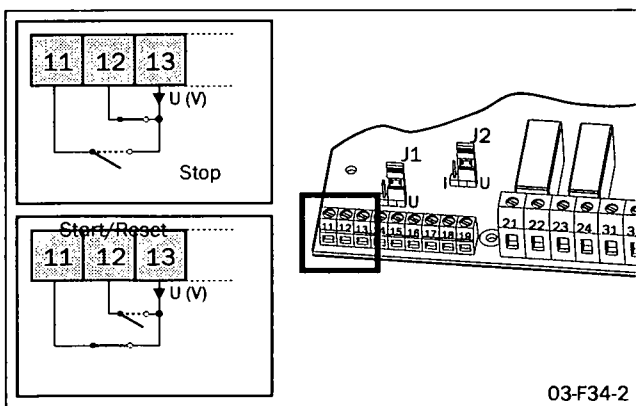


Fig. 64 Connection of terminals for start/stop/reset

An external switch is connected between terminals 11 and 13 and a second switch is connected between terminals 12 and 13.

The connection between terminal 11 and 13 is normally open and the connection between terminal 12 and 13 is normally closed.

### Start

Closing terminal 11 momentarily to terminal 13, will give a start command. There will not be an automatic start at power up as long as terminal 11 is open.

### Stop

To stop, terminal 12 is momentarily opened.

### Reset

When a start command is given there will automatically be a reset.

## 8.9.4 Start right/left functionality

The digital inputs can be configured to enable starting a motor in two different directions in combination with the programmable relays K1 and K2. A connection example is shown in Fig. 65. For the following description of the start right/left functionality, the following settings for the digital inputs are assumed.

Menu	Description	Setting
510	Digital input 1 (terminal 11)	Start R signal (6)
511	Digital input 2 (terminal 12)	Stop signal (2)
512	Digital input 3 (terminal 16)	Start L signal (7)

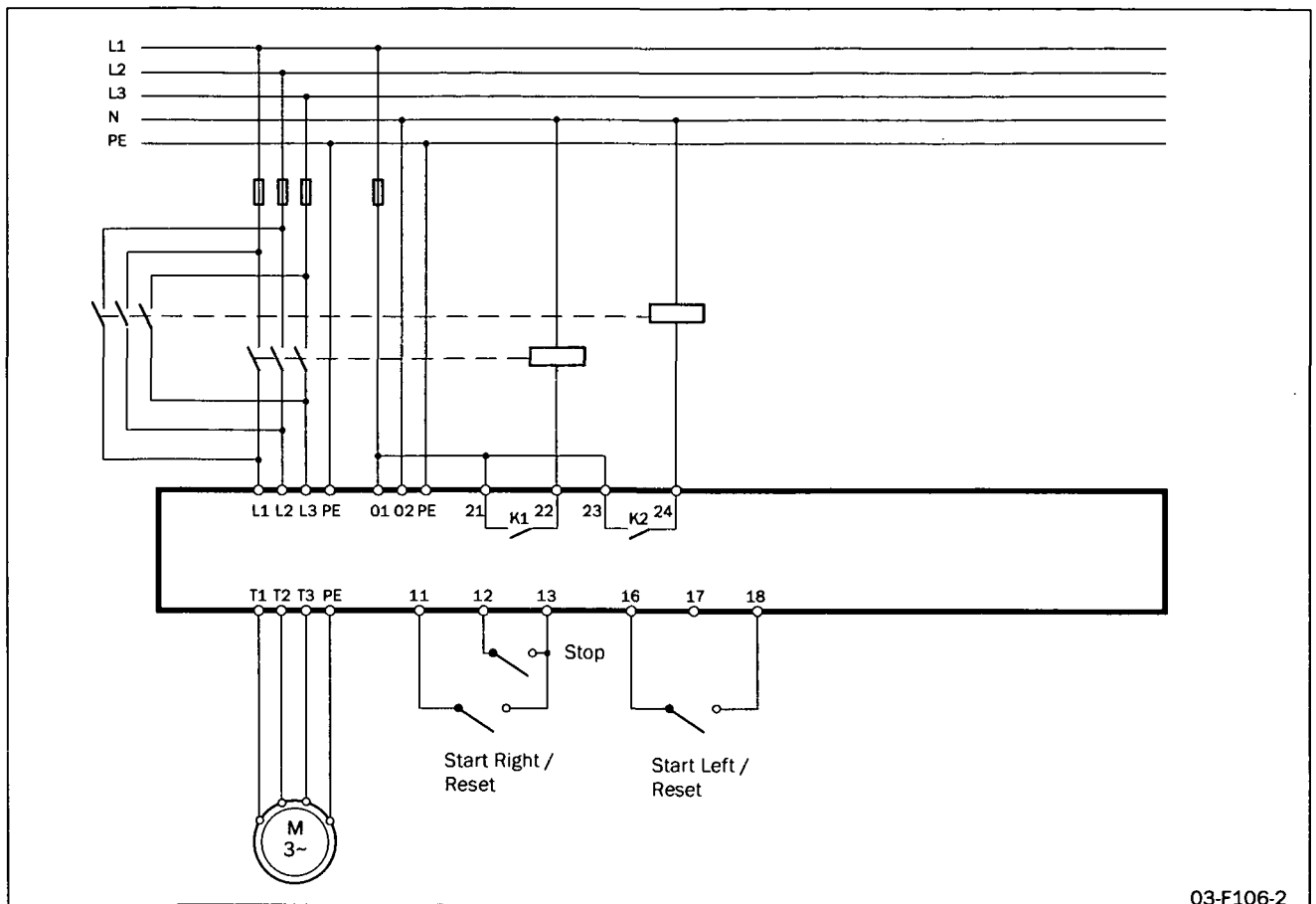


Fig. 65 Connection for start right/left

The configuration of the relays depends on the application's requirements. For applications which **do not** use the reverse current brake functionality, the following settings may be used.

Menu	Description	Setting
530	Relay K1 (terminals 21 and 22)	Operation R (8)
531	Relay K2 (terminals 23 and 24)	Operation L (9)

With these settings the functionality is as follows:

If terminals 11 and 12 are closed to terminal 13 while terminal 16 is open, the mains contactor for running in right direction will be activated by relay K1 and the motor will start in right direction. If terminal 12 is opened, a stop according to the stop settings in menus [320] to [325] will be performed. When the stop is finished, the mains contactor for running right will be deactivated by relay K1.

If terminal 12 is closed to terminal 13 and terminal 16 is closed to terminal 18 while terminal 11 is open, the mains contactor for running in left direction will be activated by relay K2 and the motor will start in left direction. If terminal 12 is opened, a stop according to the stop settings in menus [320] to [325] will be performed. When the stop is finished, the mains contactor for running left will be deactivated by relay K2.

If both start terminals (11 and 16) are closed to their respective supply voltage at the same time, a stop is performed in the same way as described above. In this case no start will be allowed.

A motor can be reversed from right to left direction as follows: When the motor is running in right direction, terminal 11 is opened. Terminal 16 is then closed to terminal 18. In this case the voltage to the motor is switched off and the mains contactor for running right is deactivated by relay K1. After a time delay of 500 ms the mains contactor for running left will be activated by relay K2 and a start in left direction will be performed. The motor can be reversed from running left to running right in the same way by opening terminal 16 while running left and then closing terminal 11.



**CAUTION:** Very high currents can arise when the motor is reversed from running at full speed in one direction to running at full speed in the opposite direction.



**WARNING: If configured according to the description above, relays K1 and K2 will never be activated at the same time. There is a time delay of 500 ms for the change-over between the relays. However, if the relays are not configured properly, they may be activated at the same time.**

For applications which use the reverse current brake functionality, the following settings for the relays may be used.

Menu	Description	Setting
530	Relay K1 (terminals 21 and 22)	Run R (6)
531	Relay K2 (terminals 23 and 24)	Run L (7)

With these settings the functionality is as follows:

If terminals 11 and 12 are closed to terminal 13 while terminal 16 is open, the mains contactor for running in right direction will be activated by relay K1 and the motor will start in right direction. If terminal 12 is opened the voltage to the motor is switched off and the mains contactor for running right is deactivated by relay K1. After a time delay of 500 ms the mains contactor for running left will be activated by relay K2 and the reverse current brake will brake the motor to standstill. When the stop is finished, the mains contactor for running left will be deactivated by relay K2.

If terminal 12 is closed to terminal 13 and terminal 16 is closed to terminal 18 while terminal 11 is open, the mains contactor for running in left direction will be activated by relay K2 and the motor will start in left direction. If terminal 12 is opened the voltage to the motor is switched off and the mains contactor for running left is deactivated by relay K2. After a time delay of 500 ms the mains contactor for running right will be activated by relay K1 and the reverse current brake will brake the motor to standstill. When the stop is finished, the mains contactor for running right will be deactivated by relay K1.

If both start terminals (11 and 16) are closed to their respective supply voltage at the same time, a stop is performed in the same way as described above. In this case no start will be allowed.

A motor can be reversed in the same way as described above for applications which do not use the reverse current brake functionality.



**WARNING: If configured according to the description above, relays K1 and K2 will never be activated at the same time. There is a time delay of 500 ms for the change-over between the relays. However, if the relays are not configured properly, they may be activated at the same time.**

**NOTE: When reverse current brake is activated by changing the settings in menu [320] (stop method), [323] (braking method) or [326] (alarm brake strength), relay K1 is automatically set for Run (5) and relay K2 is automatically set for Brake (4). To use the start right/left functionality in combination with reverse brake, the relay settings have to be adapted as described above once reverse current brake has been enabled.**

## 8.9.5 External alarm functionality

The external alarm functionality is used to generate an alarm depending on the state of an external alarm signal. Each of the digital inputs can be configured for external alarm signal. Fig. 66 shows a connection example with digital input 3 (terminal 16) configured for external alarm signal.

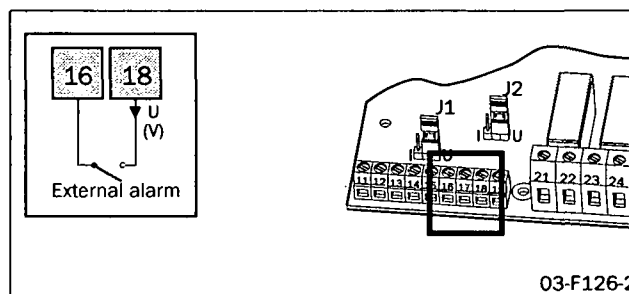


Fig. 66 Connection of terminals for external alarm

If any digital input is configured for external alarm signal, opening this input will cause an external alarm to occur if external alarm is enabled in menu [420].

**NOTE: If more than one digital input is configured for external alarm signal, opening any of these inputs will generate an external alarm if external alarm is enabled in menu [420].**

The following alarm actions are available for external alarm:

### Off

External alarm is disabled.

### Warning

An F17 alarm message is shown in the display and relay K3 is activated (for default configuration of the relays) if the external alarm input is opened. However, the motor is not stopped and operation continues. The alarm message will disappear and the relay will be reset when the external alarm input is closed again. The alarm may also be reset manually.

### Coast

An F17 alarm message is shown in the display and relay K3 is activated (for default configuration of the relays) if the external alarm input is opened. The motor voltage is automatically switched off. The motor freewheels until it stops.



## Stop

The appropriate alarm message is shown in the display and relay K3 is activated (for default configuration of the relays) if the external alarm input is opened. The motor is stopped according to the stop settings in menus [320] to [325].

## Brake

The appropriate alarm message is shown in the display and relay K3 is activated (for default configuration of the relays) if the external alarm input is opened. The brake function is activated according to the braking method chosen in menu [323] and the motor is stopped according to the alarm brake settings in menu [326] - [327] (Braking strength and braking time).

## Spinbrake

The functionality for the spinbrake alternative is the same as described above for the brake alternative. However, if spinbrake is chosen, braking can even be initiated from an inactive state by opening the external alarm input. This means the softstarter can catch a freewheeling motor and brake it down to standstill. The Spinbrake alternative is only available for external alarm.

External alarm can be used together with any setting for the control source chosen in menu [200].

If the operation has been interrupted due to an external alarm, a reset signal and a new start signal are needed to restart the motor. The reset and the start signal can be given via control panel, remote or via serial communication depending on the control source chosen in menu [200]. Regardless of the chosen control source, it is always possible to initiate a reset via control panel.

**NOTE: A reset via control panel will never start the motor.**

## 8.9.6 External control of parameter set

The parameter set can be chosen via the digital inputs if external control of parameter set is chosen in menu [240] (alternative 0). For this purpose any of the digital inputs can be configured for parameter set input 1 (PS1, alternative 3 in menus [510] to [513]) or parameter set input 2 (PS2, alternative 4 in menus [510] to [513]). Fig. 67 shows a connection example for external control of parameter set, in this example digital inputs 3 and 4 are configured for PS1 and PS2.

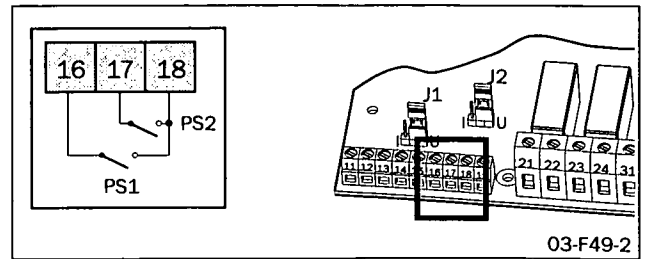


Fig. 67 Connection of external control inputs.

Table 15 How parameter set inputs are evaluated

Parameter Set	PS1 (16-18)	PS2 (17-18)
1	Open	Open
2	Closed	Open
3	Open	Closed
4	Closed	Closed

It is possible to use just one digital input to change between two parameter sets. According to the example above, digital input 3 is configured for PS1. If no digital input is configured for PS2, PS2 is considered to be open. In this case digital input 3 can be used to change between parameter set 1 and 2.

Changing the parameter set via external signal is only executed in stopped mode and at full voltage operation. If the input signals for PS1 and PS2 are changed during acceleration or deceleration, only the new parameters for the control source (menu [200]), the analogue/digital input (menu [500]), the digital input pulses (menu [501]), the analogue start/stop on- and off-value (menus [502] and [503]) and the analogue start/stop delay (menu [504]) are loaded immediately. All other parameters will not change until the softstarter is in stopped mode or at full voltage running. In this way a change of the control source will take effect immediately, which can be useful for changing from remote to manual operation for maintenance.

**NOTE: No parameters, except for the control source in menu [200] and the parameter set in menu [240], may be changed if external control of parameter set is activated in menu [240] (alternative 0).**

8.10 View operation

MSF 2.0 includes numerous viewing functions which eliminate the need for additional transducers and meters for monitoring the operation.

- [700] to [716] Operation (current, voltage, power etc.)
- [720] to [725] Status (softstart status, input/output status)
- [730] to [732] Stored values (operation time etc.)

8.10.1 Operation

RMS current

700<sup>0</sup>

Read-out

Current

0.0

Range:

0.0-9999 A

NOTE! This is the same read-out as menu [100].

Line main voltage

701<sup>0</sup>

Read-out

Line main voltage

0

Range:

0-720 V

Power factor

702<sup>0</sup>

Read-out

Power factor

0.00

Range:

0.00-1.00

Output shaftpower

The output shaft power is shown in kW or in HP depending on the setting for Enable US units in menu [202].

703<sup>0</sup>

Read-out

Output shaftpower

0.0

Range:

-999-9999 kW or HP

Output shaftpower in percentage unit

704<sup>0</sup>

Read-out

Output shaftpower in percentage units

0

Range:

0-200% of P<sub>n</sub>

NOTE: This is the same read-out as menu [413].

Shaft torque

The shaft torque is shown in Nm or in lbft depending on the setting for Enable US units in menu [202].

705<sup>0</sup>

Read-out

Shaft torque

0.0

Range:

-999-9999 Nm or lbft

Shaft torque in percentage unit

706<sup>0</sup>

Read-out

Shaft torque in percentage units

0

Range:

0-250% of T<sub>n</sub>

## Softstarter temperature

The softstart temperature is shown in degrees Celsius or in degrees Fahrenheit depending on the setting for Enable US units in menu [202].

707	°	Read-out
Softstarter temperature		
	L	0
Range:	Low, 30-96°C or low, 85-204°F	

## Current phase I1

708	°	Read-out
Current phase L1		
	0.	0
Range:	0.0-9999 A	

## Current phase L2

709	°	Read-out
Current phase L2		
	0.	0
Range:	0.0-9999 A	

## Current phase L3

710	°	Read-out
Current phase L3		
	0.	0
Range:	0.0-9999 A	

## Line main voltage L1-L2

711	°	Read-out
Line main voltage L1-L2		
		0
Range:	0-720 V	

## Line main voltage L1-L3

712	°	Read-out
Line main voltage L1-L3		
		0
Range:	0-720 V	

## Line main voltage L2-L3

713	°	Read-out
Line main voltage L2-L3		
		0
Range:	0-720 V	

## Phase sequence

714	°	Read-out
Phase sequence		
L	-	-
Range:	L-, L123, L321	

## Used thermal capacity

715	°	Read-out
Used thermal capacity		
		0
Range:	0-150%	

## Time to next allowed start

716	°	Read-out
Time to next allowed start		
		0
Range:	0-60 min	

8.10.2 Status

Softstarter status

720

Read-out

Softstarter status

0

Range:	1-12
1	Stopped, no alarm
2	Stopped, alarm
3	Run with alarm
4	Acceleration
5	Full voltage
6	Deceleration
7	Bypassed
8	PFC
9	Braking
10	Slow speed forward
11	Slow speed reverse
12	Standby (waiting for Analogue start/stop or Autoreset)

Digital Input Status

Status of the digital inputs 1- 4 from left to right. L or H are displayed for input status low (open) or high (closed).

721

Read-out

Digital input status

L

L

L

L

Range:

LLLL-HHHH

Analogue/digital Input status

Status of the analogue/digital input when it is used as digital input. L and H are displayed for input status low (open) and high (closed).

722

Read-out

Analogue/digital Input status

L

Range:

L, H

Analogue/digital input value

Value on the analogue/digital input as a percentage of the input range. This read-out depends on the configuration of the analogue/digital input in menu [500], e.g. if the analogue/digital input is configured for analogue start/stop 0-10 V/0-20 mA (alternative 6), an input signal of 4 V or 8 mA will be shown as 40%. However, if the analogue/digital input is configured for analogue start/stop 2.10 V/4-20 mA (alternative 7), an input signal of 4 V or 8 mA will be shown as 25%.

723

Read-out

Analogue/digital input value

0

Range:

0-100%

Relay status

Status of the relays K1 to K3 from the left to the right. L or H are displayed for relay status low (opened) or high (closed). The status described for relay K3 corresponds to the status of terminal 3.

724

Read-out

Relay status

L

L

L

Range:

LLL-HHH

Analogue Output value

Value on the analogue output as a percentage of the output range. This read-out depends on the configuration of the analogue output in menu [520], e.g. if the analogue/digital input is configured for 0-10 V/0-20 mA (alternative 1) or for 10-0 V/20-0 mA (alternative 3), an output signal of 4 V or 8 mA will be shown as 40%. However, if the analogue output is configured for 2-10 V/4-20 mA (alternative 2) or 10-2 V/20-4 mA (alternative 4), an output signal of 4 V or 8 mA will be shown as 25%.

725

Read-out

Analogue Output value

0

Range:

0-100%

### 8.10.3 Stored values

**Operation time.** The operation time is the time during which the motor connected to the softstarter is running, not the time during which the supply power is on.

If the actual value for the operation time exceeds 9999 hours the display will alternate between the four lower digits and the higher digits.

#### Example

If the actual operation time is 12467, 1 will be shown for 1 s, then 2467 will be shown for 5 s and so on.

730	0	Read-out
Operation time		
<div> <div></div> <div></div> <div></div> <div>0</div> </div>		
Range:	0-9 999 999 h	

### Energy consumption

731	0	Read-out
Energy consumption		
<div> <div>0</div> <div>0</div> <div>0</div> <div>0</div> </div>		
Range:	0.000-2000 MWh	

### Reset energy consumption

In this menu the stored power consumption (menu [713]) can be reset to 0.

732	0	Multi Setting
Reset energy consumption		
<div> <div></div> <div></div> <div>n</div> <div>0</div> </div>		
Default:	no	
Range:	no, YES	
no	No action	
YES	Reset power consumption	

### 8.11 Alarm list

The alarm list is generated automatically. It shows the latest 15 alarms (F1-F17). The alarm list can be useful for tracking failures in the softstarter or its control circuit. In the alarm list both the alarm message and the operation time is saved for each alarms that occurs. In menu [800] the latest alarm message and the corresponding operation time are shown alternately, in the same way, older alarms are shown in menus [801] to [814].

#### Example

- If the latest alarm was a phase input failure (F1), which occurred at operation time 524. F1 is shown for 4 s then 524 is shown for 2 s and so on.
- If the latest alarm was a thermal motor protection alarm (F2), which occurred at operation time 17852. F2 is shown for 3 s, after that 1 is shown for 1 s, then 7852 is shown for 2 s and so on.

### Alarm list, latest error

800	0	Read-out
Alarm list, latest error		
<div> <div></div> <div></div> <div>F</div> <div>1</div> </div>		
Range:	F1-F17	

### Alarm list, error

801	0	Read-out
Alarm list, error 14		
<div> <div></div> <div></div> <div>F</div> <div>1</div> </div>		
Range:	F1-F17	

Menu	Function
802	Alarm list, error 13
803	Alarm list, error 12
804	Alarm list, error 11
805	Alarm list, error 10
806	Alarm list, error 9
807	Alarm list, error 8
808	Alarm list, error 7
809	Alarm list, error 6
810	Alarm list, error 5
811	Alarm list, error 4
812	Alarm list, error 3
813	Alarm list, error 2
814	Alarm list, error 1

## 8.12 Softstarter data

In menus [900] to [902] the softstarter type is shown and the softstarter's software version is specified.

### Softstarter type

900				Read-out	
Softstarter type					
17					
Range:		17-1400 A			

### Software variant

901				Read-out	
Software variant text					
V220					
Range:		Same as label			

### Software version

902				Read-out	
Software version text					
R15					
Range:		Same as label			



## 9. Protection and alarm

MSF 2.0 is equipped with functions for motor protection, process protection and protection of the softstarter itself.

### 9.1 Alarm codes

Different alarm codes are used for the different errors, see Table 16 for a description of the alarm codes used. When an alarm occurs, this is indicated with the appropriate alarm message flashing in the display. If more than one alarm is active at the same time, the alarm code for the last alarm is presented on the display. The alarm code for each occurring alarm is also saved in the alarm list in menus [800] to [814].

### 9.2 Alarm actions

For most protection methods a proper action can be chosen to be performed if the relevant alarm occurs. The following alternatives are available as alarm actions (all alternatives may not be available for all protection methods - check Table 16):

#### Off

The alarm is deactivated.

#### Warning

The appropriate alarm code is flashing in the display and relay K3 is activated (for default configuration of the relays) if an the alarm occurs. However, the motor is not stopped and operation continues. The alarm message in the display will disappear and the relay will be reset when the alarm has disappeared. The alarm may also be reset manually. This setting alternative may be useful if it is desired to control operation in alarm state by an external control unit.

#### Coast

The appropriate alarm code is flashing in the display and relay K3 is activated (for default configuration of the relays) if an the alarm occurs. The motor voltage is automatically switched off. The motor is freewheels until it stops.

This setting alternative is useful if continuous running or active stopping could harm the process or the motor. This may be applicable for applications with very high inertia that use braking as the normal stop method. In this case it may be a good idea to choose Coast as alarm action on thermal motor protection alarm, because continuous running or braking could harm the motor seriously when this alarm has occurred.

#### Stop

The appropriate alarm code is flashing in the display and relay K3 is activated (for default configuration of the relays) if an alarm occurs. The motor is stopped according to the stop settings in menus [320] to [325].

This setting is useful for applications where a correct stop is important. This may apply to most pump applications, as Coast as an alarm action could cause water hammer.

#### Brake

The appropriate alarm code is flashing in the display and relay K3 is activated (for default configuration of the relays) if an alarm occurs. The brake function is activated according to the braking method chosen in menu [323] and the motor is stopped according to the alarm brake settings in menus [326] to [327] (braking strength and braking time). If alarm braking is deactivated in menu [326] and Brake is chosen as an alarm action, the action will be the same as described above for Coast.

Brake as an alarm action may mainly be used in combination with External alarm, where an external signal is used to initiate a quick stop with a higher braking strength and a shorter braking time compared to normal operation.

#### Spinbrake

The functionality for the Spinbrake alternative is the same as described above for the Brake alternative. However, if Spinbrake is chosen, braking can even be initiated from an inactive state. This means the softstarter can catch a freewheeling motor and brake it down to standstill.

The Spinbrake alternative is only available for External alarm. It may be useful e.g. for test running of planers and bandsaws after tool exchange. It may be desirable to accelerate the tool up to a specific speed and then leave it coasting to check if there is any unbalance. In this case it is possible to activate braking immediately by opening the external input.

In Table 16 below the alarm actions available for each alarm type are specified in detail.

### 9.3 Reset

For the following explanations it is important to distinguish between Reset and Restart. Reset means that the alarm message on the display disappears and the alarm relay K3 (for default configuration of the relays) is deactivated. If the operation has been interrupted due to an alarm the softstarter is prepared for a Restart. However, giving a Reset signal without giving a new start signal will never lead to a start.

The Reset signal can be given via control panel, remotely or via serial communication depending on the control source chosen in menu [200]. Regardless of the chosen control method, it is always possible to give a Reset signal via control panel.

If an alarm occurs whose alarm action is configured for Warning (see description of alarm actions above), the alarm will automatically be reset as soon as the failure disappears. The alarm may also be reset manually by giving a Reset signal as described above.

If operation has been interrupted due to an alarm, a Reset signal and a new start signal may be needed to Restart the motor. However, some alarms are automatically reset when a new start signal is given. Table 16 covers all alarm types and



whether they need a Reset signal (manual reset) or if they are reset automatically when a new start signal is given.

An alarm can always be reset by giving a Reset signal, even if the failure that caused the alarm has not disappeared yet. Giving a Reset will cause the alarm message on the display to disappear and the alarm relay K3 to be deactivated (for default configuration of the relays). However, if operation has been interrupted due to an alarm, a Restart will not be

possible until the failure has disappeared. If a new start signal is given while the failure still is active, the alarm message will appear flashing in the display and the alarm relay K3 will be activated again (for default configuration of the relays).

MSF 2.0 is also provided with an Autoreset function. This functionality is described in detail in section 8.5, page 52.

## 9.4 Alarm overview

Table 16 Alarm overview

Alarm code	Alarm description	Alarm action	Protection system	Reset
F1	Phase input failure.	Warning Coast	Motor protection (menu [230])	Automatic Reset when new start signal is given.
F2	Thermal motor protection	Off Warning Coast Stop Brake	Motor protection (menu [220])	Separate Reset signal needed.
F3	Soft start overheated	Coast		Separate Reset signal needed.
F4	Current limit start time expired.	Off Warning Coast Stop Brake	Motor protection (menu [231])	Automatic Reset when new start signal is given.
F5	Locked rotor alarm.	Off Warning Coast	Motor protection (menu [228])	Separate Reset signal needed.
F6	Max power alarm.	Off Warning Coast Stop Brake	Process protection (menu [400])	Separate Reset signal needed.
F7	Min power alarm.	Off Warning Coast Stop Brake	Process protection (menu [401])	Separate Reset signal needed.
F8	Voltage unbalance alarm.	Off Warning Coast Stop Brake	Process protection (menu [430])	Automatic Reset when new start signal is given.
F9	Overvoltage alarm.	Off Warning Coast Stop Brake	Process protection (menu [433])	Automatic Reset when new start signal is given.
F10	Undervoltage alarm.	Off Warning Coast Stop Brake	Process protection (menu [436])	Automatic Reset when new start signal is given.

Table 16 Alarm overview

Alarm code	Alarm description	Alarm action	Protection system	Reset
F11	Start limitation.	Off Warning Coast	Motor protection (menu [224])	Automatic Reset when new start signal is given.
F12	Shorted thyristor.	Coast		Separate Reset signal needed.
F13	Open thyristor.	Coast		Separate Reset signal needed.
F14	Motor terminal open.	Coast		Separate Reset signal needed.
F15	Serial communication contact broken.	Off Warning Coast Stop Brake	Control source protection (menu [273])	Automatic Reset when new start signal is given.
F16	Phase reversal alarm.	Off Warning Coast	Process protection (menu [440])	Separate Reset signal needed.
F17	External alarm.	Off Warning Coast Stop Brake Spinbrake	Process protection (menu [420])	Separate Reset signal needed.



## 10. Troubleshooting

### 10.1 Fault, cause and solution

Observation	Fault Indication	Cause	Solution
The display is not illuminated.	None	No control supply voltage.	Switch on the control supply voltage.
The motor does not run.	F1 (Phase input failure)	Fuse defective.	Renew the fuse.
		No mains supply.	Switch on the mains supply.
	F2 (Thermal motor protection)	PTC connection could be open. Incorrect nominal motor current could be entered in menu [211].	Check the PTC input if PTC protection is used. If internal thermal motor protection is used, perhaps an other internal thermal protection class could be used (menu [222]). Cool down the motor and restart.
	F3 (Softstarter overheated)	Ambient temperature too high. Softstarter duty cycle exceeded. Could be fan failure.	Check ventilation of cabinet. Check the size of the cabinet. Clean the cooling fins. If the fan(s) is (are) not working correctly, contact your local MSF sales outlet.
	F4 (Current limit start time expired)	Current limit parameters are perhaps not matched to the load and motor.	Increase the start time (menu [315]) and/or the current limit at start (menu [314]).
	F5 (Locked rotor)	Something stuck in the machine or perhaps motor bearing failure.	Check the machine and motor bearings. Perhaps the Locked rotor time can be set longer (menu [229]).
	F6 (Max power alarm)	Overload	Check the machine. Perhaps the Max power alarm response delay can be set longer menu [404].
	F7 (Min power alarm)	Underload	Check the machine. Perhaps the Min power alarm response delay can be set longer menu [410].
	F8 (Voltage unbalance)	Mains supply voltage unbalance.	Check mains supply.
	F9 (Overvoltage)	Mains supply overvoltage.	Check mains supply.
	F10 (Undervoltage)	Mains supply undervoltage.	Check mains supply.
	F11 (Start limitation)	Number of starts per hour exceeded, min time between starts not kept.	Wait and start again. Perhaps the number of starts per hour could be increased in menu [225] or the min time between starts could be decreased (menu [226]).
	F13 (Open thyristor)	Perhaps a damaged thyristor.	Initiate a reset and a restart. If the same alarm appears immediately, contact your local MSF sales outlet.
	F14 (Motor terminal open)	Open motor contact, cable or motor winding.	If the fault is not found, reset the alarm and inspect the alarm list. If alarm F12 is found, a thyristor is probably shorted. Initiate a restart. If alarm F14 appears immediately, contact your local MSF sales outlet.

Observation	Fault Indication	Cause	Solution
The motor does not run.	F15 (Serial communication contact broken)	Serial communication contact broken.	Initiate a reset and try to establish contact. Check contacts, cables and option board. Verify - Serial communication unit address [270]. - Baudrate menu [271]. - Parity menu [272]. If the fault is not found, run the motor from the control panel if urgent set menu [200] to 1. See also manual for serial communication.
	F16 (Phase reversal)	Incorrect phase sequence on main supply.	Switch L2 and L3 input phases.
	F17 (External alarm)	External alarm signal input open	Check the digital input configured for External alarm. Check the configuration of the digital inputs (menus [510] to [513]).
	----	Start command comes perhaps from incorrect control source. (I.e. start from control panel when remote control is selected).	Give start command from correct control source menu [200].
The motor is running but an alarm is given.	F1 (Phase input failure)	Failure in one phase. Perhaps fuse is defective.	Check fuses and mains supply. Select a different alarm action for Single phase input failure in menu [230] if stop is desired at single phase loss.
	F4 (Current limit start time expired)	Current limit parameters are perhaps not matched to the load and motor.	Increase the start time (menu [315]) and/or the current limit at start (menu [314]). Select a different action for Current limit start time expired alarm in menu [231], if stop is desired at current limit time-out.
	F12 (Shorted thyristor)	Perhaps a damaged thyristor.	When stop command is given, a free-wheel stop is made. Initiate a reset and a restart. If alarm F14 appears immediately, contact your local MSF sales outlet. If the motor must be started urgently, the softstarter can start the motor direct on-line (DOL). Set the start method to DOL in this case (menu [310]=4).
		Bypass contactor is used but menu [340] 'Bypass' is not set to "on".	Set menu [340] Bypass to on.
	F15 (Serial communication contact broken)	Serial communication contact broken.	Initiate a reset and try to establish contact. Check contacts, cables and option board. Verify - Serial communication unit address [270]. - Baudrate menu [271]. - Parity menu [272]. If the fault is not found, run the motor from the control panel if urgent, see also manual for serial communication.

Observation	Fault Indication	Cause	Solution
The motor jerks etc.	When starting, motor reaches full speed but it jerks or vibrates.	If "Torque control" or "Pump control" is selected, it is necessary to input motor data into the system.	Input nominal motor data in menus [210]-[215]. Select the proper torque control alternative in menu [310] (linear or square) according to the load characteristic. Select a correct initial- and end torque at start in menus [311] and [312]. If 'Bypass' is selected, check that the current transformers are correctly connected.
		Start time too short.	Increase start time [315].
		If voltage control is used as start method, the initial voltage at start may be too low. Starting voltage incorrectly set.	Adjust initial voltage at start [311].
		Motor too small in relation to rated current of softstarter.	Use a smaller model of the softstarter.
		Motor too large in relation to load of softstarter.	Use larger model of softstarter.
		Starting voltage not set correctly.	Readjust the start ramp. Select the current limit function.
	Starting or stopping time too long.	Ramp times not set correctly.	Readjust the start and/or stop ramp time.
		Motor too large or too small in relation to load.	Change to another motor size.
The monitor function does not work.	No alarm or pre-alarm	It is necessary to input nominal motor data for this function. Incorrect alarm margins or normal load.	Input nominal motor data in menus [210]-[215]. Adjust alarm margins and normal load in menus [402] - [412]. Use Autoset [411] if needed. If a Bypass contactor is used, check that the current transformers are correctly connected.
Unexplainable alarm.	F5, F6, F7, F8, F9, F10	Alarm delay time is too short.	Adjust the response delay times for the alarms in menus [229], [404], [410], [432], [435] and [438].
The system seems locked in an alarm.	F2 (Thermal motor protection)	PTC input terminal could be open. Motor could still be too warm. If internal motor protection is used, the cooling in the internal model may take some time.	PTC input terminal should be short circuit if not used. Wait until motor PTC gives an OK (not overheated) signal. Wait until the internal cooling is done. Try to restart after a while.
	F3 (Softstarter overheated)	Ambient temperature to high. Perhaps fan failure.	Check that cables from power part are connected in terminals 71 to 74. MSF-017 to MSF-250 should have a jumper between terminals 71 and 72. Check also that the fan(s) is(are) rotating.

Observation	Fault Indication	Cause	Solution
Parameter will not be accepted.		If menu 240, "Parameter set" is set to "0", the system is configured for external control of parameter set. Most parameters are not allowed to be changed in this mode.	Set the menu 240, "Parameter set" to a value between "1" - "4" and then any parameter can be changed.
		During start, stop and slow speed changing parameters is not permitted.	Set parameters during standstill or full voltage running.
		If control source is serial comm., it is impossible to change parameters from keyboard and vice versa.	Change parameters from the actual control source.
		Some menus include only read-out values and not parameters.	Read-out values cannot be altered. In Table 14, read-out menus have '---' in the factory setting column.
	-Loc	Control panel is locked for settings.	Unlock control panel by pressing the keys "NEXT" and "ENTER" for at least 3 sec.

## 11. Maintenance

In general the softstarter is maintenance-free. There are however some things which should be checked regularly. In particular, if the surroundings are dusty the unit should be cleaned regularly.



**WARNING! Do not touch parts inside the enclosure of the unit when the control supply voltage or the mains supply voltage is switched on.**

### 11.1 Regular maintenance

- Check that nothing in the softstarter has been damaged by vibration (loose screws or connections).
- Check external wiring, connections and control signals. Tighten terminal screws and busbar bolts if necessary.
- Check that printed circuit boards, thyristors and cooling fins are free from dust. Clean with compressed air if necessary. Make sure the printed circuit boards and the thyristors are undamaged.
- Check for signs of overheating (changes in colour on printed circuit boards, oxidation of solder points etc.). Check that the temperature is within permissible limits.
- Check that the cooling fan(s) permit free air flow. Clean any external air filters if necessary.





## 12. Options

The following options are available. Please contact your supplier for more detailed information.

### 12.1 Serial communication

For serial communication the MODBUS RTU (RS232/RS485) option board is available, order part number: 01-1733-00.

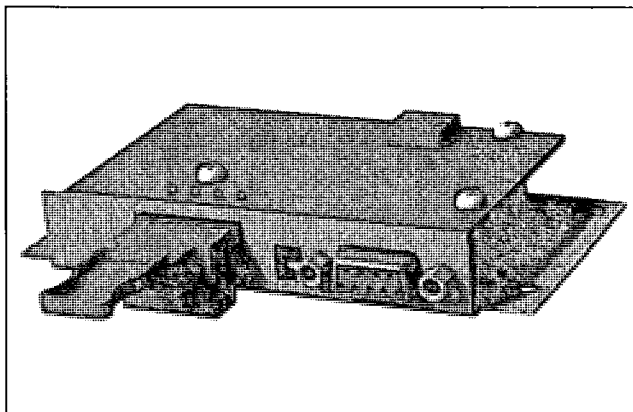


Fig. 68 Option RS232/485

### 12.2 Fieldbus systems

Various option boards are available for the following bus systems:

- PROFIBUS DP order part number: 01-1734-01
- Device NET, order part number: 01-1736-01

Each system has its own board. The option is delivered with an instruction manual containing all the details for the installation and set-up of the board and the protocol for programming.

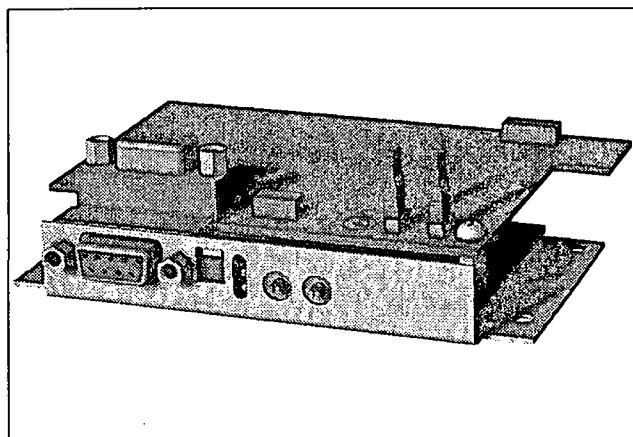


Fig. 69 Profibus Option

### 12.3 External control panel

The external control panel option is used to move the control panel from the softstarter to the front of a panel door or control cabinet.

The maximum distance between the softstarter and the external control panel is 3 m.

The part number to order for the external control panel is 01-2138-00. A separate data sheet for this option is available.

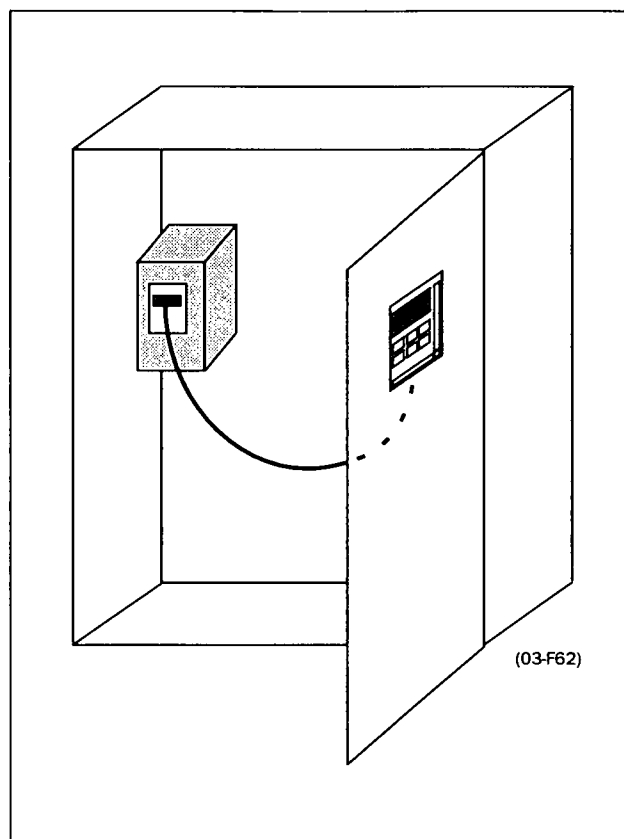


Fig. 70 Use of the external control panel.

### 12.3.1 Cable kit for external current transformers

This kit is used for the bypass function, to connect the current transformers externally. order part number: 01-2020-00.

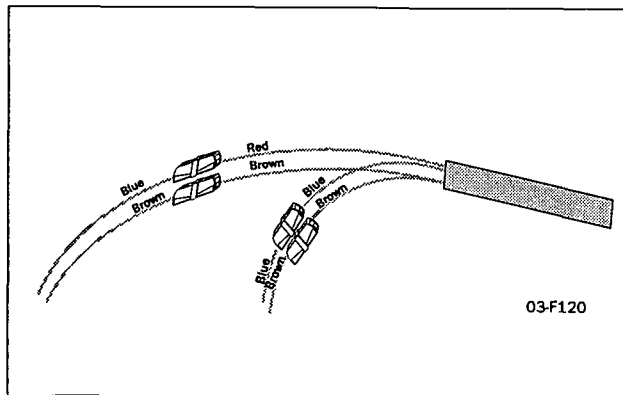


Fig. 71 Cable kit

### 12.4 Terminal clamp

Data: Single cables, Cu or Al

Cables	95-300 mm <sup>2</sup>
MSF type Cu Cable	310
Bolt for connection to busbar	M10
Dimensions in mm	33x84x47 mm
Part no. single	9350

Data: Parallel cables, Cu or Al

Cables	2x95-300 mm <sup>2</sup>
MSF type and Cu Cable	310 to 835
Bolt for connection to busbar	M10
Dimensions in mm	35x87x65
Part no. parallel	9351

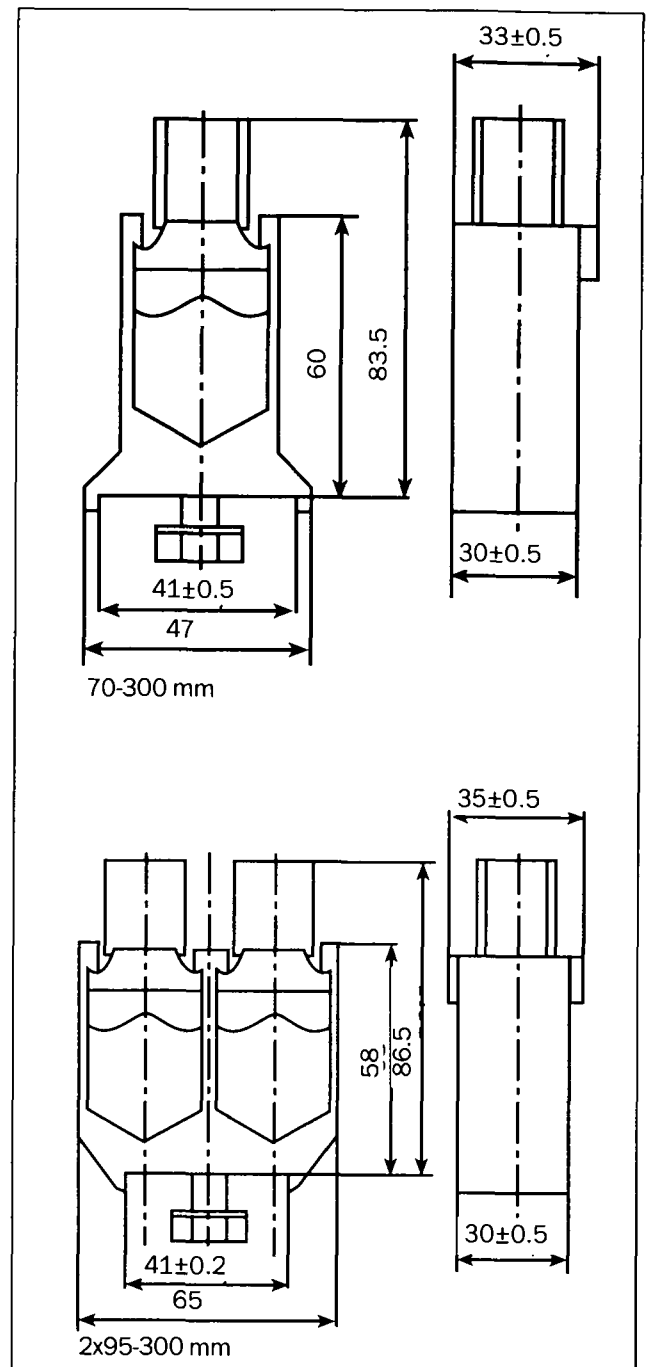


Fig. 72 The terminal clamp.

## 13. Technical data

### 13.1 Electrical specifications

Table 17 Typical motor power at mains voltage 400 V

MSF model	Heavy AC-53a 5.0-30:50-10		Normal AC-53a 3.0-30:50-10		Normal with bypass AC-53b 3.0-30:300	
	Power @400V [kW]	Rated current [A]	Power @400V [kW]	Rated current [A]	Power @400V [kW]	Rated current [A]
MSF-017	7.5	17	11	22	11	25
-030	15	30	18.5	37	22	45
-045	22	45	30	60	37	67
-060	30	60	37	72	45	85
-075	37	75	45	85	55	103
-085	45	85	45	96	55	120
-110	55	110	75	134	90	165
-145	75	145	75	156	110	210
-170	90	170	110	210	132	255
-210	110	210	132	250	160	300
-250	132	250	132	262	200	360
-310	160	310	200	370	250	450
-370	200	370	250	450	315	555
-450	250	450	315	549	355	675
-570	315	570	400	710	450	820
-710	400	710	450	835	500	945
-835	450	835	500	960	630	1125
-1000	560	1 000	630	1125	800	1400
-1400	800	1 400	900	1650	1000	1800

Table 18 Typical motor power at mains voltage 460 V

MSF model	Heavy AC-53a 5.0-30:50-10		Normal AC-53a 3.0-30:50-10		Normal with bypass AC-53b 3.0-30:300	
	Power @460V [hp]	Rated current [A]	Power @460V [hp]	Rated current [A]	Power @460V [hp]	Rated current [A]
MSF-017	10	17	15	22	20	25
-030	20	30	25	37	30	45
-045	30	45	40	60	50	68
-060	40	60	50	72	60	85
-075	60	75	60	85	75	103
-085	60	85	75	96	100	120
-110	75	110	100	134	125	165
-145	100	145	125	156	150	210
-170	125	170	150	210	200	255
-210	150	210	200	250	250	300
-250	200	250	200	262	300	360
-310	250	310	300	370	350	450
-370	300	370	350	450	450	555
-450	350	450	450	549	500	675
-570	500	570	600	710	650	820
-710	600	710	700	835	800	945
-835	700	835	800	960	900	1125
-1000	800	1 000	900	1125	1000	1400
-1400	1000	1 400	1250	1650	1500	1800

Table 19 Typical motor power at mains voltage 525 V

MSF model	Heavy AC-53a 5.0-30:50-10		Normal AC-53a 3.0-30:50-10		Normal with bypass AC-53b 3.0-30:300	
	Power @525V [kW]	Rated current [A]	Power @525V [kW]	Rated current [A]	Power @525V [kW]	Rated current [A]
MSF-017	11	17	15	22	15	25
-030	18,5	30	22	37	30	45
-045	30	45	37	60	45	68
-060	37	60	45	72	55	85
-075	45	75	55	85	75	103
-085	55	85	55	96	75	120
-110	75	110	90	134	110	165
-145	90	145	110	156	132	210
-170	110	170	132	210	160	255
-210	132	210	160	250	200	300
-250	160	250	160	262	250	360
-310	200	310	250	370	315	450
-370	250	370	315	450	355	555
-450	315	450	400	549	450	675
-570	400	570	500	710	560	820
-710	500	710	560	835	630	945
-835	560	835	710	960	800	1125
-1000	710	1 000	800	1125	1000	1400
-1400	1000	1 400	1250	1650	1400	1800

Table 20 Typical motor power at mains voltage 575 V

MSF model	Heavy AC-53a 5.0-30:50-10		Normal AC-53a 3.0-30:50-10		Normal with bypass AC-53b 3.0-30:300	
	Power @575V [hp]	Rated current [A]	Power @575V [hp]	Rated current [A]	Power @575V [hp]	Rated current [A]
MSF-017	15	17	20	22	25	25
-030	25	30	30	37	40	45
-045	40	45	50	60	60	68
-060	50	60	60	72	75	85
-075	75	75	75	85	100	103
-085	75	85	75	90	125	120
-110	100	110	125	134	150	165
-145	150	145	150	156	200	210
-170	150	170	200	210	250	255
-210	200	210	250	250	300	300
-250	250	250	250	262	350	360
-310	300	310	400	370	450	450
-370	400	370	500	450	600	555
-450	500	450	600	549	700	675
-570	600	570	700	640	800	820
-710	700	710	800	835	1000	945
-835	800	835	900	880	1250	1125
-1000	1000	1 000	1250	1125	1500	1400
-1400	1500	1 400	1500	1524	2000	1800

Table 21 Typical motor power at mains voltage 690 V

MSF model	Heavy AC-53a 5.0-30:50-10		Normal AC-53a 3.0-30:50-10		Normal with bypass AC-53b 3.0-30:300	
	Power @690V [kW]	Rated current [A]	Power @690V [kW]	Rated current [A]	Power @690V [kW]	Rated current [A]
MSF-017	15	17	18,5	22	22	25
-030	22	30	30	37	37	45
-045	37	45	55	60	55	68
-060	55	60	55	72	75	85
-075	55	75	75	85	90	103
-085	75	85	90	90	110	120
-110	90	110	110	134	160	165
-145	132	145	132	156	200	210
-170	160	170	200	210	250	255
-210	200	210	250	250	250	300
-250	250	250	250	262	355	360
-310	315	310	355	370	400	450
-370	355	370	400	450	500	555
-450	400	450	560	549	630	675
-570	560	570	630	640	800	820
-710	710	710	800	835	900	945
-835	800	835	900	880	1120	1125
-1000	1000	1 000	1120	1125	1400	1400
-1400	1400	1 400	1600	1524	1800	1800



## 13.2 General electrical specifications

Table 22 General electrical specifications

Parameter	Description
<b>General</b>	
Mains supply voltage	200-525 V $\pm 10\%$ 200-690 V $+5\%$ , $-10\%$
Control supply voltage	100-240 V $\pm 10\%$ 380-500 V $\pm 10\%$
Mains and Control supply frequency	50/60 Hz $\pm 10\%$
Number of fully controlled phases	3
Recommended fuse for control supply	Max 10 A
<b>Control signal inputs</b>	
Digital input voltage	0-3 V $\rightarrow$ 0, 8-27 V $\rightarrow$ 1. Max 37 V for 10 sec.
Digital input impedance to GND (0 VDC)	2.2 k $\Omega$
Analogue input voltage/current	0-10 V, 2-10 V, 0-20 mA, 4-20 mA
Analogue input impedance to GND (0 VDC)	Voltage signal 125 k $\Omega$ , current signal 100 $\Omega$
<b>Control signal outputs</b>	
Output relays contact	8 A, 250 VAC or 24 VDC resistive load; 3 A, 250 VAC inductive load (PF 0.4)
Analogue output voltage/current	0-10 V, 2-10 V, 0-20 mA, 4-20 mA
Analogue output load impedance	Voltage signal min load 700 $\Omega$ , current signal max load 750 $\Omega$
<b>Control signal supply</b>	
+12 VDC	+12 VDC $\pm 5\%$ . Max current 50 mA. Short circuit proof.

## 13.3 Fuses and power losses

Table 23 Fuses, power losses

Model	Recommended wiring fuses [A] First column Ramp start/second column Direct-on-line start		Power loss at rated motor load [W] No losses with bypass		Power consumption control card [VA]
	Heavy	Normal	Heavy	Normal	
MSF-017	25/50	32	50	70	20
-030	35/80	50	90	120	20
-045	50/125	80	140	180	25
-060	63/160	100	180	215	25
-075	80/200	100	230	260	25
-085	100/250	125	260	290	25
-110	125/315	180	330	400	25
-145	160/400	200	440	470	25
-170	200/400	200	510	630	35
-210	250/400	315	630	750	35
-250	250/500	315	750	750	35
-310	315/630	400	930	1100	35
-370	400/800	500	1100	1535	35
-450	500/1000	630	1400	1730	35
-570	630/1000	800	1700	2100	35
-710	800/1000	1000	2100	2500	35
-835	1000/1200	1000	2500	2875	35
-1000	1000/1400	1200	3000	3375	35
-1400	1400/1800	1800	4200	4950	35

## 13.4 Mechanical specifications including mechanical drawings

MSF Model	Dimensions H*W*D [mm]	Mounting position [Vertical/Horizontal]	Weight [kg]	Connection busbars [mm]	PE screw	Cooling system	Protection class
-017, -030	320*126*260	Vertical	6.7	15*4, Cu (M6)	M6	Convection	IP20
-045, -060, -075, -085	320*126*260	Vert. or Horiz.	6.9	15*4, Cu (M6)	M6	Fan	IP20
-110, -145	400*176*260	Vert. or Horiz.	12	20*4, Cu (M10)	M8	Fan	IP20
-170, -210, -250	500*260*260	Vert. or Horiz.	20	30*4, Cu (M10)	M8	Fan	IP20
-310, -370, -450	532*547*278	Vert. or Horiz.	46	40*8, Al (M12)	M8	Fan	IP20
-570, -710, -835	687*640*302	Vert. or Horiz.	80	40*10, Al (M12)	M8	Fan	IP20
-1000, -1400	900*875*336	Vert. or Horiz.	175	75*10, Al (M12)		Fan	IP00

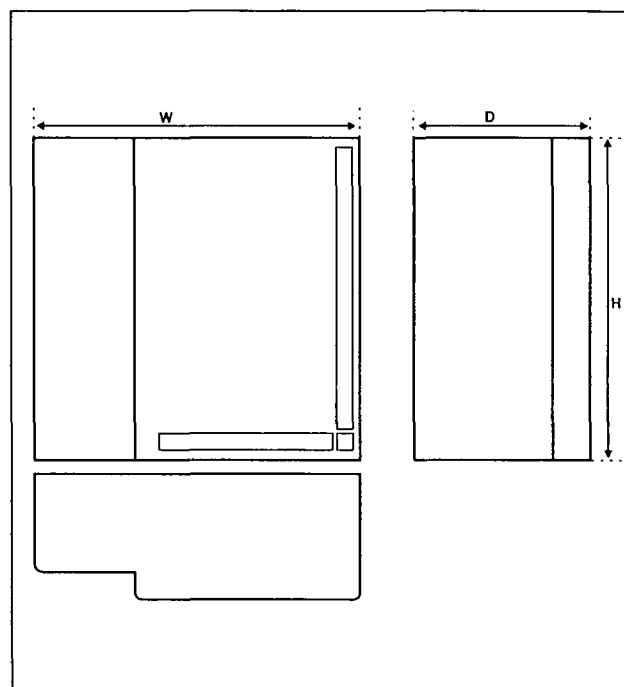
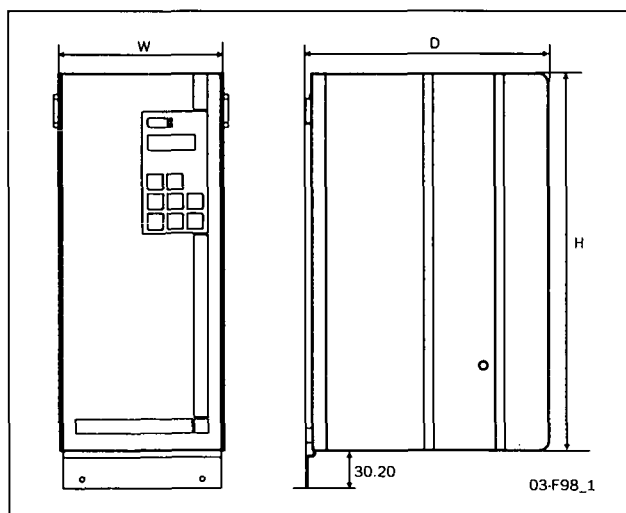


Fig. 73 MSF -310 to MSF -835.

### 13.5 Derating at higher temperature

By derating the current to 80% of nominal current, the MSF can be operated at an ambient temperature of up to 50 °C. E.g. a MSF-045 can operate a heavy load of 36 A (45 A\*0.8).

### 13.6 Environmental conditions


Normal operation	
Temperature	0 - 40°C
Relative humidity	95%, non-condensing
Max altitude without derating	1000 m
Storage	
Temperature	-25 - +70°C
Relative humidity	95%, non-condensing

### 13.7 Standards

Market	Standard	Description
All	IEC 60947-1	Low-voltage switch gear and control gear. General part.
	IEC 60947-4-2	AC semiconductors motor controller and starters
	EN 60204-1	Safety of machinery – Electrical equipment of machines
European	Machinery Directive	89/392/ECC, Amendment 98/37/ECC
	EMC Directive	89/336/ECC, Amendment 91/263/ECC, 93/68/ECC
	Low Voltage Directive	73/23/ECC, Amendment 93/68/ECC
Russian	GOST R	Russia certificate of conformity
American	UL 508	Outline of investigation for power conversion equipment. Only models MSF-017 to MSF-250 up to 600 VAC

## 13.8 Power- and signal connectors.

Table 24 PCB Terminals

Terminal	Function	Electrical characteristics
01	Control supply voltage	100-240 VAC $\pm 10\%$ alternative
02		380-500 VAC $\pm 10\%$ see rating plate
PE	Protective Earth	
11	Digital input 1	0-3 V $\rightarrow$ 0; 8-27 V $\rightarrow$ 1. Max. 37 V for 10 sec. Impedance to 0 VDC: 2.2 k $\Omega$ .
12	Digital input 2	
13	Control signal supply voltage to PCB terminal 11 and 12, 10 k $\Omega$ potentiometer, etc.	+12 VDC $\pm 5\%$ . Max. current from +12 VDC: 50 mA. Short circuit-proof but not overload-proof.
14	Analogue input, 0-10 V, 2-10 V, 0-20 mA and 4-20 mA/digital input.	Impedance to terminal 15 (0 VDC) voltage signal: 125 k $\Omega$ , current signal: 100 $\Omega$ .
15	GND (common)	0 VDC
16	Digital input 3	0-3 V $\rightarrow$ 0; 8-27 V $\rightarrow$ 1. Max. 37 V for 10 sec. Impedance to 0 VDC: 2.2 k $\Omega$ .
17	Digital input 4	
18	Control signal supply voltage to PCB terminal 16 and 17, 10 k $\Omega$ potentiometer, etc.	+12 VDC $\pm 5\%$ . Max. current from +12 VDC = 50 mA. Short circuit-proof but not overload-proof.
19	Analogue output	Analogue output contact: 0-10 V, 2-10 V; min load impedance 700 $\Omega$ 0-20 mA and 4-20 mA; max load impedance 750 $\Omega$
21	Programmable relay K1. Factory setting is "Operation" with indication by closing terminal 21 to 22.	1-pole closing contact, 250 VAC 8 A or 24 VDC 8 A resistive, 250 VAC, 3 A inductive.
22		
23	Programmable relay K2. Factory setting is "Full voltage" with indication by closing terminals 23 to 24.	1-pole closing contact, 250 VAC 8 A or 24 VDC 8 A resistive, 250 VAC, 3 A inductive.
24		
31	Programmable relay K3. Factory setting is "All alarms". Indication by closing terminals 31 to 33 and opening terminals 32 to 33.	1-pole change-over contact, 250 VAC 8A or 24 VDC 8A resistive, 250 VAC, 3A inductive.
32		
33		
69-70	PTC Thermistor input	Alarm level 2.4 k $\Omega$ . Switch back level 2.2 k $\Omega$ .
71-72*	Clickson thermistor	Controlling softstarter cooling fan temperature MSF-310 - MSF-1400
73-74*	NTC thermistor	Temperature measuring of softstarter cooling fin
75	Current transformer input, cable S1 (blue)	Connection of L1 or T1 phase current transformer
76	Current transformer input, cable S1 (blue)	Connection of L3, T3 phase (MSF 017 to MSF 250) or L2, T2 phase (MSF 310 to MSF 1400)
77	Current transformer input, cable S2 (brown)	Common connection for terminals 75 and 76
78*	Fan connection	24 VDC
79*	Fan connection	0 VDC

\*Internal connection, no customer use.

13.9 Semi-conductor fuses

Always use standard commercial fuses to protect the wiring and prevent short circuiting. To protect the thyristors against short-circuit currents, superfast semiconductor fuses can be used if preferred (e.g. Bussmann type FWP or similar, see table below).

The normal guarantee is valid even if superfast semiconductor fuses are not used.

Type	FWP Bussmann fuse	
	A	I <sup>2</sup> t (fuse) x 1000
MSF-017	80	2.4
MSF-030	125	7.3
MSF-045	150	11.7
MSF-060	200	22
MSF-075	250	42.5
MSF-085	300	71.2
MSF-110	350	95.6
MSF-145	450	137
MSF-170	700	300
MSF-210	700	300
MSF-250	800	450

**NOTE: Short circuit withstand MSF017-MSF060 5000 rms A when used with K5 or RK5 fuses.**

**NOTE: Short circuit withstand MSF075-MSF145 10000 rms A when used with K5 or RK5 fuses.**

**NOTE! Short circuit withstand MSF170-250 18000 rms A when used with K5 or RK5 fuses.**



## 14. Set-up menu list

Menu	Function/Parameter	Range	Parameter alt. Alarm codes	Param. set	Factory setting	Value	Page
<b>General settings</b>							
100	Current	0.0-9999 A		—	—		page 44
101	Automatic return menu	oFF, 1-999		—	oFF		page 44
200	Control source	1, 2, 3	1. Control panel 2. Remote control 3. Serial comm.	1-4	2		page 44
201	Control panel locked for settings	no, YES		—	—		page 44
202	Enable US units	oFF, on		—	oFF		page 45
<b>Motor data</b>							
210	Nominal motor voltage	200-700 V		1-4	400		page 45
211	Nominal motor current	25-200% of $I_{nsoft}$ in A		1-4	$I_{nsoft}$		page 45
212	Nominal motor power	25-400% of $P_{nsoft}$ in kW resp. hp		1-4	$P_{nsoft}$		page 45
213	Nominal speed	500-3600 rpm		1-4	$N_{nsoft}$		page 45
214	Nominal power factor	0.50-1.00		1-4	0.86		page 45
215	Nominal frequency	50, 60 Hz		—	50		page 45
<b>Motor protection</b>							
THERMAL MOTOR PROTECTION							
220	Thermal motor protection	oFF, 1, 2, 3, 4	oFF 1. Warning 2. Coast 3. Stop 4. Brake	1-4	2		page 46
221	PTC input	oFF, on		1-4	oFF		page 47
222	Internal protection class	oFF, 2-40 s		1-4	10		page 47
223	Used thermal capacity	0-150%		—	—		page 47
START LIMITATION							
224	Start limitation	oFF, 1, 2	oFF 1. Warning 2. Coast	1-4	oFF		page 48
225	Number of starts per hour	oFF, 1-99		1-4	oFF		page 49
226	Min time between starts	oFF, 1-60 min		1-4	oFF		page 49
227	Time to next allowed start	0-60 min		—	—		page 49
LOCKED ROTOR							
228	Locked rotor alarm	oFF, 1, 2	oFF 1. Warning 2. Coast	1-4	oFF		page 49
229	Locked rotor time	1,0-10,0 s		1-4	5,0 s		page 49
SINGLE PHASE INPUT FAILURE							
230	Single phase input failure	1, 2	1. Warning 2. Coast	1-4	2		page 50
CURRENT LIMIT START TIME EXPIRED							



Menu	Function/Parameter	Range	Parameter alt. Alarm codes	Param. set	Factory setting	Value	Page
231	Current limit start time expired	oFF, 1, 2, 3, 4	oFF 1. Warning 2. Coast 3. Stop 4. Brake	1-4	2		page 50

	<b>Parameter set handling</b>						
240	Select parameter set	0, 1, 2, 3, 4	0 - External control of parameter set 1-4 - Parameter set 1-4	---	1		page 51
241	Actual parameter set	1, 2, 3, 4		---	---		page 51
242	Copy parameter set	no, P1-2, P1-3, P1-4, P2-1, P2-3, P2-4, P3- 1, P3-2, P3-4, P4-1, P4-2, P4-3	no - no action P1-2 - Copy parameter set 1 to parameter set 2 etc.	---	no		page 51
243	Reset to factory settings	no, YES		---	no		page 52

	<b>Autoreset</b>						
250	Autoreset attempts	oFF, 0-10		1-4	oFF		page 52
251	Thermal motor protection autoreset	oFF, 0-3600 s		1-4	oFF		page 53
252	Start limitation autoreset	oFF, 0-3600 s		1-4	oFF		page 53
253	Locked rotor alarm autoreset	oFF, 0-3600 s		1-4	oFF		page 53
254	Current limit start time expired autoreset	oFF, 0-3600 s		1-4	oFF		page 53
255	Max power alarm autoreset	oFF, 0-3600 s		1-4	oFF		page 53
256	Min power alarm autoreset	oFF, 0-3600 s		1-4	oFF		page 53
257	External alarm autoreset	oFF, 0-3600 s		1-4	oFF		page 53
258	Phase input failure autoreset	oFF, 0-3600 s		1-4	oFF		page 53
259	Voltage unbalance alarm autoreset	oFF, 0-3600 s		1-4	oFF		page 53
260	Overvoltage alarm autoreset	oFF, 0-3600 s		1-4	oFF		page 53
261	Undervoltage alarm autoreset	oFF, 0-3600 s		1-4	oFF		page 53
262	Serial communication autoreset	oFF, 0-3600 s		1-4	oFF		page 53
263	Softstarter overheated autoreset	oFF, 0-3600 s		1-4	oFF		page 53

	<b>Serial communication</b>						
270	Serial comm. unit address	1-247		---	1		page 54
271	Serial comm. baudrate	2.4-38.4 kBaud		---	9.6		page 55
272	Serial comm. parity	0, 1	0. No parity 1. Even parity	---	0		page 55
273	Serial comm. contact broken	oFF, 1, 2, 3, 4	oFF 1. Warning 2. Coast 3. Stop 4. Brake	---	3		page 55

	<b>Operation settings</b>						
	PRE-SETTING						
300	Preset pump control parameters	no, yes		---	no		page 55
	START						

Menu	Function/Parameter	Range	Parameter alt. Alarm codes	Param. set	Factory setting	Value	Page
310	Start method	1, 2, 3, 4	1. Linear torque control 2. Square torque control 3. Voltage control 4. DOL	1-4	1		page 57
311	Initial torque at start	0-250% of $T_n$		1-4	10		page 58
312	End torque at start	25-250% of $T_n$		1-4	150		page 58
313	Initial voltage at start	25-80% of U		1-4	30		page 58
314	Current limit at start	off, 150-500% of $I_n$		1-4	oFF		page 59

315	Start time	1-60 s		1-4	10		page 59
316	Torque boost current limit	off, 300-700% of $I_n$		1-4	oFF		page 60
317	Torque boost active time	0.1-2.0 s		1-4	1.0		page 60
	STOP						
320	Stop method	1, 2, 3, 4, 5	1. Linear torque control 2. Square torque control 3. Voltage control 4. Coast 5. Brake	1-4	4		page 60
321	End torque at stop	0-100% of $T_n$		1-4	0		page 61
322	Step down voltage at stop	100-40% of U		1-4	100		page 61
323	Braking method	1, 2	1. Dynamic vector brake 2. Reverse current brake	—	1		page 62
324	Braking strength	150-500%		1-4	150		page 62
325	Stop time	1-120 s		1-4	10		page 63
326	Alarm braking strength	oFF, 150-500%		1-4	oFF		page 63
327	Alarm braking time	1-120 s		1-4	10		page 63
	SLOW SPEED / JOG						
330	Slow speed strength	10-100		1-4	10		page 65
331	Slow speed time at start	oFF, 1-60 s		1-4	oFF		page 65
332	Slow speed time at stop	oFF, 1-60 s		1-4	oFF		page 66
333	DC brake at slow speed	oFF, 1-60 s		1-4	oFF		page 66
334	Jog forward enable	oFF, on		1-4	oFF		page 66
335	Jog reverse enable	oFF, on		1-4	oFF		page 66
	ADDITIONAL SETTINGS						
340	Bypass	oFF, on		1-4	oFF		page 67
341	Power Factor Control (PFC)	oFF, on		1-4	oFF		page 69
342	Fan continuously on	oFF, on		1-4	oFF		page 69

	<b>Process protection</b>						
	LOAD MONITOR						
400	Max power alarm	oFF, 1, 2, 3, 4	oFF 1. Warning 2. Coast 3. Stop 4. Brake	1-4	oFF		page 71
401	Min power alarm	oFF, 1, 2, 3, 4	oFF 1. Warning 2. Coast 3. Stop 4. Brake	1-4	oFF		page 71
402	Start delay power alarms	1-999 s		1-4	10		page 71

Menu	Function/Parameter	Range	Parameter alt. Alarm codes	Param. set	Factory setting	Value	Page
403	Max power alarm margin	0-100% of $P_n$		1-4	16		page 71
404	Max power alarm response delay	0.1-90.0 s		1-4	0.5		page 71
405	Max power pre-alarm margin	0-100% of $P_n$		1-4	8		page 72
406	Max power pre-alarm response delay	0.1-90.0 s		1-4	0.5		page 72
407	Min power pre-alarm margin	0-100% of $P_n$		1-4	8		page 72
408	Min power pre-alarm response delay	0.1-90.0 s		1-4	0.5		page 72
409	Min power alarm margin	0-100% of $P_n$		1-4	16		page 72
410	Min power alarm response delay	0.1-90.0 s		1-4	0.5		page 73

411	Autoset power limits	no, YES		—	no		page 73
412	Normal load	0-200% of $P_n$		1 - 4	100		page 73
413	Output shaft power	0.0-200.0% of $P_n$		—	—		page 73
	EXTERNAL ALARM						
420	External alarm	oFF, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5	oFF 1. Warning 2. Coast 3. Stop 4. Brake 5. Spinbrake	1-4	oFF		page 73
	MAINS PROTECTION						
430	Voltage unbalance alarm	oFF, 1, 2, 3, 4	oFF 1. Warning 2. Coast 3. Stop 4. Brake	1-4	oFF		page 74
431	Voltage unbalance level	2-25% of $U_n$		1-4	10		page 75
432	Response delay voltage unbalance alarm	1-90 s		1-4	1		page 75
433	Overvoltage alarm	oFF, 1, 2, 3, 4	oFF 1. Warning 2. Coast 3. Stop 4. Brake	1-4	oFF		page 75
434	Overvoltage level	100-150% of $U_n$		1-4	115		page 75
435	Response delay overvoltage alarm	1-90 s		1-4	1		page 75
436	Undervoltage alarm	oFF, 1, 2, 3, 4	oFF 1. Warning 2. Coast 3. Stop 4. Brake	1-4	oFF		page 75
437	Undervoltage level	75-100% of $U_n$		1-4	85		page 76
438	Response delay undervoltage alarm	1-90 s		1-4	1		page 76
439	Phase sequence	L123, L321		—	—		page 76
440	Phase reversal alarm	oFF, 1, 2	oFF 1. Warning 2. Coast	—	oFF		page 76

	I/O settings						
	INPUT SIGNALS						

Menu	Function/Parameter	Range	Parameter alt. Alarm codes	Param. set	Factory setting	Value	Page
500	Digital/analogue input	oFF, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7	oFF 1. Digital, Rotation sensor 2. Digital, Slow speed 3. Digital, Jog fwd 4. Digital, Jog rev 5. Digital, Autoset 6. Analogue start-stop, 0–10V/0–20mA 7. Analogue start-stop, 2–10V/4–20 mA	1-4	oFF		page 77
501	Digital input pulses	1-100		1-4	1		page 78
502	Analogue start-stop on-value	0-100% of signal range		1-4	25		page 79
503	Analogue start-stop off-value	0-100% of signal range		1-4	75		page 80
504	Analogue start-stop delay time	1-999 s		1-4	1		page 80

510	Digital input 1 function	oFF, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7	oFF 1. Start signal 2. Stop signal 3. Parameter set input 1 4. Parameter set input 2 5. External alarm signal 6. Start R signal 7. Start L signal	----	1		page 81
511	Digital input 2 function	oFF, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7	See 510	----	2		page 81
512	Digital input 3 function	oFF, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7	See 510	----	3		page 82
513	Digital input 4 function	oFF, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7	See 510	----	4		page 82
	OUTPUT SIGNALS						
520	Analogue output	oFF, 1, 2, 3, 4	oFF 1. 0–10V/0–20mA 2. 2–10V/4–20mA 3. 10–0V/20–0mA 4. 10–2V/20–4mA	1-4	oFF		page 82
521	Analogue output function	1, 2, 3, 4	1. RMS current 2. Line voltage 3. Shaft power 4. Torque	1-4	1		page 82
522	Scaling analogue output, min	0-500% of value range		1-4	0		page 83
523	Scaling analogue output, max	0-500% of value range		1-4	100		page 84

Menu	Function/Parameter	Range	Parameter alt. Alarm codes	Param. set	Factory setting	Value	Page
530	Relay K1	off, 1-19	oFF 1. Operation 2. Full voltage 3. Power pre-alarm 4. Brake 5. Run 6. Run R 7. Run L 8. Operation R 9. Operation L 10. Power alarms 11. Max power alarm 12. Max power pre-alarm 13. Min power alarm 14. Min power pre-alarm 15. All alarms (except power pre-alarm) 16. All alarms (except power alarm and pre-alarm) 17. External alarm 18. Autoreset expired 19. All alarms which need manual reset	---	1		page 85
531	Relay K2	off, 1-19	Same as 530	---	2		page 85

532	Relay K3	off, 1-19	Same as 530	---	15		page 85
533	K1 contact function	1, 2	1. N.O. 2. N.C.	---	1		page 85
534	K2 contact function	1, 2	1. N.O. 2. N.C.	---	1		page 86

	<b>View operation</b>						
	OPERATION						
700	Current	0.0-9999 A		---	---		page 91
701	Line main voltage	0-720 V		---	---		page 91
702	Power factor	0.00-1.00		---	---		page 91
703	Output shaft power	-999-9999 kW		---	---		page 91
704	Output shaft power in percentage units	0-200% of P <sub>n</sub>		---	---		page 91
705	Shaft torque	-999-9999 Nm		---	---		page 91
706	Shaft torque in percentage units	0-250% of T <sub>n</sub>		---	---		page 91
707	Softstarter temperature	low, 30-96 °C low, 85-204 °F		---	---		page 92
708	Current phase L1	0.0-9999 A		---	---		page 92
709	Current phase L2	0.0-9999 A		---	---		page 92
710	Current phase L3	0.0-9999 A		---	---		page 92
711	Line main voltage L1-L2	0-720 V		---	---		page 92
712	Line main voltage L1-L3	0-720 V		---	---		page 92
713	Line main voltage L2-L3	0-720 V		---	---		page 92
714	Phase sequence	L—, L123, L321		---	---		page 92
715	Used thermal capacity	0-150%		---	---		page 92
716	Time to next allowed start	0-60 min		---	---		page 92

Menu	Function/Parameter	Range	Parameter alt. Alarm codes	Param. set	Factory setting	Value	Page
	STATUS						
720	Softstarter status	1-12	1. Stopped, no alarm 2. Stopped, alarm 3. Run with alarm 4. Acceleration 5. Full voltage 6. Deceleration 7. Bypassed 8. PFC 9. Braking 10. Slow speed forward 11. Slow speed reverse 12. Standby (waiting for analogue start/stop or autoreset)	—	—		page 93
721	Digital input status	LLLL-HHHH		----	—		page 93
722	Analogue/digital input status	L, H		—	—		page 93
723	Analogue/digital input value	0-100% of signal range		—	—		page 93
724	Relay status	LLL-HHH		—	—		page 93
725	Analogue output value	0-100% of signal range		—	—		page 93

	STORED VALUES						
730	Operation time	0-9 999 999 h		—	—		page 94
731	Energy consumption	0.000-2000 MWh		—	—		page 94
732	Reset energy consumption	no, YES		—	no		page 94

	<b>Alarm list</b>						
800	Alarm list, latest error	F1-F17, h		—	—		page 94
801	Alarm list, error 14	F1-F17, h		—	—		page 94
802	Alarm list, error 13	F1-F17, h		—	—		page 94
803	Alarm list, error 12	F1-F17, h		—	—		page 94
804	Alarm list, error 11	F1-F17, h		—	—		page 94
805	Alarm list, error 10	F1-F17, h		—	—		page 94
806	Alarm list, error 9	F1-F17, h		—	—		page 94
807	Alarm list, error 8	F1-F17, h		—	—		page 94
808	Alarm list, error 7	F1-F17, h		—	—		page 94
809	Alarm list, error 6	F1-F17, h		—	—		page 94
810	Alarm list, error 5	F1-F17, h		—	—		page 94
811	Alarm list, error 4	F1-F17, h		—	—		page 94
812	Alarm list, error 3	F1-F17, h		—	—		page 94
813	Alarm list, error 2	F1-F17, h		—	—		page 94
814	Alarm list, error 1	F1-F17, h		—	—		page 94

	<b>Softstarter data</b>						
900	Softstarter type	17-1400 A		—	17		page 95
901	Software variant text	Same as label		—	V220		page 95
902	Software version text	Same as label		—	R15		page 95

## Explanation of units:

U	Input line voltage
U <sub>n</sub>	Nominal motor voltage.
I <sub>n</sub>	Nominal motor current.
P <sub>n</sub>	Nominal motor power.
N <sub>n</sub>	Nominal motor speed.
T <sub>n</sub>	Nominal shaft torque.
I <sub>nsoft</sub>	Nominal current softstarter.
P <sub>nsoft</sub>	Nominal power softstarter.
N <sub>nsoft</sub>	Nominal speed softstarter.

## Calculation shaft torque

$$T_n = \frac{P_n}{\left(\frac{N_n}{60} \times 2\pi\right)}$$

# Index

## Numerics

2-wire start/stop with automatic reset at start .....	86
2-wire start/stop with separate reset .....	87
3-wire start/stop with automatic reset at start .....	87

## A

Abbreviations .....	7
Actual parameter set .....	51
Alarm braking .....	63
Alarm braking strength .....	63
Alarm braking time .....	63
Alarm codes .....	97
Alarm list .....	94
Alarm overview .....	98
All alarms (except power alarms and pre-alarms) .....	85
All alarms (except power pre-alarms) .....	85
All alarms which need manual reset .....	85
Ambient temperature below 0°C .....	36
Analogue input .....	79
Analogue output .....	82
Analogue Output value .....	93
Analogue start/stop .....	79
0-10 V / 0-20 mA Or 2-10 V / 4-20 mA .....	77
Analogue/digital input .....	77
Analogue/digital Input status .....	93
Analogue/digital input value .....	93
Applications and functions selection .....	31
Automatic return menu .....	44
Autoreset .....	52
Autoreset expired .....	85
AUTOSET .....	77
Autoset .....	73

## B

Background theory .....	9
Bandsaw .....	35
Blower .....	34
Brake .....	85, 97
Braking .....	61
Braking method .....	62
Braking strength .....	62
Busbar distances .....	17
Bypass .....	67

## C

Cable kit for external current transformers .....	108
CAUTION .....	5
Centrifuge .....	35
Checklist .....	27
Coast .....	97
Compressor .....	34

Connections .....	19
Control Connection .....	24
Control panel .....	39, 42
Control panel lock .....	41, 44
Control source .....	44
Control sources .....	42
Conveyor .....	35
Cooling .....	15
Copy parameter set .....	51
Current .....	44
Current limit .....	59
Current limit at start .....	59
Current limit start time expired .....	50
Current transformer .....	68

## D

DC brake at slow speed .....	66
Definitions .....	7
Derating at higher temperature .....	117
Description .....	9
Digital input .....	78
Digital input pulses .....	78
Digital Input Status .....	93
Digital inputs .....	80
Direct on-line, DOL .....	58
Dynamic vector brake .....	61

## E

Electrical specifications .....	109
Enable US units .....	45
End torque at start .....	58
End torque at stop .....	61
Energy consumption .....	94
Environmental conditions .....	117
External alarm .....	73, 85
External alarm functionality .....	89
External alarm signal .....	81, 82
External control of parameter set .....	90
External control panel .....	107

## F

Fan .....	35
Fan continuously on .....	69
Fieldbus systems .....	107
Full voltage .....	85
Functional description .....	43
Fuses and power losses .....	115

## G

General electrical specifications .....	114
Glossary .....	7

## H

Hammer mill .....	36
Hole pattern .....	17
How to get started .....	27

How to use the Instruction Manual ...	5
---------------------------------------	---

## I

I/O settings .....	77
Initial torque at start .....	58
Initial voltage at start .....	58
Input signals .....	77
Installation of the softstarter in a cabinet .....	15
Insulation test on motor .....	37
Integrated safety systems .....	5
Internal protection class .....	47

## J

Jog Forward .....	77
JOG forward enable .....	66
Jog reverse .....	77
JOG reverse enable .....	67

## K

Keys .....	40
------------	----

## L

LED indication .....	40
Line main voltage .....	91
Load monitor .....	69
Locked rotor .....	49

## M

Mains protection .....	74
Max power alarm .....	71, 85
Max power pre-alarm .....	85
Mechanical specifications including mechanical drawings .....	116
Menu structure .....	40
Min power alarm .....	71, 85
Min power pre-alarm .....	85
Min. time between starts .....	49
Minimum wiring .....	25
Mixer .....	36
Motor data .....	45
Motor protection .....	46
Mounting .....	15
Mounting schemes .....	16

## N

Normal load .....	73
NOTE .....	5
Notes to the Instruction Manual .....	5
Number of starts per hour .....	49

## O

Operation .....	85
Operation above 1000 m .....	37
Operation L .....	85
Operation R .....	85



Options .....	107	nal .....	63, 64	Voltage control .....	58, 61
Output shaftpower .....	91	Slow speed for a selected time .....	64	Voltage unbalance alarm .....	74
Output signals .....	82	Slow speed strength .....	65		
Overvoltage alarm .....	75	Slow speed time at start .....	65	<b>W</b>	
<b>P</b>		Slow speed time at stop .....	66	WARNING .....	5
Parameter set handling .....	51	Slow speed using the JOG commands ..	63, .....	Warning .....	97
Parameter set, input 1 .....	81, 82	Small motor or low load .....	36	Wiring examples .....	25
Parameter set, input 2 .....	81, 82	Softstarter data .....	95		
PCB Terminals .....	24, 118	Softstarter rating .....	31		
Phase compensation capacitor .....	36	Softstarter status .....	93		
Phase input failure .....	50	Softstarter temperature .....	92		
Phase reversal alarm .....	76	Special conditions .....	36		
Phase sequence .....	92	Spinbrake .....	97		
Planer .....	35	Standards .....	117		
Power alarms .....	85	Start .....	57		
Power- and signal connectors .....	118	Start delay power alarms .....	71		
Power factor .....	91	Start L signal .....	81, 82		
Power Factor Control PFC .....	69	Start limitation .....	48		
Power pre-alarms .....	85	Start method .....	57		
Preset pump control .....	56	Start R signal .....	81, 82		
Process protection .....	69	Start right/left functionality .....	87		
Programmable relay outputs .....	84	Start signal .....	81, 82		
Protection and alarm .....	97	Start time .....	59		
PTC input .....	47	Start/stop/reset command functionality	86		
Pump .....	34	Starting with counter-clockwise rotating			
		loads .....	36		
<b>R</b>		Step down voltage at stop .....	61		
Reduced voltage starting .....	10	Step-up transformer for high voltage			
Relay status .....	93	motor .....	37		
Remote .....	42	Stop .....	60, 97		
Reset .....	97	Stop method .....	60		
Reset energy consumption .....	94	Stop signal .....	81, 82		
Reset to factory setting .....	52	Stop time .....	63		
Reverse current brake .....	61	Stored values .....	94		
RMS current .....	91				
Rock crusher .....	35	<b>T</b>			
Rotation sensor .....	77	Technical data .....	109		
Run .....	85	Terminal clamp .....	108		
Run L .....	85	The Application Functions List .....	34		
Run R .....	85	Thermal motor protection .....	46		
Running motors connected in parallel .	36	Tightening torque for bolt .....	16		
Running motors linked together .....	37	Time to next allowed start .....	49		
		Torque boost .....	59		
<b>S</b>		Torque boost active time .....	60		
Safety .....	1	Torque boost current limit .....	60		
Safety instructions .....	1	Torque control .....	57, 60		
Safety measures .....	5	Torque control at start .....	57		
Scaling of analogue output .....	83	Torque control at stop .....	60		
Select parameter set .....	51	Troubleshooting .....	101		
Semi-conductor fuses .....	119	Type number .....	5		
Serial communication .....	42, 54, 107				
Set-up menu list .....	121	<b>U</b>			
Shaft torque .....	91	Undervoltage alarm .....	75		
Shielded control cable .....	19	Upper mounting bracket .....	17		
Shielded motor cable .....	36	Used thermal capacity .....	47, 92		
Single phase input failure .....	50				
Slow speed .....	77	<b>V</b>			
Slow speed controlled by an external sig-		View operation .....	91		



Emotron AB, Mörsaregatan 12, SE-250 24 Helsingborg, Sweden

Tel: +46 42 16 99 00, Fax: +46 42 16 99 49

E-mail: [info@emotron.se](mailto:info@emotron.se)

Internet: [www.emotron.com](http://www.emotron.com)



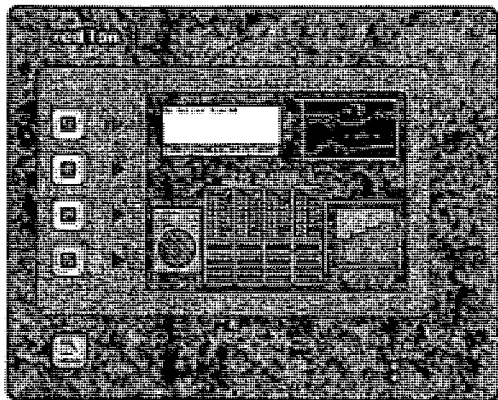




Tel +1 (717) 767-6511  
Fax +1 (717) 764-0839  
www.redlion.net

Bulletin No. G306A-B  
Drawing No. LP0666  
Released 4/08

## MODEL G306A - GRAPHIC COLOR LCD OPERATOR INTERFACE TERMINAL WITH TFT QVGA DISPLAY AND TOUCHSCREEN



FOR USE IN HAZARDOUS LOCATIONS:  
Class I, Division 2, Groups A, B, C, and D  
Class II, Division 2, Groups F and G  
Class III, Division 2

- CONFIGURED USING CRIMSON® SOFTWARE (BUILD 424 OR NEWER)
- UP TO 5 RS-232/422/485 COMMUNICATIONS PORTS (2 RS-232 AND 1 RS-422/485 ON BOARD, 1 RS-232 AND 1 RS422/485 ON OPTIONAL COMMUNICATIONS CARD)
- 10 BASE T/100 BASE-TX ETHERNET PORT TO NETWORK UNITS AND HOST WEB PAGES
- USB PORT TO DOWNLOAD THE UNIT'S CONFIGURATION FROM A PC OR FOR DATA TRANSFERS TO A PC
- UNIT'S CONFIGURATION IS STORED IN NON-VOLATILE MEMORY (8 MBYTE FLASH)
- COMPACTFLASH® SOCKET TO INCREASE MEMORY CAPACITY
- 5.7-INCH TFT ACTIVE MATRIX 256 COLOR QVGA 320 X 240 PIXEL LCD
- 5-BUTTON KEYPAD FOR ON-SCREEN MENUS
- THREE FRONT PANEL LED INDICATORS
- POWER UNIT FROM 24 VDC  $\pm 20\%$  SUPPLY
- RESISTIVE ANALOG TOUCHSCREEN

### GENERAL DESCRIPTION

The G306A Operator Interface Terminal combines unique capabilities normally expected from high-end units with a very affordable price. It is built around a high performance core with integrated functionality. This core allows the G306A to perform many of the normal features of the Paradigm range of Operator Interfaces while improving and adding new features.

The G306A is able to communicate with many different types of hardware using high-speed RS232/422/485 communications ports and Ethernet 10 Base T/100 Base-TX communications. In addition, the G306A features USB for fast downloads of configuration files and access to trending and data logging. A CompactFlash socket is provided so that Flash cards can be used to collect your trending and data logging information as well as to store larger configuration files.

In addition to accessing and controlling of external resources, the G306A allows a user to easily view and enter information. Users can enter data through the touchscreen and/or front panel 5-button keypad.

### SAFETY SUMMARY

All safety related regulations, local codes and instructions that appear in the manual or on equipment must be observed to ensure personal safety and to prevent damage to either the instrument or equipment connected to it. If equipment is used in a manner not specified by the manufacturer, the protection provided by the equipment may be impaired.

Do not use the controller to directly command motors, valves, or other actuators not equipped with safeguards. To do so can be potentially harmful to persons or equipment in the event of a fault to the controller.



The protective conductor terminal is bonded to conductive parts of the equipment for safety purposes and must be connected to an external protective earthing system.



**WARNING - EXPLOSION HAZARD - SUBSTITUTION OF COMPONENTS MAY IMPAIR SUITABILITY FOR CLASS I, DIVISION 2/CLASS II, DIVISION 2/CLASS III, DIVISION 2**



**CAUTION: Risk Of Danger.**  
Read complete instructions prior to installation and operation of the unit.



**CAUTION: Risk of electric shock.**

CompactFlash is a registered trademark of CompactFlash Association.

### CONTENTS OF PACKAGE

- G306A Operator Interface.
- Panel gasket.
- Template for panel cutout.
- Hardware packet for mounting unit into panel.
- Terminal block for connecting power.

### ORDERING INFORMATION

MODEL NO.	DESCRIPTION	PART NUMBER
G306A	Operator Interface for indoor applications, textured finish with embossed keys	G306A000
G3CF	64 MB CompactFlash Card <sup>5</sup>	G3CF064M
	256 MB CompactFlash Card <sup>5</sup>	G3CF256M
	512 MB CompactFlash Card <sup>5</sup>	G3CF512M
G3RS	RS232/485 Optional Communication Card	G3RS0000
G3CN	CANopen Optional Communication Card	G3CN0000
G3DN	DeviceNet option card for G3 operator interfaces lated high speed communications ports	G3DN0000
G3PBDP	Profibus DP Optional Communication Card	G3PBDP00
PSDR7	DIN Rail Power Supply	PSDR7000
SFCRM2	Crimson 2.0 <sup>2</sup>	SFCRM200
CBL	RS-232 Programming Cable	CBLPROG0
	USB Cable	CBLUSB00
	Communications Cables <sup>1</sup>	CBLxxxxx
DR	DIN Rail Mountable Adapter Products <sup>3</sup>	DRxxxxxx
	Replacement Battery <sup>4</sup>	BNL20000
G3FILM	Protective Films	G3FILM06

<sup>1</sup> Contact your Red Lion distributor or visit our website for complete selection.

<sup>2</sup> Use this part number to purchase the Crimson® software on CD with a printed manual, USB cable, and RS-232 cable. Otherwise, download for free from www.redlion.net.

<sup>3</sup> Red Lion offers RJ modular jack adapters. Refer to the DR literature for complete details.

<sup>4</sup> Battery type is lithium coin type CR2025.

<sup>5</sup> Industrial grade two million write cycles.

# SPECIFICATIONS

## 1. POWER REQUIREMENTS:

Must use Class 2 or SELV rated power supply.

Power connection via removable three position terminal block.

Supply Voltage: +24 VDC  $\pm 20\%$

Typical Power<sup>1</sup>: 8 W

Maximum Power<sup>2</sup>: 14 W

Notes:

1. Typical power with +24 VDC, RS232/485 communications, Ethernet communications, CompactFlash card installed, and display at full brightness.
2. Maximum power indicates the most power that can be drawn from the G306A. Refer to "Power Supply Requirements" under "Installing and Powering the G306A."
3. The G306A's circuit common is not connected to the enclosure of the unit. See "Connecting to Earth Ground" in the section "Installing and Powering the G306A."
4. Read "Power Supply Requirements" in the section "Installing and Powering the G306A" for additional power supply information.

## 2. BATTERY: Lithium coin cell. Typical lifetime of 10 years.

## 3. LCD DISPLAY:

SIZE	5.7-inch
TYPE	TFT
COLORS	256
PIXELS	320 X 240
BRIGHTNESS	500 cd/m <sup>2</sup>
BACKLIGHT*	40,000 HR TYP.

lifetime at room temperature. Refer to "Display" in "Software/Unit Operation"

## 4. 5-KEY KEYPAD: for on-screen menus.

## 5. TOUCHSCREEN: Resistive analog

## 6. MEMORY:

On Board User Memory: 8 Mbyte of non-volatile Flash memory.

Memory Card: CompactFlash Type II slot for Type I and Type II CompactFlash cards.

## 7. COMMUNICATIONS:

USB Port: Adheres to USB specification 1.1. Device only using Type B connection.



**WARNING - DO NOT CONNECT OR DISCONNECT CABLES WHILE POWER IS APPLIED UNLESS AREA IS KNOWN TO BE NON-HAZARDOUS. USB PORT IS FOR SYSTEM SET-UP AND DIAGNOSTICS AND IS NOT INTENDED FOR PERMANENT CONNECTION.**

**Serial Ports:** Format and Baud Rates for each port are individually software programmable up to 115,200 baud.

PGM Port: RS232 port via RJ12.

COMMS Ports: RS422/485 port via RJ45, and RS232 port via RJ12.

DH485 TXEN: Transmit enable; open collector,  $V_{OH} = 15$  VDC,

$V_{OL} = 0.5$  V @ 25 mA max.

Note: For additional information on the communications or signal common and connections to earth ground please see the "Connecting to Earth Ground" in the section "Installing and Powering the G306A."

**Ethernet Port:** 10 BASE-T / 100 BASE-TX

RJ45 jack is wired as a NIC (Network Interface Card).

Isolation from Ethernet network to G3 operator interface: 1500 Vrms

## 8. ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS:

Operating Temperature Range: 0 to 50°C

Storage Temperature Range: -20 to 70°C

Operating and Storage Humidity: 80% maximum relative humidity (non-condensing) from 0 to 50°C.

Vibration according to IEC 68-2-6: Operational 5 to 8 Hz, 0.8" (p-p), 8 to 500 Hz, in X, Y, Z direction, duration: 1 hour, 3 g.

Shock according to IEC 68-2-27: Operational 40 g, 9 msec in 3 directions. Altitude: Up to 2000 meters.

## 9. CERTIFICATIONS AND COMPLIANCES:

### SAFETY

UL Recognized Component, File #E179259, UL61010-1, CSA 22.2 No.61010-1 Recognized to U.S. and Canadian requirements under the Component Recognition Program of Underwriters Laboratories, Inc.

UL Listed, File #E211967, UL61010-1, UL1604, CSA 22.2 No. 61010.1, CSA 22.2 No. 213-M1987

LISTED by Und. Lab. Inc. to U.S. and Canadian safety standards

Type 4X Indoor Enclosure rating (Face only), UL50

IECEE CB Scheme Test Certificate #US/12460/UL,

CB Scheme Test Report #E179259-A1-CB-1

Issued by Underwriters Laboratories Inc.

IEC 61010-1, EN 61010-1: Safety requirements for electrical equipment for measurement, control, and laboratory use, Part 1.

IP66 Enclosure rating (Face only), IEC 529

### ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY

Emissions and Immunity to EN 61326: Electrical Equipment for Measurement, Control and Laboratory use.

### Immunity to Industrial Locations:

Electrostatic discharge	EN 61000-4-2	Criterion A 4 kV contact discharge 8 kV air discharge
Electromagnetic RF fields	EN 61000-4-3	Criterion A 10 V/m
Fast transients (burst)	EN 61000-4-4	Criterion A 2 kV power 1 kV signal
Surge	EN 61000-4-5	Criterion A 1 kV L-L, 2 kV L&N-E power
RF conducted interference	EN 61000-4-6	Criterion A 3 V/rms

### Emissions:

Emissions	EN 55011	Class A
-----------	----------	---------

Note:

1. Criterion A: Normal operation within specified limits.

## 10. CONNECTIONS: Compression cage-clamp terminal block.

Wire Gauge: 12-30 AWG copper wire

Torque: 5-7 inch-pounds (56-79 N-cm)

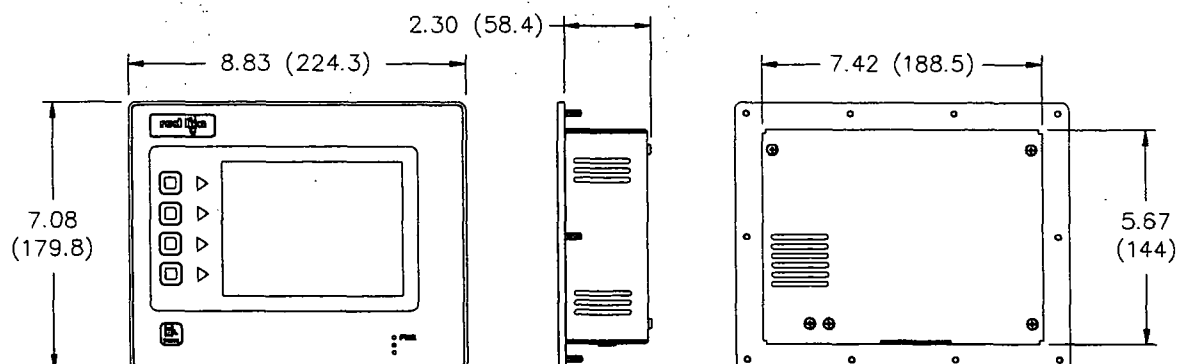
## 11. CONSTRUCTION: Steel rear metal enclosure with NEMA 4X/IP66 aluminum front plate for indoor use only when correctly fitted with the gasket provided. Installation Category II, Pollution Degree 2.

## 12. MOUNTING REQUIREMENTS: Maximum panel thickness is 0.25" (6.3 mm). For NEMA 4X/IP66 sealing, a steel panel with a minimum thickness of 0.125" (3.17 mm) is recommended.

Maximum Mounting Stud Torque: 17 inch-pounds (1.92 N-m)

## 13. WEIGHT: 3.0 lbs (1.36 Kg)

## DIMENSIONS In inches (mm)

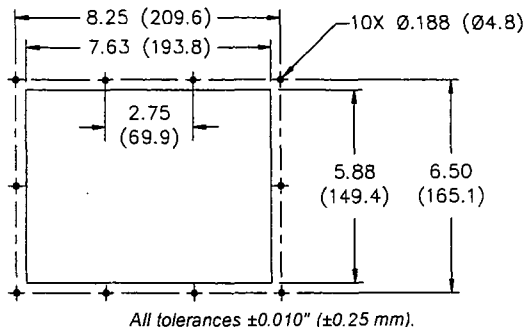


# INSTALLING AND POWERING THE G306A

## MOUNTING INSTRUCTIONS

This operator interface is designed for through-panel mounting. A panel cut-out diagram and a template are provided. Care should be taken to remove any loose material from the mounting cut-out to prevent that material from falling into the operator interface during installation. A gasket is provided to enable sealing to NEMA 4X/IP66 specification. Install the ten keps provided and tighten evenly for uniform gasket compression.

*Note: Tightening the keps beyond a maximum of 17 inch-pounds (1.92 N-m) may cause damage to the front panel.*



ALL NONINCENDIVE CIRCUITS MUST BE WIRED USING DIVISION 2 WIRING METHODS AS SPECIFIED IN ARTICLE 501-4 (b), 502-4 (b), AND 503-3 (b) OF THE NATIONAL ELECTRICAL CODE, NFPA 70 FOR INSTALLATION WITHIN THE UNITED STATES, OR AS SPECIFIED IN SECTION 19-152 OF CANADIAN ELECTRICAL CODE FOR INSTALLATION IN CANADA.

## CONNECTING TO EARTH GROUND



The protective conductor terminal is bonded to conductive parts of the equipment for safety purposes and must be connected to an external protective earthing system.

Each G306A has a chassis ground terminal on the back of the unit. Your unit should be connected to earth ground (protective earth).

The chassis ground is not connected to signal common of the unit. Maintaining isolation between earth ground and signal common is not required to operate your unit. But, other equipment connected to this unit may require isolation between signal common and earth ground. *To maintain isolation between signal common and earth ground care must be taken when connections are made to the unit.* For example, a power supply with isolation between its signal common and earth ground must be used. Also, plugging in a USB cable may connect signal common and earth ground.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> USB's shield may be connected to earth ground at the host. USB's shield in turn may also be connected to signal common.

## POWER SUPPLY REQUIREMENTS

The G306A requires a 24 VDC power supply. Your unit may draw considerably less than the maximum rated power depending upon the options being used. As additional features are used your unit will draw increasing amounts of power. Items that could cause increases in current are additional communications, optional communications card, CompactFlash card, and other features programmed through Crimson.

In any case, it is very important that the power supply is mounted correctly if the unit is to operate reliably. Please take care to observe the following points:

- The power supply must be mounted close to the unit, with usually not more than 6 feet (1.8 m) of cable between the supply and the operator interface. Ideally, the shortest length possible should be used.
- The wire used to connect the operator interface's power supply should be at least 22-gage wire. If a longer cable run is used, a heavier gage wire should be used. The routing of the cable should be kept away from large contactors, inverters, and other devices which may generate significant electrical noise.
- A power supply with a Class 2 or SELV rating is to be used. A Class 2 or SELV power supply provides isolation to accessible circuits from hazardous voltage levels generated by a mains power supply due to single faults. SELV is an acronym for "safety extra-low voltage." Safety extra-low voltage circuits shall exhibit voltages safe to touch both under normal operating conditions and after a single fault, such as a breakdown of a layer of basic insulation or after the failure of a single component has occurred.

# COMMUNICATING WITH THE G306A

## CONFIGURING A G306A

The G306A is configured using Crimson<sup>®</sup> software. Crimson is available as a free download from Red Lion's website, or it can be purchased on CD. Updates to Crimson for new features and drivers are posted on the website as they become available. By configuring the G306A using the latest version of Crimson, you are assured that your unit has the most up to date feature set. Crimson<sup>®</sup> software can configure the G306A through the RS232 PGM port, USB port, or CompactFlash.

The USB port is connected using a standard USB cable with a Type B connector. The driver needed to use the USB port will be installed with Crimson.

The RS232 PGM port uses a programming cable made by Red Lion to connect to the DB9 COM port of your computer. If you choose to make your own cable, use the "G306A Port Pin Out Diagram" for wiring information.

The CompactFlash can be used to program a G3 by placing a configuration file and firmware on the CompactFlash card. The card is then inserted into the target G3 and powered. Refer to the Crimson literature for more information on the proper names and locations of the files.

## USB, DATA TRANSFERS FROM THE COMPACTFLASH CARD



WARNING - DO NOT CONNECT OR DISCONNECT CABLES WHILE POWER IS APPLIED UNLESS AREA IS KNOWN TO BE NON-HAZARDOUS. USB PORT IS FOR SYSTEM SET-UP AND DIAGNOSTICS AND IS NOT INTENDED FOR PERMANENT CONNECTION.

In order to transfer data from the CompactFlash card via the USB port, a driver must be installed on your computer. This driver is installed with Crimson and is located in the folder C:\Program Files\Red Lion Controls\Crimson 2.0\Device\ after Crimson is installed. This may have already been accomplished if your G306A was configured using the USB port.

Once the driver is installed, connect the G306A to your PC with a USB cable, and follow "Mounting the CompactFlash" instructions in the Crimson 2 user manual.

## CABLES AND DRIVERS

Red Lion has a wide range of cables and drivers for use with many different communication types. A list of these drivers and cables along with pin outs is available from Red Lion's website. New cables and drivers are added on a regular basis. If making your own cable, refer to the "G306A Port Pin Outs" for wiring information.

## ETHERNET COMMUNICATIONS

Ethernet communications can be established at either 10 BASE-T or 100 BASE-TX. The G306A unit's RJ45 jack is wired as a NIC (Network Interface Card). For example, when wiring to a hub or switch use a straight-through cable, but when connecting to another NIC use a crossover cable.

The Ethernet connector contains two LEDs. A yellow LED in the upper right, and a bi-color green/amber LED in the upper left. The LEDs represent the following statuses:

LED COLOR	DESCRIPTION
YELLOW solid	Link established.
YELLOW flashing	Data being transferred.
GREEN	10 BASE-T Communications
AMBER	100 BASE-TX Communications

On the rear of each unit is a unique 12-digit MAC address and a block for marking the unit with an IP address. Refer to the Crimson manual and Red Lion's website for additional information on Ethernet communications.

## RS232 PORTS

The G306A has two RS232 ports. There is the PGM port and the COMMS port. Although only one of these ports can be used for programming, both ports can be used for communications with a PLC.

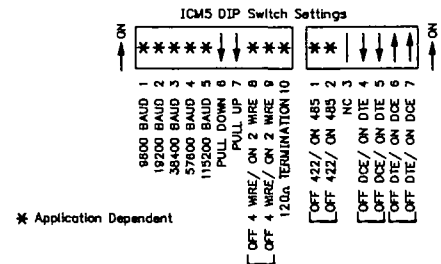
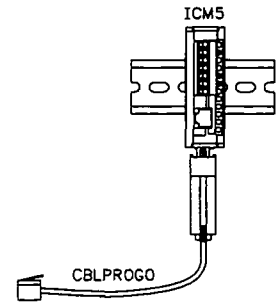
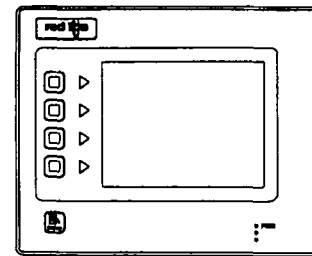
The RS232 ports can be used for either master or slave protocols with any .06A configuration.

Examples of RS232 communications could involve another Red Lion product or a PC. By using a cable with RJ12 ends on it, and a twist in the cable, RS232 communications with another G3 product or the Modular Controller can be established. Red Lion part numbers for cables with a twist in them are CBLPROG0<sup>1</sup>, CBLRLC01<sup>2</sup>, or CBLRC02<sup>3</sup>.

### G3 RS232 to a PC

Connections			
G3: RJ12	Name	PC: DB9	Name
4	COMM	1	DCD
5	Tx	2	Rx
2	Rx	3	Tx
	N/C	4	DTR
3	COM	5	GND
	N/C	6	DSR
1	CTS	7	RTS
6	RTS	8	CTS
	N/C	9	RI

CONNECTING A G306A OPERATOR INTERFACE TO AN ICM5

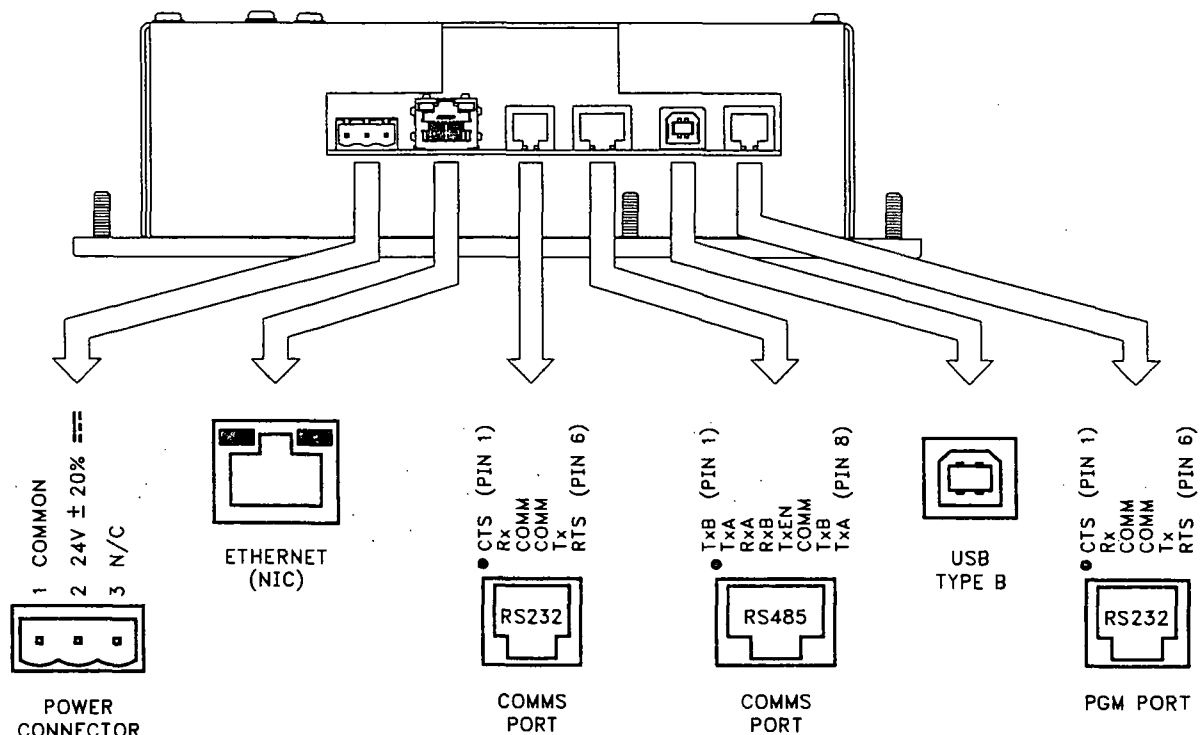


<sup>1</sup> CBLPROG0 can also be used to communicate with either a PC or an ICM5.

<sup>2</sup> DB9 adapter not included, 1 foot long.

<sup>3</sup> DB9 adapter not included, 10 feet long.

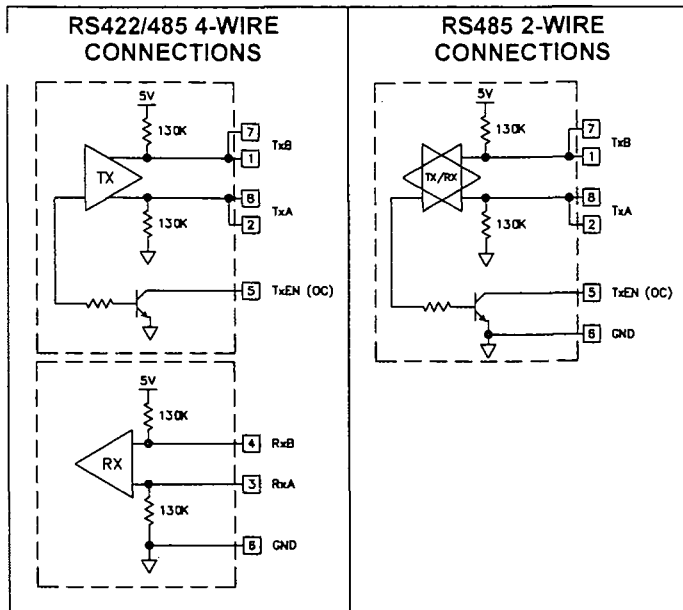
### G306A PORT PIN OUTS





## RS422/485 COMMS PORT

The G306A has one RS422/485 port. This port can be configured to act as either RS422 or RS485.



*Note: All Red Lion devices connect A to A and B to B, except for Paradigm devices. Refer to [www.redlion.net](http://www.redlion.net) for additional information.*

## DH485 COMMUNICATIONS

The G306A's RS422/485 COMMS port can also be used for Allen Bradley DH485 communications.

**WARNING: DO NOT** use a standard DH485 cable to connect this port to Allen Bradley equipment. A cable and wiring diagram are available from Red Lion.

### G3 to AB SLC 500 (CBLAB003)

Connections			
RJ45: RLC	Name	RJ45: A-B	Name
1	TxB	1	A
2	TxA	2	B
3, 8	RxA	-	24V
4, 7	RxB	-	COMM
5	TxEN	5	TxEN
6	COMM	4	SHIELD
4, 7	TxB	-	COMM
3, 8	TxA	-	24V

## Examples of RS485 2-Wire Connections

### G3 to Red Lion RJ11 (CBLRLC00) DLC, IAMS, ITMS, PAXCDC4C

Connections			
G3: RJ45	Name	RLC: RJ11	Name
5	TxEN	2	TxEN
6	COM	3	COM
1	TxB	5	B-
2	TxA	4	A+

### G3 to Modular Controller (CBLRLC05)

Connections			
G3	Name	Modular Controller	Name
1,4	TxB	1,4	TxB
4,1	RxB	4,1	RxB
2,3	TxA	2,3	TxA
3,2	RxA	3,2	RxA
5	TxEN	5	TxEN
6	COM	6	COM
7	TxB	7	TxB
8	TxA	8	TxA

# SOFTWARE/UNIT OPERATION

## CRIMSON® SOFTWARE

Crimson® software is available as a free download from Red Lion's website it can be purchased on a CD, see "Ordering Information" for part number. The latest version of the software is always available from the website, and updating your copy is free.

## DISPLAY

This operator interface uses a liquid crystal display (LCD) for displaying text and graphics. The display utilizes a cold cathode fluorescent tube (CCFL) for lighting the display. The CCFL tubes can be dimmed for low light conditions.

These CCFL tubes have a limited lifetime. Backlight lifetime is based upon the amount of time the display is turned on at full intensity. Turning the backlight off when the display is not in use can extend the lifetime of your backlight. This can be accomplished through the Crimson® software when configuring your unit.

## FRONT PANEL LEDs

There are three front panel LEDs. Shown below is the default status of the LEDs.

LED	INDICATION
<b>RED (TOP, LABELED PWR)</b>	
FLASHING	Unit is in the boot loader, no valid configuration is loaded. <sup>1</sup>
STEADY	Unit is powered and running an application.
<b>YELLOW (MIDDLE)</b>	
OFF	No CompactFlash card is present.
STEADY	Valid CompactFlash card present.
FLASHING RAPIDLY	CompactFlash card being checked.
FLICKERING	Unit is writing to the CompactFlash, either because it is storing data, or because the PC connected via the USB port has locked the drive. <sup>2</sup>
FLASHING SLOWLY	Incorrectly formatted CompactFlash card present.
<b>GREEN (BOTTOM)</b>	
FLASHING	A tag is in an alarm state.
STEADY	Valid configuration is loaded and there are no alarms present.

<sup>1</sup> The operator interface is shipped without a configuration. After downloading a configuration, if the light remains in the flashing state continuously, try cycling power. If the LED still continues to flash, try downloading a configuration again.

<sup>2</sup> Do not turn off power to the unit while this light is flickering. The unit writes data in two minute intervals. Later Microsoft operating systems will not lock the drive unless they need to write data; Windows 98 may lock the drive any time it is mounted, thereby interfering with logging. Refer to "Mounting the CompactFlash" in the Crimson 2 User Manual.

## TOUCHSCREEN

This operator interface utilizes a resistive analog touchscreen for user input. The unit will only produce an audible tone (beep) when a touch on an active touchscreen cell is sensed. The touchscreen is fully functional as soon as the operator interface is initialized, and can be operated with gloved hands.

## KEYPAD

The G306A keypad consists of five keys that can be used for on-screen menus.

## TROUBLESHOOTING YOUR G306A

If for any reason you have trouble operating, connecting, or simply have questions concerning your new G306A, contact Red Lion's technical support. For contact information, refer to the back page of this bulletin for phone and fax numbers.

EMAIL: [techsupport@redlion.net](mailto:techsupport@redlion.net)

Web Site: <http://www.redlion.net>

## BATTERY & TIME KEEPING



**WARNING - EXPLOSION HAZARD - THE AREA MUST BE KNOWN TO BE NON-HAZARDOUS BEFORE SERVICING/ REPLACING THE UNIT AND BEFORE INSTALLING OR REMOVING I/O WIRING AND BATTERY.**



**WARNING - EXPLOSION HAZARD - DO NOT DISCONNECT EQUIPMENT UNLESS POWER HAS BEEN DISCONNECTED AND THE AREA IS KNOWN TO BE NON-HAZARDOUS.**

A battery is used to keep time when the unit is without power. Typical accuracy of the G306A time keeping is less than one minute per month drift. The battery of a G306A unit does not affect the unit's memory, all configurations and data is stored in non-volatile memory.



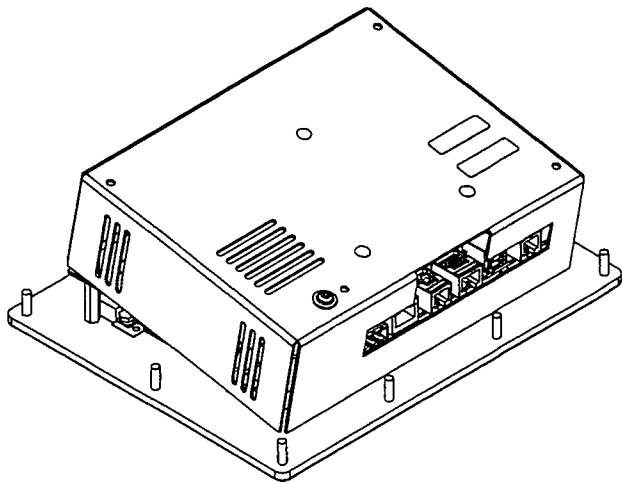
### CAUTION: RISK OF ELECTRIC SHOCK

The inverter board, attached to the mounting plate, supplies the high voltage to operate the backlight. Touching the inverter board may result in injury to personnel.



**CAUTION:** The circuit board contains static sensitive components. Before handling the operator interface without the rear cover attached, discharge static charges from your body by touching a grounded bare metal object. Ideally, handle the operator interface at a static controlled clean workstation. Also, do not touch the surface areas of the circuit board. Dirt, oil, or other contaminants may adversely affect circuit operation.

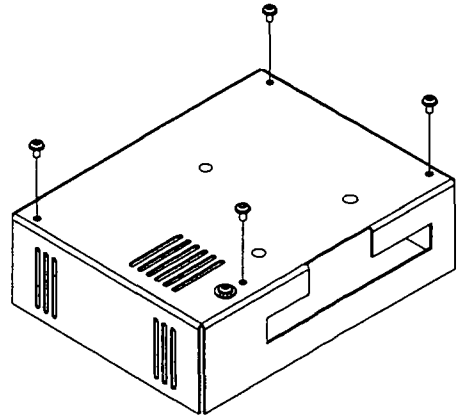
To change the battery of a G306A, remove power, cabling, and then the rear cover of the unit. To remove the cover, remove the four screws designated by the arrows on the rear of the unit. Then, by lifting the top side, hinge the cover, thus providing clearance for the connectors on the bottom side of the PCB as shown in the illustration below. Install in the reverse manner.



Remove the old battery\* from the holder and replace with the new battery. Replace the rear cover, cables, and re-apply power. Using Crimson or the unit's keypad, enter the correct time and date.

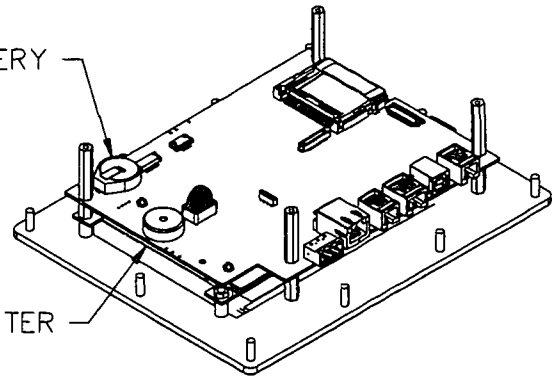
*\* Please note that the old battery must be disposed of in a manner that complies with your local waste regulations. Also, the battery must not be disposed of in fire, or in a manner whereby it may be damaged and its contents come into contact with human skin.*

*The battery used by the G306A is a lithium type CR2025.*



BATTERY

INVERTER



## OPTIONAL FEATURES AND ACCESSORIES

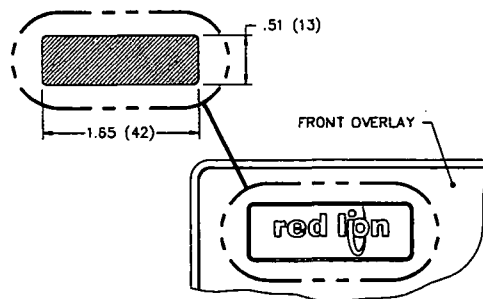
### OPTIONAL COMMUNICATION CARD

Red Lion offers optional communication cards for fieldbus communications. These communication cards will allow your G306A to communicate with many of the popular fieldbus protocols.

Red Lion is also offering a communications card for additional RS232 and RS422/485 communications. Visit Red Lion's website for information and availability of these cards.

### CUSTOM LOGO

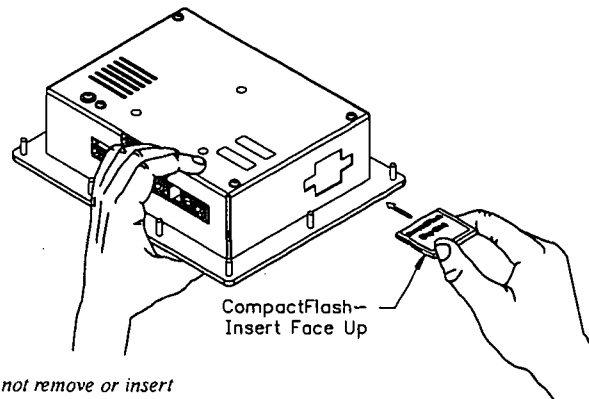
Each G3 operator interface has an embossed area containing the Red Lion logo. Red Lion can provide custom logos to apply to this area. Contact your distributor for additional information and pricing.



### COMPACTFLASH SOCKET

CompactFlash socket is a Type II socket that can accept either Type I or II cards. Use cards with a minimum of 4 Mbytes and a maximum of 2 Gbytes with the G306A's CompactFlash socket. Cards are available at most computer and office supply retailers.

CompactFlash can be used for configuration transfers, larger configurations, data logging, and trending.



*Note: Do not remove or insert the CompactFlash card while power is applied. Refer to "Front Panel LEDs."*

Information stored on a CompactFlash card by a G306A can be read by a card reader attached to a PC. This information is stored in IBM (Windows®) PC compatible FAT16 file format.

### NOTE

For reliable operation in all of our products, Red Lion recommends the use of SanDisk® and SimpleTech brands of CompactFlash cards.

Industrial grade versions that provide up to two million write/erase cycles minimum are available from Red Lion.

### LIMITED WARRANTY

The Company warrants the products it manufactures against defects in materials and workmanship for a period limited to two years from the date of shipment, provided the products have been stored, handled, installed, and used under proper conditions. The Company's liability under this limited warranty shall extend only to the repair or replacement of a defective product, at The Company's option. The Company disclaims all liability for any affirmation, promise or representation with respect to the products.

The customer agrees to hold Red Lion Controls harmless from, defend, and indemnify RLC against damages, claims, and expenses arising out of subsequent sales of RLC products or products containing components manufactured by RLC and based upon personal injuries, deaths, property damage, lost profits, and other matters which Buyer, its employees, or sub-contractors are or may be to any extent liable, including without limitation penalties imposed by the Consumer Product Safety Act (P.L. 92-573) and liability imposed upon any person pursuant to the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act (P.L. 93-637), as now in effect or as amended hereafter.

No warranties expressed or implied are created with respect to The Company's products except those expressly contained herein. The Customer acknowledges the disclaimers and limitations contained herein and relies on no other warranties or affirmations.

Red Lion Controls  
20 Willow Springs Circle  
York PA 17406  
Tel +1 (717) 767-6511  
Fax +1 (717) 764-0839

Red Lion Controls BV  
Printerweg 10  
NL - 3821 AD Amersfoort  
Tel +31 (0) 334 723 225  
Fax +31 (0) 334 893 793

Red Lion Controls AP  
Unit 101, XinAn Plaza  
Building 13, No.99 Tianzhou Road  
Shanghai, P.R. China 200223  
Tel +86 21 6113-3688  
Fax +86 21 6113-3683







# TC-900DR USER GUIDE

41 Aster Avenue Carrum Downs 3201 Australia Tel: 61 3 9775 0505 Fax: 61 3 9775 0606 www.trio.com.au

## GENERAL

The Trio DataCom TC-900DR is a full duplex 900 MHz Radio featuring a fully integrated 4800/9600 bps data radio modem and antenna diplexer. Configuration of the unit is fully programmable, with parameters held in non volatile memory (NVRAM). All configuration parameters are accessible using the TC-DRPROG installation package, consisting of a programming lead, manual and software which will run on a PC under Windows 95/98/NT. It is essential that each unit is programmed to suit individual requirements prior to operation. *For detailed information refer to the TC-900DR Handbook.*

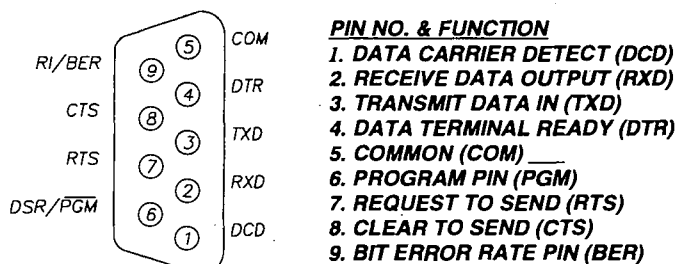
## DATA CONNECTION

The data connection is via a DB9 connector labeled 'Port A' (shown below), which is wired as a DCE.

### User Serial "Port A" Pin Assignment.

#### EXTERNAL VIEW OF 'PORT A'

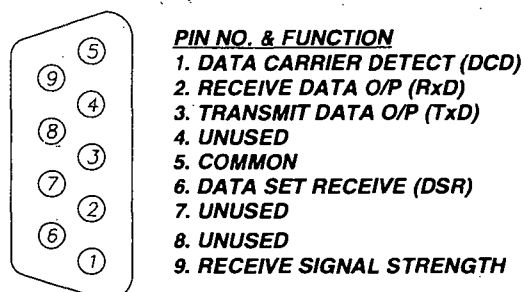
**NOTE:** Pin 6 and pin 9 provide a dual function which depends on the mode that the TC-900DR is operating in.



### User Serial "Port B" Pin Assignment.

Port B can be used as a secondary data stream (independent of Port A) once configured by the programmer. Port B also has one connection that may be of use for installation. This connection (Pin 9) is Receive Signal Strength Indicator (RSSI) output. 0-5V where 1.5V typically indicates -110dBm and every 0.5V increase indicates an improvement of » 10dBm.

#### EXTERNAL VIEW OF 'PORT B'

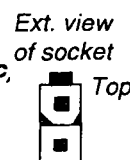


**NOTE:** Port B Pin 9 output has a high impedance of around 50K OHMS and loading will decrease accuracy of the RSSI measurement.

## POWER CONNECTIONS

The power required is 13.8VDC nominal, at 600mA (Tx) nominal. If the POWER LED indicator is not illuminated once power is applied, check the internal 1Amp fuse fitted within the unit.

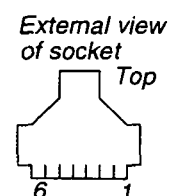
POWER CONNECTOR	PIN ASSIGNMENT
TOP PIN	+VE SUPPLY (13.8vdc,
BOTTOM PIN	GROUND



## AUXILIARY CONNECTOR

The auxiliary connector is primarily for use with the optional audio handset. The connections to this auxiliary 6 pin RJ11 connector are as follows:

PIN NUMBER	FUNCTION
1	8 VOLTS
2	AUDIO OUT
3	GROUND
4	MIC INPUT/SENSE
5	GROUND
6	MANUAL PTT



The optional audio handset is recommended as an aid in checking installations for radio path viability. This audio handset will only function when fitted prior to applying power to the unit.

The modem upon power up will check the presence of the handset and will inhibit data being transmitted so that voice communications can be established.

Once the path tests have been conducted the audio handsets **MUST be REMOVED** and the unit powered up with the handset removed before data communication can commence.

## USER INDICATIONS

The TC-900DR provides 4 LED's that show status information to the user - POWER, RXSIG, SYNC, and TXMIT indications.

The POWER is indicated by a green LED and simply signifies that power has been applied to the unit.

The RXSIG LED (yellow) indicates the level of RSSI signal from the radio IF strip, compared to a threshold level set in the configuration data programmed by the user. If the signal is above the threshold, then the LED indicator is turned on.

In all operation modes except "Programmer mode", the SYNC LED (yellow) indicates when the modem has detected a valid data stream. The SYNC LED is activated, when the modem detects a valid HDLC flag sequence, and remains active until an invalid sequence of seven or more consecutive "1" bits is detected.

The SYNC LED will not be turned on if the RSSI signal strength (as indicated by the RXSIG LED) is below the minimum threshold. This prevents false SYNC detection from noise.

The TXMIT LED (red) indicator is connected directly to the modem's PTT output transistor. Whenever the radio is transmitting, this TXMIT LED indicator will be on.

## **SPECIAL MODES OF OPERATION**

Part of the power-up/reset initialisation phase of the TC-900DR are tests to determine if the modem should enter one of 3 "special operation" modes. *In these modes the TC-900DR won't operate in its standard run mode.*

- ◆ Programmer mode.
- ◆ Bit error rate test mode.
- ◆ Handset mode.

These modes are only entered if the required setup conditions are present at power up. An error mode of operation can also be entered into, if during normal operation, an error condition occurs.

### **PROGRAMMER MODE**

CABLE - Pins 2, 3, 4, 5 straight through with Pin 6 on the DB9 connector of Port A, connected to pin 5. When the modem is powered up with this fitted, the controller senses this and attempts to enter "Programmer mode" and the "SYNC" LED will flash approx. once per second. (Note, the TC-DRPROG programming software and lead has the required connections). Failure to supply the correct password in time, will cause the modem to abandon the "Programmer mode" attempt, and go on with its normal waker-up procedure.

### **BIT ERROR RATE TEST MODE**

Pin 9 of the DB9 connector of Port A, is normally the Ring Indicate output line. However, if this pin is driven positive (connecting it to pin 6 [DSR] and pin 7 [RTS]), then the modem's data transmitter and receiver will enter the BER test mode. This will activate the RF transmitter, and generate a scrambled bit pattern which should be decoded at a receiver as a constant logic "1" level in the unscrambled data. Any errors in the decoded bitstream, will be "0", and the receiver portion of the modem in this mode, will activate the SYNC LED every time it sees a "0" bit.

Note: As the TC-900DR is full duplex this test can operate in both directions simultaneously.

Every error bit detected, will activate the SYNC LED. For error rates of 1 in  $10^3$  and above, the SYNC LED will be ON most of the time. A 1 in  $10^4$  error rate will show the SYNC LED active for approximately 10% of the time. This function provides a crude indication of Bit Error Rate for installation purposes. Note: Error count messages (ET:XXXX) for every 10,000 bits are presented to Port A for the user. If pin 9 ceases to be driven positive, then the BER Test mode is terminated, and the modem restarts its initialisation phase.

### **HANDSET MODE**

The modem tests for the presence of a handset plugged into the handset auxiliary port at power up. If a handset is plugged in, the modem will not generate a data stream. However, it will continue to indicate received RF signal strength. The handset has a PTT button, and this signal is connected across the modem's PTT output. Thus the handset PTT switch will not activate the TXMIT LED. It is essential to remove the handset from the unit and reapply power to the unit in order to return to normal operation.

### **ERROR INDICATION MODES**

There are 3 error conditions that cause the RXSIG & SYNC LEDs to be used for error indications and not their normal purpose. Two are fatal conditions, that cause the modem to restart after the duration of the error indication phase.

## **TRANSMIT POWER LOW**

While the modem activates the radio transmitter, it periodically checks the transmit power. If the power measurement is less than a threshold set in the non-volatile memory, then the RXSIG and SYNC LEDs are made to alternate, approximately 4 times per second. The TXMIT LED will also be on during this process. This indication condition will persist for the duration of the transmission. As soon as the transmission is discontinued, the error indication will cease, and the two LEDs revert to their normal function. Factory set to 100 milliWatts.

## **NVRAM READ ERROR**

The DFM4-9DR modem accesses the non-volatile memory as part of its initialisation phase, to read programming configuration data. If the communication protocol with the device is violated, or the non-volatile memory CRC checksum is found to be incorrect, then the modem indicates this by flashing the RXSIG and SYNC LEDs twice alternately. That is, one LED operates ON and OFF twice, then the other. A total of five cycles of this occurs, then the modem restarts initialisation.

## **SYNTHESISER LOCK DETECT ERROR**

If at any time during normal operation, BER mode, or handset mode, the TBB206 frequency synthesiser indicates an out of lock condition, the modem enters an error indication mode for a short time before restarting.

One LED is turned ON (◉), the LEDs are swapped, then both turned OFF (●). Then the latter LED ON again, swap LEDs, and then OFF. This will give the appearance of a sweeping motion between the LEDs. The following table shows all error condition displays.

Tx PWR Err		NVRAM Err		SYNTH Err	
RXSIG	SYNC	RXSIG	SYNC	RXSIG	SYNC
◉	●	◉	●	◉	●
●	◉	●	●	●	◉
◉	●	◉	●	●	●
●	◉	●	●	●	◉
◉	●	●	◉	◉	●
●	◉	●	●	●	●
◉	●	●	◉	repeat	
●	◉	●	●		
continue		repeat			

## **MOUNTING AND ANTENNA CONNECTION**

The TC-900DR should be mounted in a cool, dry, vibration free environment, whilst providing easy access to screws and connections. There are 4 mounting holes on the unit. The antenna should be an external yagi antenna but can be a ground independent dipole mounted via a feeder to the antenna connector (SMA type) for short range applications. However the whole radio modem should be clear of the associated data equipment to prevent mutual interference.

## **ASSEMBLY OF POWER LEAD**

A small plastic bag containing a molex connector (M5557-2R) and two pins (M5556-TL) is provided in the packing box.

The pins are designed to take 18-24 (AWG) wire size with insulation range 1.3 - 3.10mm.

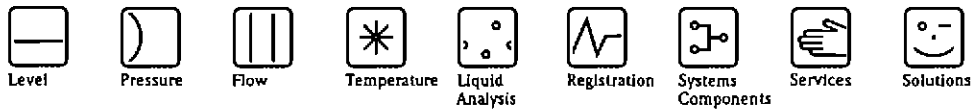
Please take care when crimping the pins.

09/03





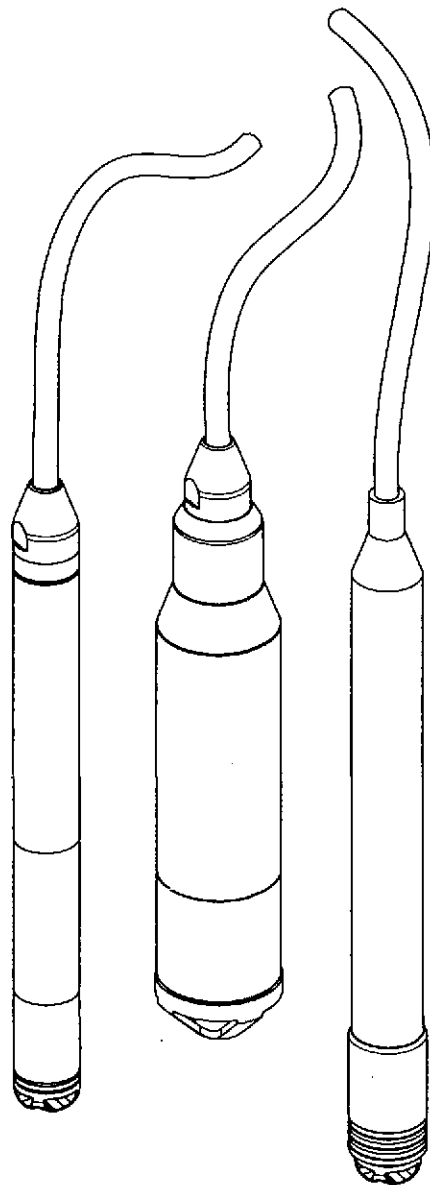




## Operating Instructions

# Waterpilot FMX167

## Level probe



BA231P/00/en/02.08  
71003557



## Table of contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Safety instructions</b>	<b>4</b>
1.1	Designated use	4
1.2	Installation, commissioning and operation	4
1.3	Operational safety	4
1.4	Notes on safety conventions and icons	5
<b>2</b>	<b>Identification</b>	<b>6</b>
2.1	Device designation	6
2.2	Scope of supply	7
2.3	CE mark, declaration of conformity	8
<b>3</b>	<b>Installation</b>	<b>8</b>
3.1	Incoming acceptance and storage	8
3.2	Installation conditions	9
3.3	Installation instructions	10
3.4	Checking the installation	12
<b>4</b>	<b>Wiring</b>	<b>13</b>
4.1	Connecting the device	13
4.2	Wiring up the measuring unit	16
4.3	Checking the wiring	16
<b>5</b>	<b>Operation</b>	<b>17</b>
<b>6</b>	<b>Maintenance</b>	<b>17</b>
6.1	Exterior cleaning	17
<b>7</b>	<b>Accessories</b>	<b>18</b>
<b>8</b>	<b>Trouble-shooting</b>	<b>20</b>
8.1	Faults on Waterpilot FMX167 and Waterpilot FMX167 with optional Pt 100	20
8.2	Faults of temperature transmitter TMT181	20
8.3	Spare Parts	21
<b>9</b>	<b>Technical Data</b>	<b>21</b>
	<b>Index</b>	<b>22</b>

# 1 Safety instructions

## 1.1 Designated use

The Waterpilot FMX167 is a hydrostatic pressure sensor for measuring the level of fresh water, wastewater and seawater. Versions with a Pt 100 resistance thermometer can detect temperature at the same time. The optional temperature transmitter converts the Pt 100 signal into a 4...20 mA signal.

The manufacturer shall not accept any liability for damage arising from improper use or if the device is used for purposes for which it was not intended.

## 1.2 Installation, commissioning and operation

The Waterpilot FMX167 and the temperature transmitter TMT181 (optional) are designed as fail-safe to the state of the art and comply with prevailing regulations and EC directives. If the devices are not used properly or for purposes for which they were not intended, they may become hazards arising from the particular application, e.g. product overflow through incorrect installation or adjustment. For these reasons, only trained personnel authorised by the plant operator may install, connect electrically, commission, operate and maintain the measuring system. Trained personnel must have read and understood these Operating Instructions and heed the instructions. Any changes and repairs to the devices may only be performed if the Operating Instructions expressly permit this.

## 1.3 Operational safety

### 1.3.1 Explosion hazardous area (optional)




Devices for use in hazardous areas are additionally identified on the nameplate (→ see Page 6). If the device is to be installed in an explosion hazardous area, then the specifications in the certificate as well as all national and local regulations must be observed. A separate Ex documentation is enclosed with the device and is an integral part of this documentation. The installation regulations, connection values and Safety Instructions listed in this document must be observed. The documentation number of the related Safety Instructions (XAs) is also indicated on the nameplate.




- Ensure that all personnel are suitably qualified.






Versions in the order code (e.g. FMX167 - D ...)	Certificate	Protection
B	ATEX	ATEX II 2 G EEx ia IIC T6
C	ATEX	ATEX II 3 G EEx nA II T6
D	FM	IS, Class I, Division 1, Groups A–D
E	CSA	IS, Class I, Division 1, Groups A–D

## 1.4 Notes on safety conventions and icons

In order to highlight safety-relevant or alternative operating procedures in the manual, the following conventions have been used, each indicated by a corresponding icon in the margin.

Symbol	Meaning
	<b>Warning!</b> A warning highlights actions or procedures which, if not performed correctly, will lead to personal injury, a safety hazard or destruction of the instrument.
	<b>Caution!</b> Caution highlights actions or procedures which, if not performed correctly, may lead to personal injury or incorrect functioning of the instrument.
	<b>Note!</b> A note highlights actions or procedures which, if not performed correctly, may indirectly affect operation or may lead to an instrument response which is not planned.

	<b>Device certified for use in explosion hazardous area</b> If the device has this symbol embossed on its nameplate, it can be installed in an explosion hazardous area or a non-explosion hazardous area, according to the approval.
	<b>Explosion hazardous area</b> Symbol used in drawings to indicate explosion hazardous areas. – Devices used in hazardous areas must possess an appropriate type of protection.
	<b>Safe area (non-explosion hazardous area)</b> Symbol used in drawings to indicate, if necessary, non-explosion hazardous areas. – Devices used in hazardous areas must possess an appropriate type of protection. Lines used in hazardous areas must meet the necessary safety-related characteristic quantities.

	<b>Direct voltage</b> A terminal to which or from which a direct current or voltage may be applied or supplied.
	<b>Alternating voltage</b> A terminal to which or from which an alternating (sine-wave) current or voltage may be applied or supplied.
	<b>Grounded terminal</b> A grounded terminal, which as far as the operator is concerned, is already grounded by means of an earth grounding system.
	<b>Protective grounding (earth) terminal</b> A terminal which must be connected to earth ground prior to making any other connection to the equipment.
	<b>Equipotential connection (earth bonding)</b> A connection made to the plant grounding system which may be of type e.g. neutral star or equipotential line according to national or company practice.

## 2 Identification

### 2.1 Device designation

- Waterpilot FMX167 for hydrostatic level measurement, refer to section 2.1.1.
- Waterpilot FMX167 with optional Pt 100 resistance thermometer for simultaneous level and temperature measurement, refer to section 2.1.1.
- Waterpilot FMX167 with optional Pt 100 resistance thermometer and optional temperature transmitter TMT181, refer to section 2.1.1 and 2.1.2.

#### 2.1.1 Nameplate Waterpilot FMX167

The nameplate is fitted to the FMX167 extension cable.

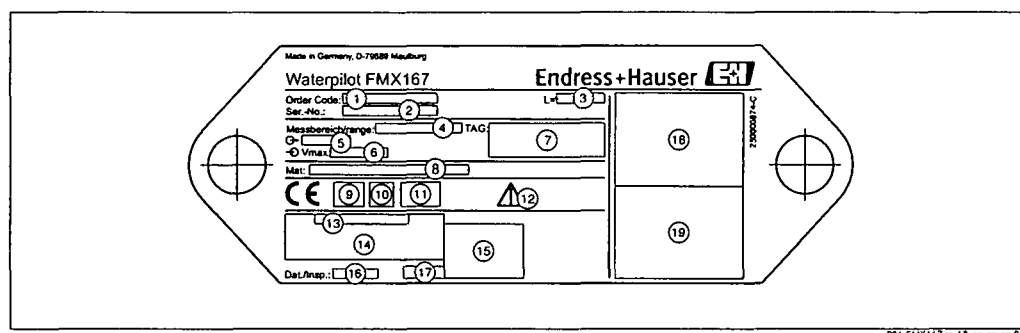


Fig. 1: Nameplate for Waterpilot FMX167

- 1 Order code  
See the specifications on the order confirmation for the meaning of the individual letters and digits.
- 2 Serial number
- 3 Length of extension cable
- 4 Nominal measuring range
- 5 Current output
- 6 Supply voltage
- 7 TAG
- 8 Wetted materials
- 9 Ex symbol (optional)
- 10 CSA symbol (optional)
- 11 FM symbol (optional)
- 12 Pay attention to the installation instructions in the Operating Instructions!
- 13 ID number of notified body with regard to ATEX (optional)
- 14 Text for approval (optional)
- 15 Approval symbol (optional)
- 16 Test date (optional)
- 17 Symbol: Observe Safety Instructions, indicating the documentation number, e.g. XA131P-C (optional)
- 18 Wiring diagram FMX167
- 19 Wiring diagram Pt 100 if Waterpilot was ordered with Pt 100.



The following information is also provided on the FMX167 with outer diameter  $\approx 22$  mm (0.87 in) and 42 mm (1.66 in):

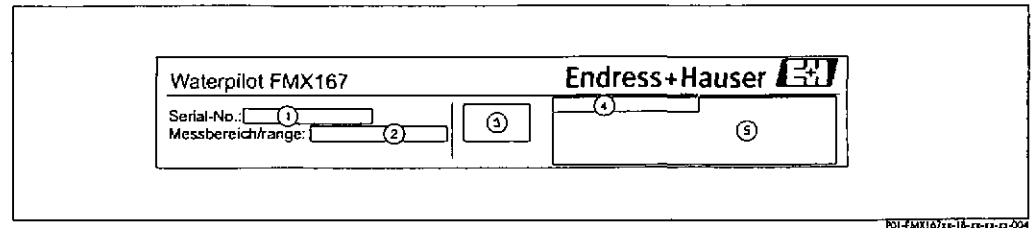


Fig. 2: FMX167 labeling

- 1 Serial number
- 2 Nominal measuring range
- 3 CE symbol or approval symbol
- 4 ID number of notified body with regard to ATEX (optional)
- 5 Text for approval (optional)

## 2.1.2 Nameplate of temperature transmitter TMT181

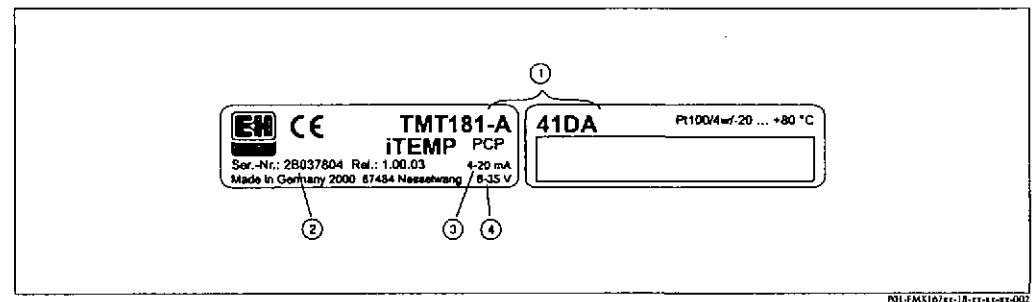


Fig. 3: Nameplate of temperature transmitter TMT181

- 1 Order code of temperature transmitter TMT181-A41DA
  - A: Version for non-hazardous area
  - 4: 4-wire
  - I: Sensor Pt 100
  - D: Temperature transmitter with settings for  $-20...+80^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $-4...+174^{\circ}\text{F}$ ) range
  - A: Label: Standard version
- 2 Serial No.
- 3 Current output: 4...20 mA
- 4 Supply voltage: 8...35 V DC

## 2.2 Scope of supply

The scope of delivery comprises:

- Waterpilot FMX167, optionally with integrated Pt 100 resistance thermometer
- Optional accessories ( $\rightarrow$  see also chapter 7)

Documentation supplied:

- Operating Instructions BA231P (this document)
- Final inspection report
- Drinking water approval SD126P (optional)
- Devices which are suitable for use in hazardous areas:  
additional documentation such as Safety Instructions (XAs), Control or  
Installation Drawings (ZDs)

## 2.3 CE mark, declaration of conformity

The device is designed to meet state-of-the-art safety requirements, has been tested and left the factory in a condition in which it is safe to operate. The device complies with the applicable standards and regulations as listed in the EC declaration of conformity and thus complies with the statutory requirements of the EC Directives. Endress+Hauser confirms the successful testing of the device by affixing to it the CE mark.

# 3 Installation

## 3.1 Incoming acceptance and storage

### 3.1.1 Incoming acceptance

- Check the packaging and the contents for damage.
- Check the shipment, make sure nothing is missing and that the scope of supply matches your order.

### 3.1.2 Storage

The device must be stored in a dry, clean area and protected against damage from impact (EN 837-2).

Storage temperature range:

- FMX167: -40...+80°C (-40...+176°F)
- TMT181: -40...+100°C (-40...+212°F)

### 3.2 Installation conditions

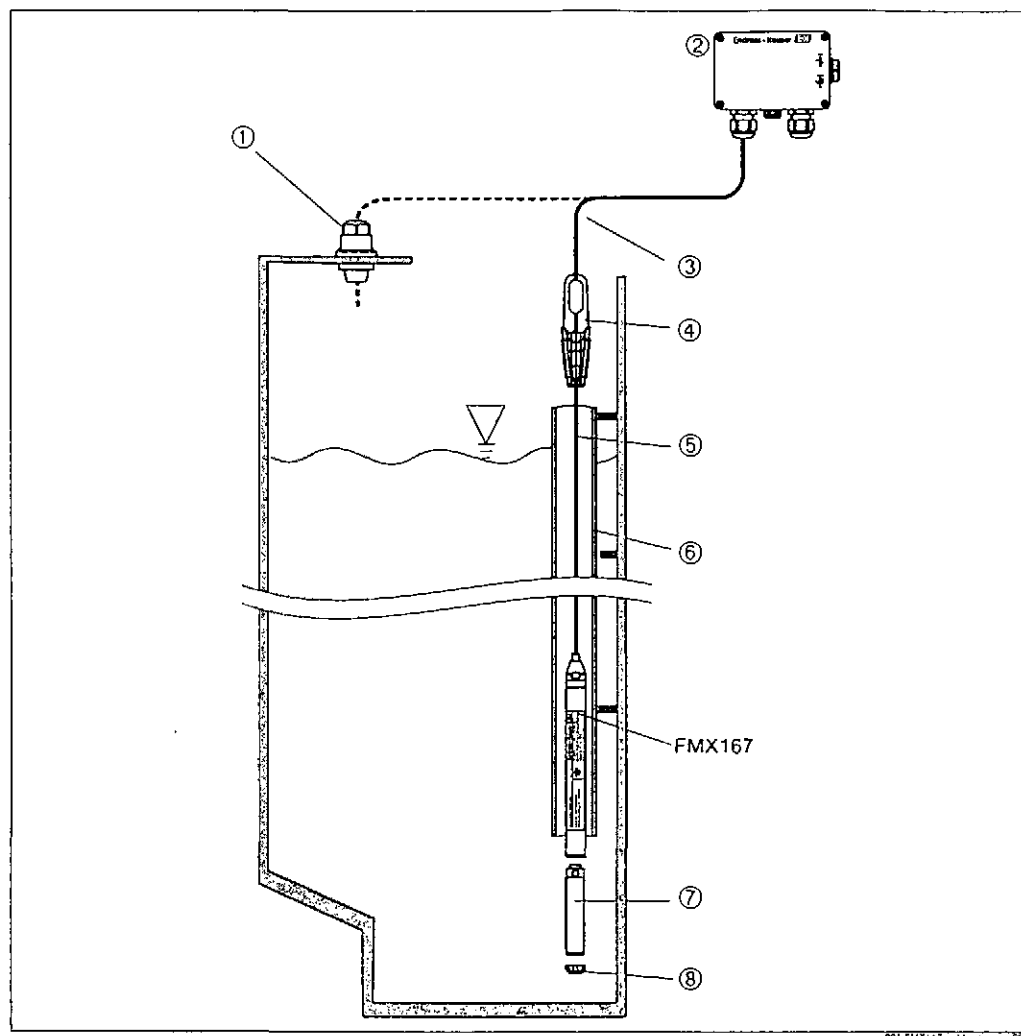


Fig. 4: Installation examples  
For accessories see Page 18, chapter 7.

- 1 Extension cable mounting screw can be ordered via order code or as an accessory
- 2 Terminal housing can be ordered via order code or as an accessory
- 3 Extension cable bending radius > 120 mm (4.72 in)
- 4 Mounting clamp can be ordered via order code or as an accessory
- 5 Extension cable up to 300 m (384 ft)
- 6 Guide tube
- 7 Additional weight can be ordered as an accessory
- 8 Protection cap



#### Note!

- A sideways movement of the level probe can lead to measuring errors. Therefore install the probe at a point free from flow and turbulence, or use a guide tube. The internal diameter of the guide tube should be at least 1 mm (0.04 in) bigger than the outer diameter of the selected FMX167.
- The cable must end in a dry room or in a proper terminal box. The terminal box from Endress+Hauser provides optimum humidity and climatic protection and is suitable for outdoor installation.
- Protective cap: to avoid mechanical damage to the measuring cell, the device is provided with a protective cap, which should not be removed during transport and installation.
- After shortening of the cable, the filter must be re-fitted on the pressure compensation hose.

### 3.2.1 Dimensions

→ For dimensions, please refer to the Technical Information for Waterpilot TI351P, "Mechanical construction" section (→ see also: [www.endress.com](http://www.endress.com) → Download).

## 3.3 Installation instructions

### 3.3.1 Installing Waterpilot with a mounting clamp

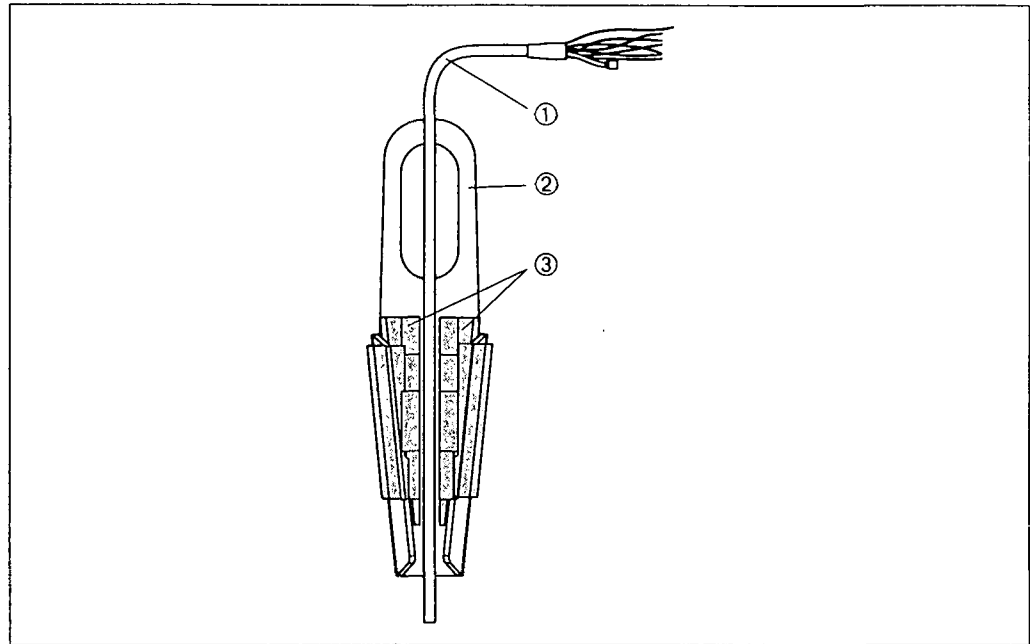


Fig. 5: Installing Waterpilot FMX167 with a mounting clamp

- 1 Extension cable
- 2 Mounting clamp
- 3 Clamping jaws

#### How to mount the mounting clamp:

1. Mount the mounting clamp (Pos. 2). When selecting the type of fixing, note the weight of the extension cable (Pos. 1) and the device.
2. Raise clamping jaws (Pos. 3). Place extension cable (Pos. 1) acc. to Figure 5 between clamping jaws.
3. Hold extension cable (Pos. 1) tight and push clamping jaws (Pos. 3) back down. Fix clamping jaws by tapping lightly.

### 3.3.2 Installing Waterpilot with cable mounting screw

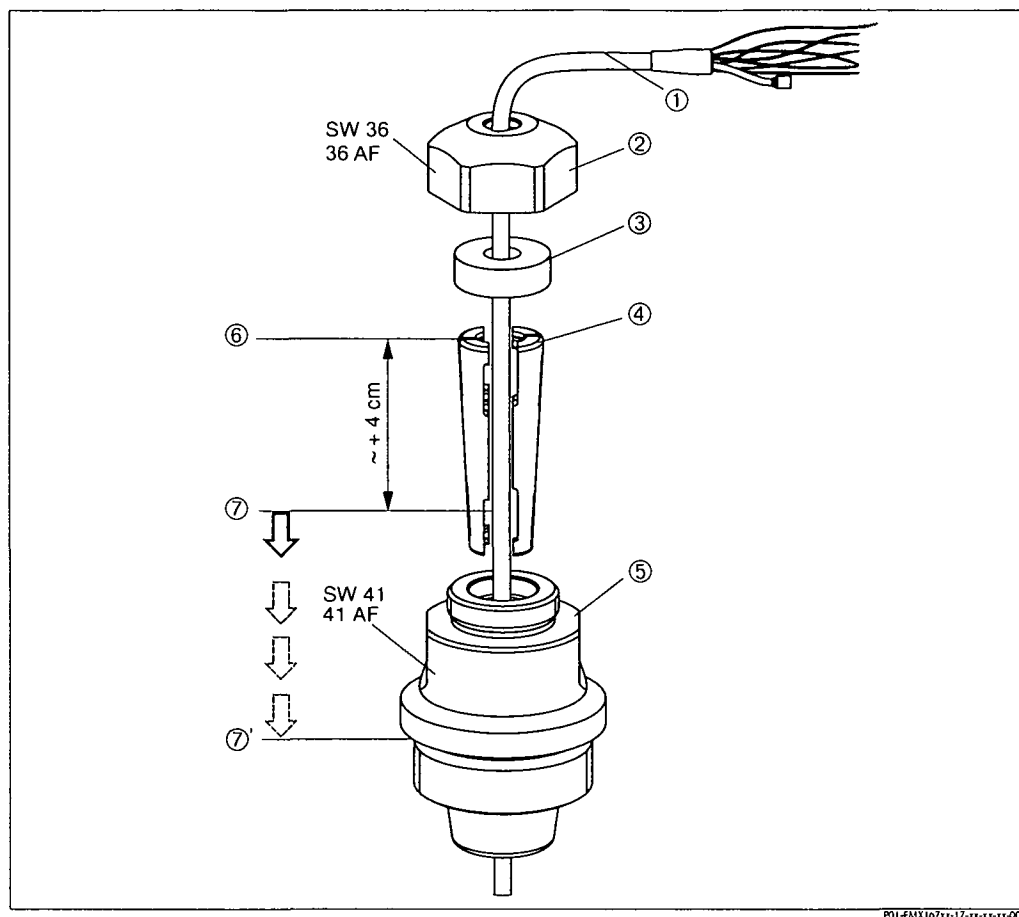


Fig. 6: Installing the Waterpilot FMX167 with cable mounting screw, here depicted with G 1 1/2 thread

- 1 Extension cable
- 2 Mounting screw cap nut
- 3 Sealing ring
- 4 Clamping sleeve
- 5 Mounting screw adapter
- 6 Top edge of clamping sleeve
- 7 required length of extension cable and FMX167 probe before assembly
- 7' after assembly Pos. 7 is located next to the mounting screw with  
G 1 1/2 thread: sealing surface of mounting screw adapter  
1 1/2 NPT thread run-out of mounting screw adapter



#### Note!

If you want to lower the level probe to a certain depth, place the top edge of the clamping sleeve 4 cm (1.57 in) higher than the required depth. Then push the extension cable and the clamping sleeve into the adapter as described in the following Section, Step 6.

#### How to mount the cable mounting screw with G 1 1/2 or NPT thread:

1. Mark required length of extension cable, refer to "Note" on this Page.
2. Insert probe through measuring opening and carefully lower on extension cable. Fix extension cable to prevent it from slipping.
3. Push adapter (Pos. 5) over extension cable and screw tightly in measuring opening.
4. Push sealing ring (Pos. 3) and cap (Pos. 2) from top onto cable. Press sealing ring into cap.
5. Place clamping sleeve (Pos. 4) around extension cable (Pos. 1) acc. to Figure 6.

6. Push extension cable and clamping sleeve (Pos. 4) into adapter (Pos. 5).
7. Push cap (Pos. 2) and sealing ring (Pos. 3) onto adapter (Pos. 5) and screw tightly to adapter.



Note!

Remove the cable mounting screw in the opposite sequence of operation to installation.

### 3.3.3 Mounting the terminal box

Mount the optional terminal box with four screws (M 4). → For dimensions of the terminal box, please refer to the Technical Information for Waterpilot TI351P, "Mechanical construction" section (→ see also: [www.endress.com](http://www.endress.com) → Download).

### 3.3.4 Mounting the temperature transmitter TMT181

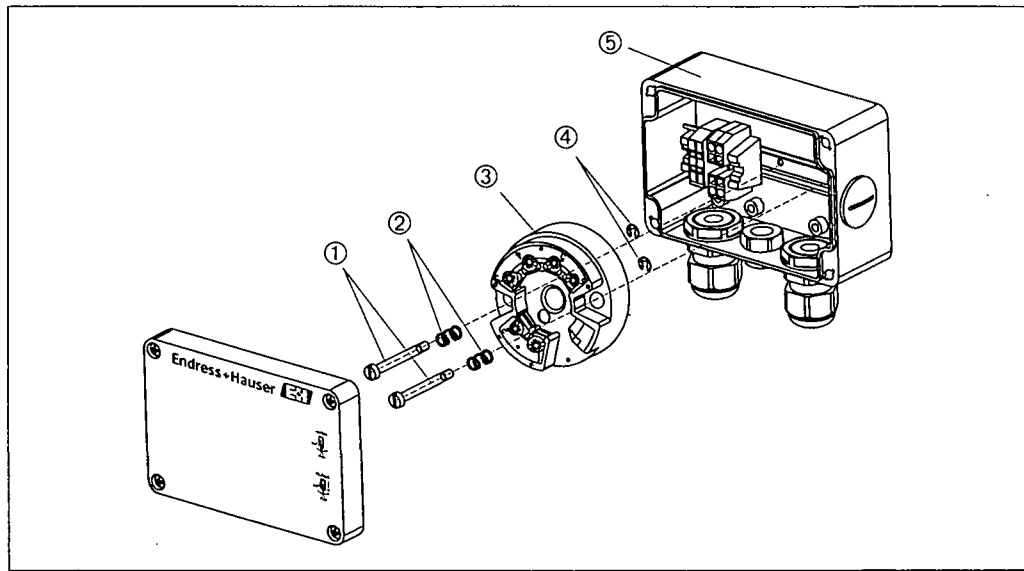


Fig. 7: Mounting the temperature transmitter, depicted here with terminal box  
Only open terminal box with a screwdriver.

- 1 Mounting screws
- 2 Mounting springs
- 3 Temperature transmitter TMT181
- 4 Circlips
- 5 Terminal box

#### How to mount the temperature transmitter:

1. Insert the mounting screws (Pos. 1) with the mounting springs (Pos. 2) through the boring of the temperature transmitter (Pos. 3).
2. Fix the mounting screws with the circlips (Pos. 4).  
The circlips, mounting screws and springs are contained in the scope of supply of the temperature transmitter.
3. Screw the temperature transmitter tightly in the field housing. (thread taper max. 6 mm (0.23 in))



Warning!

To prevent damage to the temperature transmitter, do not tighten the mounting screw too tightly.

### 3.4 Checking the installation

Check that all screws are seated firmly.

## 4 Wiring

### 4.1 Connecting the device



Note!

When using the measuring device in hazardous areas, installation must comply with the corresponding national standards and regulations and the Safety Instructions (XAs) or Installation or Control Drawings (ZDs).

- The supply voltage must match the supply voltage on the nameplate. (→ See also Page 6 ff, section 2.1.1 and 2.1.2.)
- Switch off supply voltage before you connect the device.
- The cable must end in a dry room or in a proper terminal box. The terminal box with GORE-TEX® filter, IP 66/IP 67 from Endress+Hauser is suitable for outdoor installation.
- Connect device acc. to the following figures. A polarity protection is integrated in the Waterpilot FMX167 and the temperature transmitter TMT181. Changing the polarities will not destroy the devices.

Waterpilot FMX167, Standard

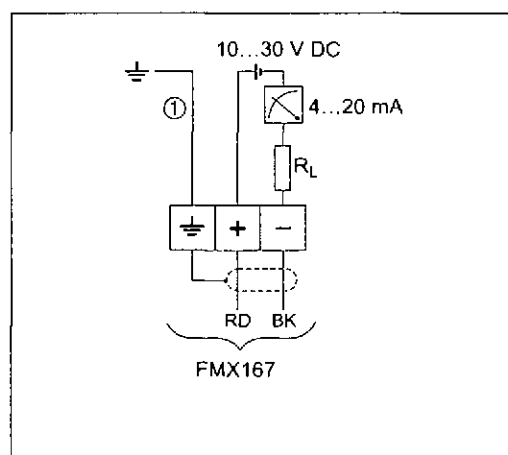


Fig. 8: FMX167 electrical connection, versions "7" or "3" for Feature 70 "Additional options" in the order code.

1 Not for FMX167 with outer diameter = 29 mm (1.15 in)

Waterpilot FMX167 with Pt 100

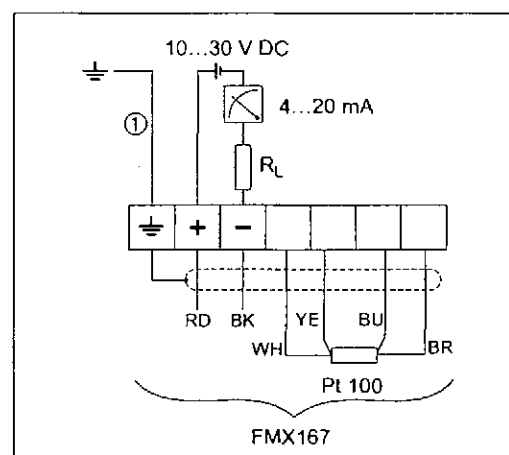


Fig. 9: FMX167 electrical connection with Pt 100, versions "1" or "4" for Feature 70 "Additional options" in the order code.

1 Not for FMX167 with outer diameter = 29 mm (1.15 in)

Wire colors: RD = red, BK = black, WH = white, YE = yellow, BU = blue, BR = brown

Waterpilot FMX167 with Pt 100 and temperature transmitter TMT181 (4...20 mA)

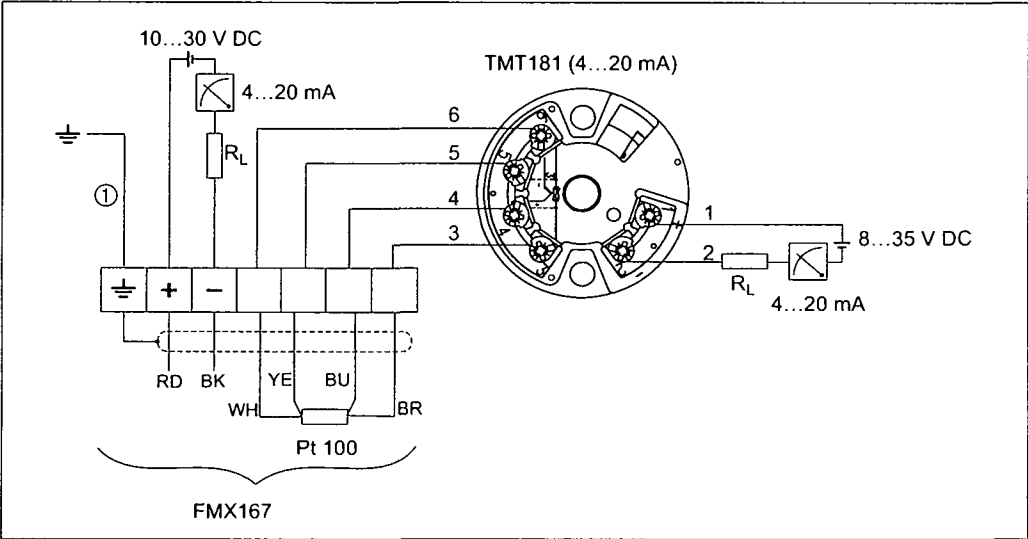


Fig. 10: FMX167 with Pt 100 and TMT181 temperature transmitter (4...20 mA), version "S" for Feature 70 in the order code

1 Not for FMX167 with outer diameter = 29 mm (1.15 in)

Wire colours: RD = red, BK = black, WH = white, YE = yellow, BU = blue, BR = brown

4.1.1 Supply voltage

Certificate	Supply voltage		
	FMX167	FMX167 + Pt 100	Temperature transmitter TMT181
Standard	10...30 V DC	10...30 V DC	8...35 V DC

4.1.2 Cable specification

- FMX167 with optional Pt 100
  - Commercially available installation cable
  - Terminals in terminal box FMX 167: 0.08...2.5 mm<sup>2</sup>
- Temperature transmitter TMT181 (optional)
  - Commercially available installation cable
  - Terminals in terminal box FMX 167: 0.08...2.5 mm<sup>2</sup>
  - Transmitter terminals: max. 1.75 mm<sup>2</sup>



Note!  
For versions with outer diameter = 22 mm (0.87 in) and 42 mm (1.66 in) the extension cables are shielded. In the following cases Endress+Hauser recommends use of a shielded cable for the cable extension:

- for large distances between extension cable end and display and/or evaluation unit,
- for large distances between extension cable end and temperature transmitter
- for directly connecting Pt 100 signals to the display and/or evaluation unit.



### 4.1.3 Power consumption/current drain

	FMX167	FMX167 + Pt 100	Temperature transmitter TMT181
Power consumption	$\leq 0.675 \text{ W at } 30 \text{ V DC}$	$\leq 0.675 \text{ W at } 30 \text{ V DC}$	$\leq 0.875 \text{ W at } 35 \text{ V DC}$
Current drain	max. $\leq 22.5 \text{ mA}$ min. $\geq 3.5 \text{ mA}$	max. $\leq 22.5 \text{ mA}$ min. $\geq 3.5 \text{ mA}$ Pt 100: $\leq 0.6 \text{ mA}$	max. $\leq 25 \text{ mA}$ min. $\geq 3.5 \text{ mA}$

### 4.1.4 Load

The maximum load resistance is dependent on the supply voltage ( $U_b$ ) and must be determined for every current loop separately. Refer to the equations and diagrams for "FMX 167" and "Temperature transmitter".

The total resistance resulting from the resistances of the connected devices, the connecting cable and if necessary, the resistor of the extension cable may not exceed the load resistance.

#### FMX167

$$R_{\text{tot}} \leq \frac{U_b - 10 \text{ V}}{0.0225 \text{ A}} - 2 \cdot 0.09 \frac{\Omega}{\text{m}} \cdot l - R_{\text{add}}$$

PO1-FMX167/11-05-12-11-11-001

#### Temperature transmitter

$$R_{\text{tot}} \leq \frac{U_b - 8 \text{ V}}{0.025 \text{ A}} - R_{\text{add}}$$

PO1-FMX167/11-05-12-11-11-001

$R_{\text{tot}}$  = Max. load resistance [ $\Omega$ ]

$R_{\text{add}}$  = additional resistances, e.g. resistance of evaluating device and/or the display instrument, line resistance [ $\Omega$ ]

$U_b$  = Supply voltage [V]

$l$  = Simple length of extension cable [m] (cable resistance per wire  $\leq 0.09 \Omega/\text{m}$ )

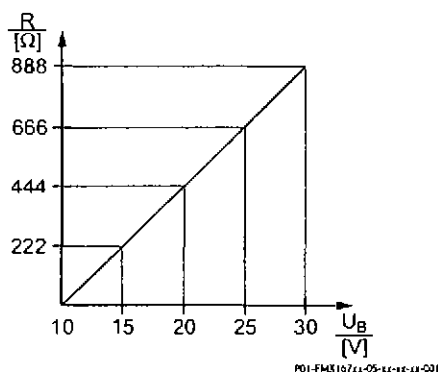


Fig. 11: Load chart FMX167 for estimating load resistance. Subtract the additional resistances, e.g. resistance of extension cable, from the calculated value as shown in the equation.

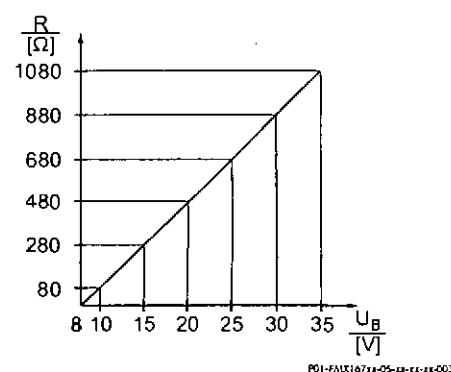


Fig. 12: Load chart temperature transmitter for estimating load resistance. Subtract the additional resistances from the calculated value as shown in the equation.

## 4.2 Wiring up the measuring unit

### 4.2.1 Overvoltage protection



Note!

- In order to protect the Waterpilot FMX167 and the temperature transmitter TMT181 from large transients, Endress+Hauser recommends the installation of an overvoltage protector upstream and downstream of the display and/or evaluation device as shown in the figure.
- The Waterpilot FMX 167 has an integrated overvoltage protection to EN 61000 of  $\leq 1.2$  kV as standard.

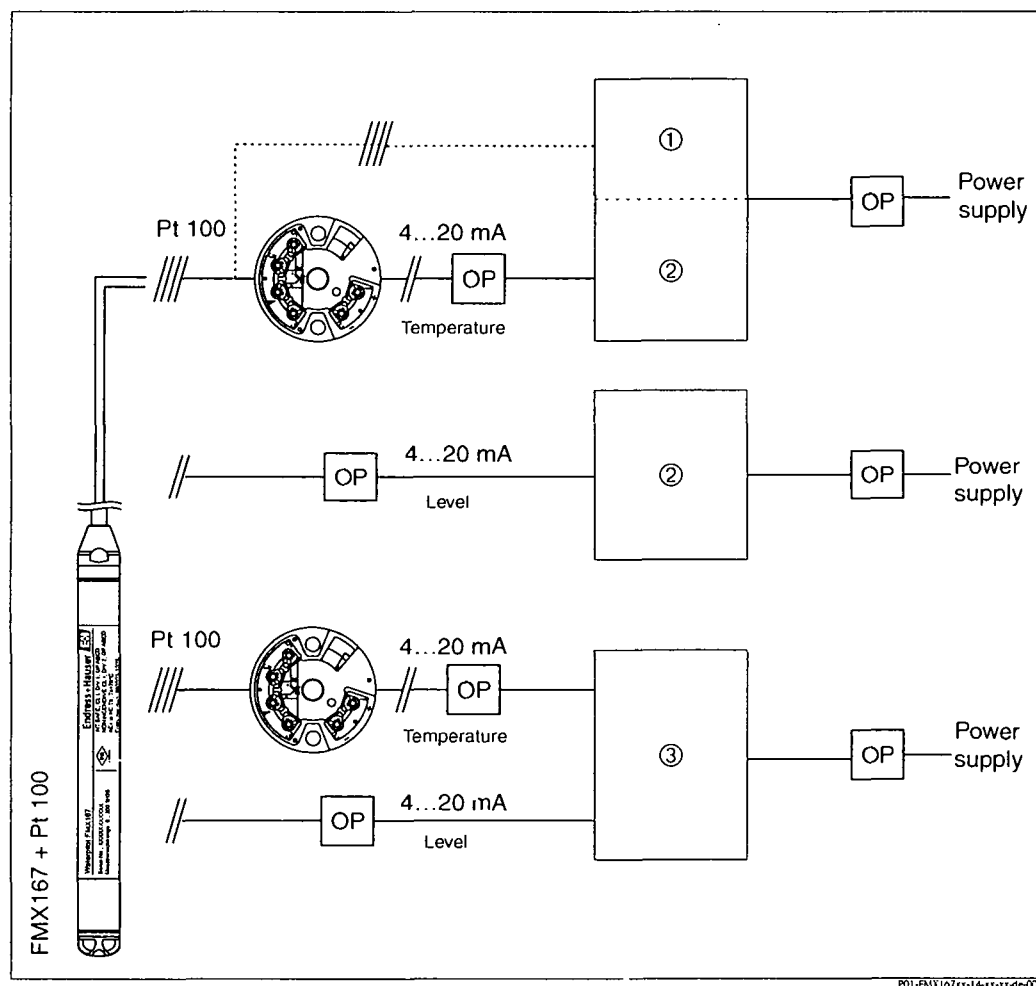


Fig. 13: Wiring up the measuring unit

- 1 Power supply, display and evaluation unit with one input for Pt 100
  - 2 Power supply, display and evaluation unit with one input for 4...20 mA
  - 3 Power supply, display and evaluation unit with two inputs for 4...20 mA
- OP Overvoltage protection e.g. HAW from Endress+Hauser

## 4.3 Checking the wiring

Perform the following checks after completing electrical installation of the device:

- Does the supply voltage match the specifications on the nameplate?
- Is the device connected as per section 4.1?
- Are all screws firmly tightened?
- Optional terminal box: are the cable glands tight?

## 5 Operation



### Note!

Endress+Hauser offers extensive measuring point solutions with display and/or evaluation units for the Waterpilot FMX167 and the temperature transmitter TMT181. For more information, please contact your nearest Endress+Hauser Service Organisation. For contact addresses, please go to [www.endress.com/worldwide](http://www.endress.com/worldwide).

## 6 Maintenance

No special maintenance work is required for the Waterpilot FMX167 or for the optional temperature transmitter TMT181.

### 6.1 Exterior cleaning

Please note the following points when cleaning the exterior of the device:

- Do not use a cleaning agent that is aggressive to the housing surface or the seal.
- Waterpilot FMX167: avoid any mechanical damage to the membrane or the extension cable.

## 7 Accessories

There are a number of accessories available for the Waterpilot FMX167. You can order them separately from Endress+Hauser.

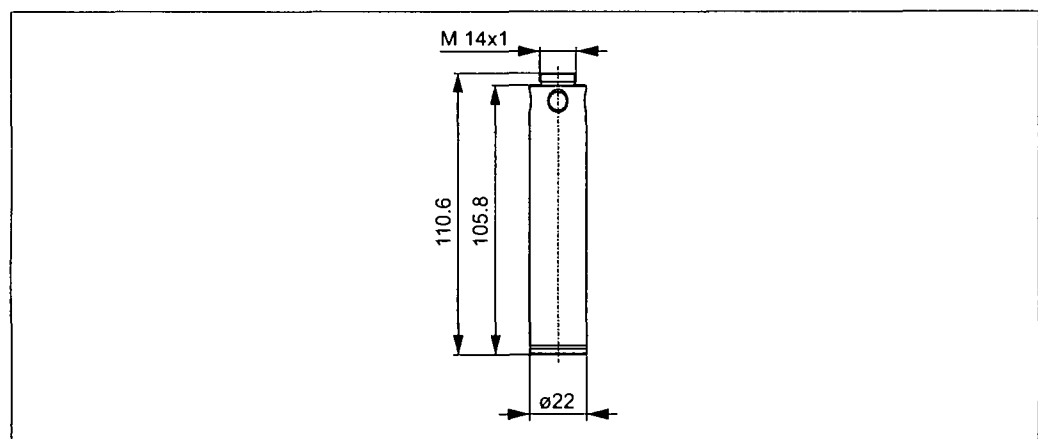
### Mounting clamp

- Endress+Hauser offers a mounting clamp for simple FMX167 mounting. → See also Page 10, section 3.3.1.
- Material: 1.4404 (AISI 316L) and glass fiber reinforced PA (polyamide)
- Order number: 52006151

### Terminal box

- Terminal box IP 66/IP 67 with GORE-TEX® filter incl. 3 mounted terminals.  
The terminal box is also suitable for installing a temperature transmitter (Order No. 52008794) or for four additional terminals (Order No. 52008938). → See also Page 12, section 3.3.4.
- Order number: 52006152

**Additional weight for FMX167 with outer diameter = 22 mm (0.87 in) and outer diameter = 29 mm (1.15 in)**



P01-FMX167112-06-11-11-014

- To prevent sideways movement leading to measuring errors or to ensure that the device lowers into a guide tube, Endress+Hauser provides additional weights.  
You can screw several weights together. The weights are then attached directly to the FMX167.  
For FMX167 with outer diameter = 29 mm (1.15 in), a maximum of 5 weights may be screwed on to FMX167.
- Material: 1.4435 (AISI 316L)
- Weight: 300 g
- Order number: 52006153

### Temperature transmitter TMT181 (4...20 mA)

- Temperature transmitter, 2-wire, preset for measuring range from  $-20...+80^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $-4...+176^{\circ}\text{F}$ ).  
This setting offers an easily displayable temperature range of 100 K. Note that the Pt 100 resistance thermometer is designed for a temperature range of  $-10...+70^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $+14...+158^{\circ}\text{F}$ ).  
→ See also Page 12, section 3.3.4.
- Order number: 52008794

**Cabel mounting screw**

- Endress+Hauser offers extension cable mounting screws to simplify the installation of the FMX167 and to close the measuring open. → See also Page 11, section 3.3.2.
- Material: 1.4301 (AISI 304)
- Order number for extension cable mounting screw with G 1 1/2 A thread: 52008264
- Order number for extension cable mounting screw with 1 1/2 NPT thread: 52009311

**Terminals**

- Four terminals in strip for FMX167 terminal box, suitable for wire cross-section of 0.08...2.5 mm<sup>2</sup>
- Order number: 52008938

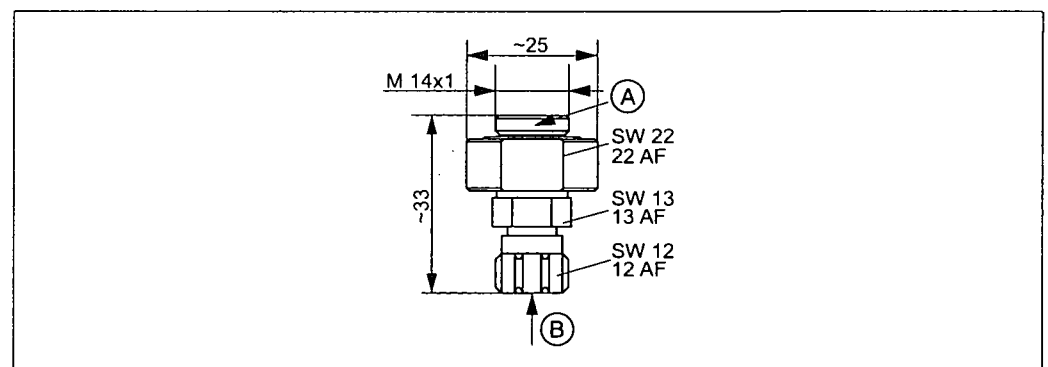
**Test adapter for FMX167 with outer diameter = 22 mm (0.87 in) and outer diameter = 29 mm (1.15 in)**

Abb. 14: Test adapter

A Connection suitable for level probe FMX167

B Connection compressed air hose, internal diameter, quick hose gland 4 mm (0.157 in)

- Endress+Hauser offers a test adapter to simplify the function test of level probes.
- Note the maximum pressure for the compressed air hose and the maximum level probe overload. (→ For the maximum level probe overload refer to Technical Information for Waterpilot TI351P or Internet: [www.endress.com](http://www.endress.com) → Download)
- The maximum pressure for the supplied quick hose gland is 10 bar (145 psi).
- Adapter material: 1.4301 (AISI 304)
- Quick hose gland material: Anodized aluminum
- Adapter weight: 39 g
- Order number: 52011868

## 8 Trouble-shooting

### 8.1 Faults on Waterpilot FMX167 and Waterpilot FMX167 with optional Pt 100

Error description	Cause	Action
No measuring signal	Connection of 4...20 mA line incorrect	Connect device acc. to section 4.1, Page 13.
	No supply voltage over 4...20 mA line	Check current loop.
	Supply voltage too low (min. 10 V DC)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Check supply voltage.</li> <li>– Total resistance greater than max. load resistance, refer to section 4.1, Page 15.</li> </ul>
	Waterpilot defective	Replace Waterpilot.
Temperature measuring value inaccurate/incorrect (only with Waterpilot FMX167 with Pt 100)	Pt 100 connected to 2-wire circuit, line resistance not compensated	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Compensate line resistance.</li> <li>– Connect Pt 100 as 3-wire or 4-wire circuit.</li> </ul>

### 8.2 Faults of temperature transmitter TMT181

Error description	Cause	Action
No measuring signal	Connection of 4...20 mA line incorrect	Connect device acc. to section 4.1, Page 13.
	No supply voltage over 4...20 mA line	Check current loop.
	Supply voltage too low (min. 8 V DC)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Check supply voltage.</li> <li>– Total resistance greater than max. load resistance, refer to section 4.1, Page 13.</li> </ul>
Error current $\leq 3,6$ mA or $\geq 21$ mA	Connection of Pt 100 incorrect	Connect device acc. to section 4.1, Page 13.
	Connection of 4...20 mA line incorrect	Connect device acc. to section 4.1, Page 13.
	Pt 100 resistance thermometer defective	Replace Waterpilot FMX167.
	Temperature transmitter defective	Replace temperature transmitter.
Measuring value inaccurate/incorrect	Pt 100 connected in 2-wire circuit, line resistance not compensated	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Compensate line resistance.</li> <li>– Connect Pt 100 as 3-wire or 4-wire circuit.</li> </ul>

## 8.3 Spare Parts



Note!

You can order spare parts directly from your nearest Endress+Hauser Service Organisation.

### **Membrane protective cap**

for FMX167 with outer diameter = 22 mm (0.87 in) and outer diameter = 29 mm (1.15 in)

- 5 pieces in set
- Order No.: 52008999

for FMX167 with outer diameter = 42 mm (1.66 in)

- Order No.: 917755-0000

### **Pressure compensation set**

- Set, comprising Teflon filter (10 pieces) and sleeve (5 pieces) for extension cable
- Order No.: 52005578

## 9 Technical Data

For technical data, please refer to the Technical Information for Waterpilot TI351P (→ see also: [www.endress.com](http://www.endress.com) → Download).

## Index

<b>A</b>	
Accessories .....	18
<b>C</b>	
Cable specification .....	14
Current drain .....	15
<b>E</b>	
Electrical connection .....	13
<b>I</b>	
Incoming acceptance .....	8
<b>L</b>	
Load .....	15
<b>M</b>	
Membranschutzkappe .....	21
Mounting cable mounting screw .....	11
Mounting clamp .....	10
Mounting Temperature transmitter TMT181 .....	12
Mounting terminal box .....	12
<b>N</b>	
Nameplate Temperature transmitter TMT181 .....	7
Nameplate Waterpilot FMX167 .....	6
<b>O</b>	
Overvoltage protection .....	16
<b>P</b>	
Power consumption .....	15
Pressure compensation set .....	21
<b>S</b>	
Storage .....	8
Supply voltage .....	14



## Declaration of Hazardous Material and De-Contamination

### Erklärung zur Kontamination und Reinigung

**RA No.**        

Please reference the Return Authorization Number (RA#), obtained from Endress+Hauser, on all paperwork and mark the RA# clearly on the outside of the box. If this procedure is not followed, it may result in the refusal of the package at our facility.  
 Bitte geben Sie die von E+H mitgeteilte Rücklieferungsnummer (RA#) auf allen Lieferpapieren an und vermerken Sie diese auch außen auf der Verpackung. Nichtbeachtung dieser Anweisung führt zur Ablehnung ihrer Lieferung.

Because of legal regulations and for the safety of our employees and operating equipment, we need the "Declaration of Hazardous Material and De-Contamination", with your signature, before your order can be handled. Please make absolutely sure to attach it to the outside of the packaging.

Aufgrund der gesetzlichen Vorschriften und zum Schutz unserer Mitarbeiter und Betriebseinrichtungen, benötigen wir die unterschriebene "Erklärung zur Kontamination und Reinigung", bevor Ihr Auftrag bearbeitet werden kann. Bringen Sie diese unbedingt außen an der Verpackung an.

**Type of instrument / sensor**

Geräte-/Sensortyp

**Serial number**

Seriennummer

☐ **Used as SIL device in a Safety Instrumented System / Einsatz als SIL Gerät in Schutzeinrichtungen**
**Process data / Prozessdaten**

Temperature / Temperatur \_\_\_\_\_ [°F] \_\_\_\_\_ [°C]







Pressure / Druck \_\_\_\_\_ [psi] \_\_\_\_\_ [Pa]

Conductivity / Leitfähigkeit \_\_\_\_\_ [µS/cm]

Viscosity / Viskosität \_\_\_\_\_ [cp] \_\_\_\_\_ [mm²/s]

**Medium and warnings**

Warnhinweise zum Medium

								
	Medium / concentration Medium / Konzentration	Identification CAS No.	flammable entzündlich	toxic giftig	corrosive ätzend	harmful/ irritant gesundheitsschädlich/ reizend	other * sonstiges *	harmless unbedenklich
Process medium								
Medium in Prozess								
Medium for process cleaning								
Medium zur Prozessreinigung								
Returned part cleaned with								
Medium zur Endreinigung								

\* explosive; oxidising; dangerous for the environment; biological risk; radioactive

\* explosiv; brandfördernd; umweltgefährlich; biogefährlich; radioaktiv

Please tick should one of the above be applicable, include safety data sheet and, if necessary, special handling instructions.

Zutreffendes ankreuzen; trifft einer der Warnhinweise zu, Sicherheitsdatenblatt und ggf. spezielle Handhabungsvorschriften beilegen.

**Description of failure / Fehlerbeschreibung**
**Company data / Angaben zum Absender**

Company / Firma _____	Phone number of contact person / Telefon-Nr. Ansprechpartner: _____
Address / Adresse _____	Fax / E-Mail _____
Your order No. / Ihre Auftragsnr. _____	

"We hereby certify that this declaration is filled out truthfully and completely to the best of our knowledge. We further certify that the returned parts have been carefully cleaned. To the best of our knowledge they are free of any residues in dangerous quantities."

"Wir bestätigen, die vorliegende Erklärung nach unserem besten Wissen wahrheitsgetreu und vollständig ausgefüllt zu haben. Wir bestätigen weiter, dass die zurückgesandten Teile sorgfältig gereinigt wurden und nach unserem besten Wissen frei von Rückständen in gefährlichen Mengen sind."

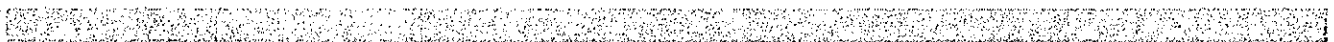
PISFKontin XIV

(place, date / Ort, Datum)

Name, dept. / Abt. (please print / bitte Druckschrift)

Signature / Unterschrift

[www.endress.com/worldwide](http://www.endress.com/worldwide)



**Endress+Hauser**   
People for Process Automation

BA231P/00/en/02.08

71003557

CCS/FM+SGML6.0

Q-Pulse Id TMS965

Active 10/12/2014



71003557

Page 178 of 258

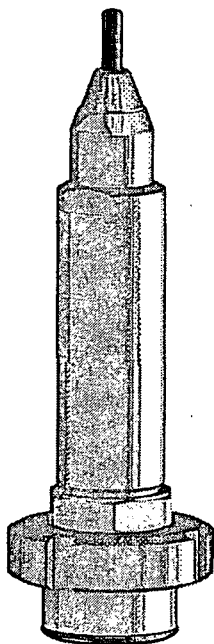


OrderNo: 1423684\_3

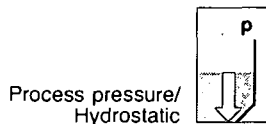
# Operating Instructions

## VEGABAR 74

### 4 ... 20 mA/HART



WA000185



## Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>About this document</b>	
1.1	Function	5
1.2	Target group	5
1.3	Symbolism used	5
<b>2</b>	<b>For your safety</b>	
2.1	Authorised personnel	6
2.2	Appropriate use	6
2.3	Warning about misuse	6
2.4	General safety instructions	6
2.5	Safety approval markings and safety tips	7
2.6	CE conformity	7
2.7	Fulfilling NAMUR recommendations	7
2.8	Safety instructions for Ex areas	8
2.9	Environmental instructions	8
<b>3</b>	<b>Product description</b>	
3.1	Configuration	9
3.2	Principle of operation	10
3.3	Operation	10
3.4	Packaging, transport and storage	11
<b>4</b>	<b>Mounting</b>	
4.1	General instructions	12
4.2	Mounting steps	13
<b>5</b>	<b>Connecting to power supply</b>	
5.1	Preparing the connection	14
5.2	Connection procedure	16
5.3	Wiring plan	17
<b>6</b>	<b>Set up</b>	
6.1	Setup steps without VEGADIS 12	19
6.2	Setup steps with VEGADIS 12	19
<b>7</b>	<b>Setup with PACTware™</b>	
7.1	Connect the PC with VEGACONNECT 3	22
7.2	Connect the PC with VEGACONNECT 4	23
7.3	Parameter adjustment with PACTware™	24
7.4	Parameter adjustment with AMST™ and PDM	24
7.5	Saving the parameter adjustment data	24

<b>8 Maintenance and fault rectification</b>	
8.1 Maintenance	25
8.2 Fault clearance	25
8.3 Instrument repair	26
<b>9 Dismounting</b>	
9.1 Dismounting steps	27
9.2 Disposal	27
<b>10 Supplement</b>	
10.1 Technical data	28
10.2 Dimensions	35
10.3 Industrial property rights	41
10.4 Trademark	41

## Supplementary documentation



### Information:

Depending on the ordered version, supplementary documentation belongs to the scope of delivery. You find this documentation in chapter "*Product description*".

## Instructions manuals for accessories and replacement parts



### Tip:

To ensure reliable setup and operation of your VEGABAR 74, we offer accessories and replacement parts. The associated documents are:

- Supplementary instructions manual 32036 "*Welded socket and seals*"
- Operating instructions manual 32798 "*Breather housing VEGABOX 02*"
- Operating instructions manual 20591 "*External indicating and adjustment unit VEGADIS 12*"

## 1 About this document

### 1.1 Function

This operating instructions manual provides all the information you need for mounting, connection and setup as well as important instructions for maintenance and fault rectification. Please read this information before putting the instrument into operation and keep this manual accessible in the immediate vicinity of the device.

### 1.2 Target group

This operating instructions manual is directed to trained personnel. The contents of this manual should be made available to these personnel and put into practice by them.

### 1.3 Symbolism used



#### Information, tip, note

This symbol indicates helpful additional information.



**Caution:** If this warning is ignored, faults or malfunctions can result.

**Warning:** If this warning is ignored, injury to persons and/or serious damage to the instrument can result.

**Danger:** If this warning is ignored, serious injury to persons and/or destruction of the instrument can result.



#### Ex applications

This symbol indicates special instructions for Ex applications.



#### List

The dot set in front indicates a list with no implied sequence.



#### Action

This arrow indicates a single action.



#### Sequence

Numbers set in front indicate successive steps in a procedure.



## 2 For your safety

### 2.1 Authorised personnel

All operations described in this operating instructions manual must be carried out only by trained specialist personnel authorised by the operator.

During work on and with the device the required personal protection equipment must always be worn.

### 2.2 Appropriate use

VEGABAR 74 is a pressure transmitter for measurement of gauge pressure, absolute pressure and vacuum.

You can find detailed information on the application range in chapter "*Product description*".

Operational reliability is ensured only if the instrument is properly used according to the specifications in the operating instructions manual as well as possible supplementary instructions.

Due to safety and warranty reasons, any invasive work on the device beyond that described in the operating instructions manual may be carried out only by personnel authorised by the manufacturer. Arbitrary conversions or modifications are explicitly forbidden.

### 2.3 Warning about misuse

Inappropriate or incorrect use of the instrument can give rise to application-specific hazards, e.g. vessel overfill or damage to system components through incorrect mounting or adjustment.

### 2.4 General safety instructions

This is a high-tech instrument requiring the strict observance of standard regulations and guidelines. The user must take note of the safety instructions in this operating instructions manual, the country-specific installation standards as well as all prevailing safety regulations and accident prevention rules.

The instrument must only be operated in a technically flawless and reliable condition. The operator is responsible for trouble-free operation of the instrument

During the entire duration of use, the user is obliged to determine the compliance of the required occupational safety measures with the current valid rules and regulations and also take note of new regulations.

## 2.5 Safety approval markings and safety tips

The safety approval markings and safety tips on the device must be observed.

## 2.6 CE conformity

VEGABAR 74 is in CE conformity with EMC (89/336/EV fulfils NAMUR recommendation NE 21 and is in CE conformity with LVD (73/23/EWG).

Conformity has been judged according to the following standards:

- EMC:
  - Emission EN 61326: 2004 (class B)
  - Susceptibility EN 61326: 2004 including supplement A
- LVD: EN 61010-1: 2001

VEGABAR 74 is not subject to the pressure device guideline.<sup>1)</sup>

## 2.7 Fulfilling NAMUR recommendations

VEGABAR 74 fulfils the following NAMUR recommendations:

- NE 21 (interference resistance and emitted interference)
- NE 43 (signal level for failure information)
- NE 53 (compatibility sensor and indicating/adjustment components)

VEGA instruments are generally upward and downward compatible:

- Sensor software to DTM VEGABAR 74 HART
- DTM VEGABAR 74 for adjustment software PACTware™

The parameter adjustment of the basic sensor functions is independent of the software version. The range of available functions depends on the respective software version of the individual components.

The software version of VEGABAR 74 HART can be read out via PACTware™.

<sup>1)</sup> Due to the flush diaphragm, no own pressure compartment is formed.





You can view all software histories on our website [www.vega.com](http://www.vega.com). Make use of this advantage and get registered for update information via e-mail.

## 2.8 Safety instructions for Ex areas

Please note the Ex-specific safety information for installation and operation in Ex areas. These safety instructions are part of the operating instructions manual and come with the Ex-approved instruments.

## 2.9 Environmental instructions

Protection of the environment is one of our most important duties. That is why we have introduced an environment management system with the goal of continuously improving company environmental protection. The environment management system is certified according to DIN EN ISO 14001.

Please help us fulfil this obligation by observing the environmental instructions in this manual:

- Chapter "*Packaging, transport and storage*"
- Chapter "*Disposal*"

### 3 Product description

#### 3.1 Configuration

##### Scope of delivery

The scope of delivery encompasses:

- VEGABAR 74 pressure transmitter
- Documentation
  - this operating instructions manual
  - Test certificate for pressure transmitters
  - Ex-specific "Safety instructions" (with Ex-versions)
  - if necessary, further certificates

##### Components

VEGABAR 74 consists of the following components:

- Process fitting with measuring cell
- Housing with electronics
- Connection cable (direct cable outlet)

The components are available in different versions.

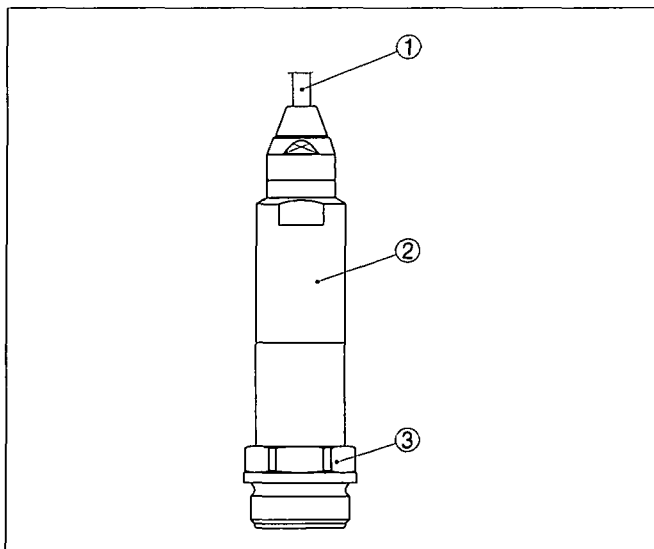


Fig. 1: Example of a VEGABAR 74 with process fitting G1½ A

- 1 Connection cable
- 2 Housing with electronics
- 3 Process fitting with measuring cell



### 3.2 Principle of operation

#### Area of application

VEGABAR 74 is a pressure transmitter for use in the paper, food processing and pharmaceutical industry. Thanks to the high protection class IP 68/IP 69K it is particularly suitable for use in humid environment. Depending on the version, it is used for level, gauge pressure, absolute pressure or vacuum measurements. Measured products are gases, vapours and liquids, also with abrasive contents.

#### Functional principle

The sensor element is the CERTEC® measuring cell with flush, abrasion resistant ceramic diaphragm. The hydrostatic pressure of the medium or the process pressure causes a capacitance change in the measuring cell via the diaphragm. This change is converted into an appropriate output signal and outputted as measured value.

The CERTEC® measuring cell is also equipped with a temperature sensor. The temperature value can be processed via the signal output.

#### Supply

Two-wire electronics 4 ... 20 mA/HART for power supply and measured value transmission over the same cable.

The supply voltage range can differ depending on the instrument version.

The data for power supply are stated in chapter "*Technical data*" in the "*Supplement*".

### 3.3 Operation

VEGABAR 74 4 ... 20 mA/HART can be adjusted with different adjustment media:

- with external adjustment/indication VEGADIS 12
- an adjustment software according to FDT/DTM standard, e.g. PACTware™ and PC
- with a HART handheld

The kind of adjustment and the adjustment options depend on the selected adjustment component. The entered parameters are generally saved in the respective sensor, when adjusting with PACTware™ and PC optionally also in the PC.

### 3.4 Packaging, transport and storage

#### Packaging

Your instrument was protected by packaging during transport. Its capacity to handle normal loads during transport is assured by a test according to DIN EN 24180.

The packaging of standard instruments consists of environment-friendly, recyclable cardboard. For special versions, PE foam or PE foil is also used. Dispose of the packaging material via specialised recycling companies.

#### Transport

Transport must be carried out under consideration of the notes on the transport packaging. Nonobservance of these instructions can cause damage to the device.

#### Transport inspection

The delivery must be checked for completeness and possible transit damage immediately at receipt. Ascertained transit damage or concealed defects must be appropriately dealt with.

#### Storage

Up to the time of installation, the packages must be left closed and stored according to the orientation and storage markings on the outside.

Unless otherwise indicated, the packages must be stored only under the following conditions:

- Not in the open
- Dry and dust free
- Not exposed to corrosive media
- Protected against solar radiation
- Avoiding mechanical shock and vibration

#### Storage and transport temperature

- Storage and transport temperature see "*Supplement - Technical data - Ambient conditions*"
- Relative humidity 20 ... 85 %

## 4 Mounting

### 4.1 General instructions

#### Materials, wetted parts

Make sure that the wetted parts of VEGABAR 74, especially the seal and process fitting, are suitable for the existing process conditions such as pressure, temperature etc. as well as the chemical properties of the medium.

You can find the specifications in chapter "Technical data" in the "Supplement".

#### Temperature limits

Higher process temperatures often mean also higher ambient temperatures. Make sure that the upper temperature limits stated in chapter "Technical data" for the environment of the electronics housing and connection cable are not exceeded.

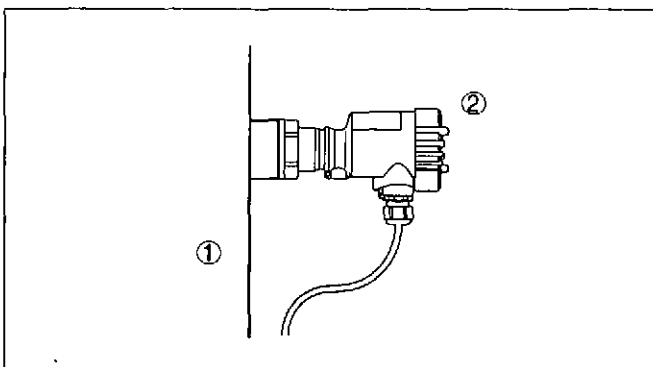


Fig. 2: Temperature ranges

- 1 Process temperature
- 2 Ambient temperature

#### Connection

- The connection cable has a capillary for atmospheric pressure compensation
- Lead the cable end into a dry space or into a suitable terminal housing.



#### Information:

VEGA recommends the breather housing VEGABOX 02 or the indication/adjustment VEGADIS 12. Both contain terminals and a ventilation filter for pressure compensation. For mounting outdoors, a suitable protective cover is available.

## 4.2 Mounting steps

### Sealing/Screwing in threaded versions

Seal the thread with teflon, hemp or a similar resistant seal material on the process fitting thread 1½ NPT.

→ Screw VEGABAR 74 into the welded socket. Tighten the hexagon on the process fitting with a suitable wrench. Wrench size, see chapter "*Dimensions*".

### Sealing/Screwing in flange versions

Seal the flange connections according to DIN/ANSI with a suitable, resistant seal and mount VEGABAR 74 with suitable screws.

### Sealing/Screwing in hygienic fittings

Use the seal suitable for the respective process fitting. You can find the components in the line of VEGA accessories in the supplementary instructions manual "*Welded socket and seals*".



## 5 Connecting to power supply

### 5.1 Preparing the connection

#### Note safety instructions

Always keep in mind the following safety instructions:

- Connect only in the complete absence of line voltage
- If overvoltage surges are expected, versions with integrated overvoltage arresters should be used or external overvoltage arresters should be installed



#### Tip:

We recommend the version of VEGABAR 74 with integrated overvoltage arrester or VEGA type ÜSB62-36G.X as external overvoltage arrester.

#### Take note of safety instructions for Ex applications



In hazardous areas you should take note of the appropriate regulations, conformity and type approval certificates of the sensors and power supply units.

#### Select power supply

Power supply and current signal are carried on the same two-wire cable. The voltage supply range can differ depending on the instrument version.

The data for power supply are stated in chapter "*Technical data*" in the "*Supplement*".

Provide a reliable separation of the supply circuit from the mains circuits according to DIN VDE 0106 part 101.

VEGA power supply units VEGATRENN 149AEx, VEGASTAB 690, VEGADIS 371 as well as all VEGAMETs meet this requirement. When using one of these instruments, protection class III is ensured for VEGABAR 74.

Bear in mind the following factors regarding supply voltage:

- Output voltage of the power supply unit can be lower under nominal load (with a sensor current of 20.5 mA or 22 mA in case of fault message)
- Influence of additional instruments in the circuit (see load values in chapter "*Technical data*")

#### Selecting connection cable

VEGABAR 74 is connected with standard two-wire cable without screen. An outer cable diameter of 5 ... 9 mm ensures the seal effect of the cable gland when connecting via VEGABOX 02 or VEGADIS 12. If electromagnetic interference is expected which is above the test values of EN 61326 for

industrial areas, screened cable should be used. For HART multidrop operation we recommend as standard practice the use of screened cable.

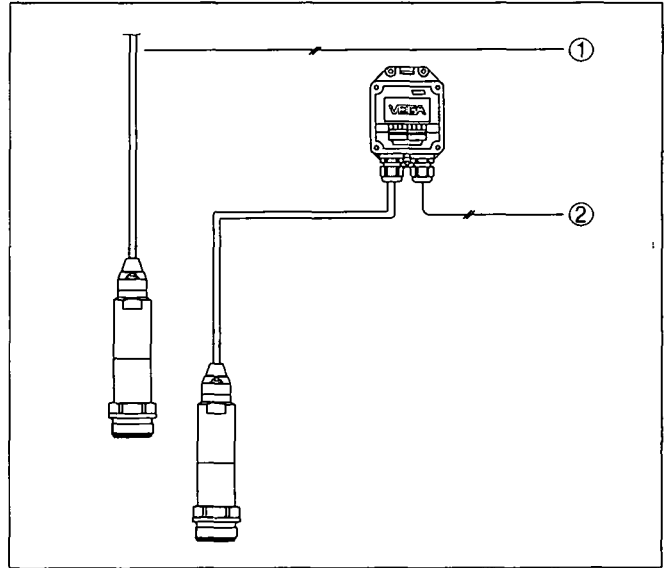


Fig. 3: Connection of VEGABAR 74

1 Direct connection

2 Connection via VEGABOX 02 or VEGADIS 12

#### Cable screening and grounding

If screened cable is necessary, connect the cable screen on both ends to ground potential. In the VEGABOX 02 or VEGADIS 12, the screen must be connected directly to the internal ground terminal. The ground terminal on the outside of the housing must be connected to the potential equalisation (low impedance).

If potential equalisation currents are expected, the connection on the processing side must be made via a ceramic capacitor (e.g. 1 nF, 1500 V). The low frequency potential equalisation currents are thus suppressed, but the protective effect against high frequency interference signals remains.

#### Select connection cable for Ex applications



Take note of the corresponding installation regulations for Ex applications. In particular, make sure that no potential equalisation currents flow over the cable screen. In case of grounding on both sides this can be achieved by the use of a capacitor or a separate potential equalisation.





## 5.2 Connection procedure

### Direct connection

Proceed as follows:

- 1 Wire the connection cable up to the connection compartment. The bending radius must be at least 25 mm.<sup>2)</sup>
- 2 Connect the wire ends to the screw terminals according to the wiring plan

### Via VEGABOX 01 or VEGADIS 12

Proceed as follows:

- 1 Snap connection housing onto the carrier rail or screw it to the mounting plate
  - 2 Loosen the cover screws and remove the cover
  - 3 Insert the cable through the cable entry into the connection housing housing
  - 4 Loosen the screws with a screwdriver
  - 5 Insert the wire ends into the open terminals according to the wiring plan
  - 6 Tighten the screws with a screwdriver
  - 7 Check the hold of the wires in the terminals by lightly pulling on them
  - 8 Tighten the compression nut of the cable entry. The seal ring must completely encircle the cable
  - 9 Connect the supply cable according to steps 3 to 8
  - 10 Screw the housing cover back on
- The electrical connection is finished.

<sup>2)</sup> The connection cable is already preconfected. After shortening the cable, fasten the type plate with support again to the cable.



5.3 Wiring plan

Direct connection

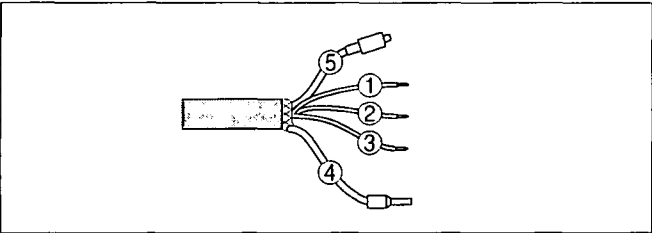


Fig. 4: Wire assignment, connection cable  
1 brown (+): to power supply or to the processing system  
2 blue (-): to power supply or to the processing system  
3 yellow: is only required with VEGADIS 12, otherwise connect to mir with VEGABOX 01 to terminal 3<sup>3)</sup>  
4 Screen  
5 Breather capillaries with filter element

Connection via VEGABOX 02

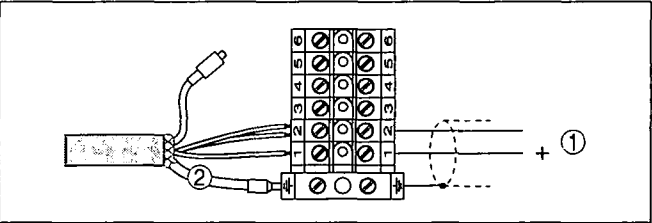


Fig. 5: Terminal assignment VEGABAR 74  
1 To power supply or the processing system  
2 Screen<sup>4)</sup>

Wire number	Wire colour/Polarity	VEGABAR 74 terminal
1	brown (+)	1
2	blue (-)	2
3	Yellow	2
	Screen	Ground

<sup>3)</sup> For customer-specific versions already connected with blue (-) when being shipped.  
<sup>4)</sup> Connect screen to ground terminal. Connect ground terminal on the outside of the housing as prescribed. The two terminals are galvanically connected.



## Connection via VEGADIS 12

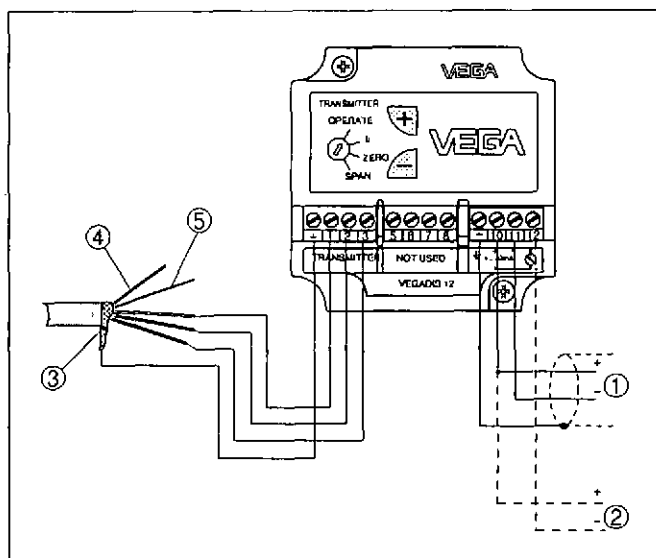


Fig. 6: Terminal assignment, VEGADIS 12

- 1 To power supply or the processing system
- 2 Control instrument (4 ... 20 mA measurement)
- 3 Screen<sup>5)</sup>
- 4 Breather capillaries
- 5 Suspension cable

Wire number	Wire colour/Polarity	Terminal VEGADIS 12
1	brown (+)	1
2	blue (-)	2
3	Yellow	3

<sup>5)</sup> Connect screen to ground terminal. Connect ground terminal on the outside of the housing as prescribed. The two terminals are galvanically connected.

## 6 Set up

### 6.1 Setup steps without VEGADIS 12

After mounting and electrical connection, VEGABAR 74 is ready for operation.

→ Switch on voltage

The electronics now carries out a self-check for approx. 2 seconds. Then VEGABAR 74 delivers a current of 4 ... 20 mA according to the actual level.

### 6.2 Setup steps with VEGADIS 12

#### Adjustment volume

- zero - measuring range begin
- span - measuring range end
- ti - Integration time

#### Adjustment system

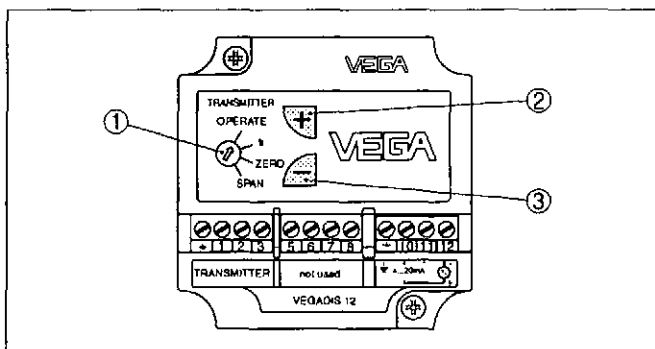


Fig. 7: Adjustment elements of VEGADIS 12

- 1 Rotary switch: choose the requested function
- 2 [+] key, change value (rising)
- 3 [-] key, change value (falling)

- With the rotary switch the requested function is selected
- With the [+] and [-] keys, the signal current or the integration time are adjusted
- Finally the rotary switch is set to position "OPERATE"

The set values are transmitted to the EEPROM memory and remain there even in case of voltage loss.

#### Adjustment steps, adjustment

Proceed as follows for adjustment with VEGADIS 12:

- 1 Open housing cover
- 2 Connect hand multimeter to terminals 10 and 12
- 3 Meas. range begin: Set rotary switch to "zero"



- 4 Empty the vessel or reduce process pressure
- 5 Set a current of 4 mA with the **[+]** and **[-]** keys
- 6 Meas. range end: Set rotary switch to "span"
- 7 Fill the vessel or increase process pressure
- 8 Set a current of 20 mA with the **[+]** and **[-]** keys
- 9 Operation: Set rotary switch to "OPERATE"
- 10 Close housing cover

The adjustment data are effective, the output current 4 ... 20 mA corresponds to the actual level.

#### Adjustment steps, integration

Proceed as follows for the adjustment of the integration time with VEGADIS 12:

- 1 Open housing cover
- 2 Set rotary switch to "Ii"
- 3 By pushing the **[-]** key 10-times, make sure that the integration time is set to 0 sec.
- 4 For every 1 sec. requested integration time, push the **[+]** key once.
- 5 The integration time is the time required by the output current signal to reach 90 % of the actual height after a sudden level change.
- 6 Set rotary switch to "OPERATE"
- 7 Close housing cover

#### Adjustment steps, scaling

The display outputs the current 4 ... 20 mA as bar graph and digital value.

With 4 mA no segment of the bar graph appears, with 20 mA all segments appear. This assignment is fix.

You can scale the digital value to any value between -9999 ... +9999 via the adjustment module.

Proceed as follows for scaling the indication of VEGADIS 12:

- 1 Open housing cover
- 2 Initial value: Set rotary switch to "zero"
- 3 Set the requested value, e.g. 0 with the **[+]** and **[-]** keys
- 4 Final value: Set the rotary switch to "span"
- 5 Set the requested value, e.g. 1000 with the **[+]** and **[-]** keys
- 6 Decimal point: Set the rotary switch to "point"
- 7 With the **[+]** and **[-]** keys you can adjust the requested value, e.g. 8888 (no decimal point)

**Set up**

---

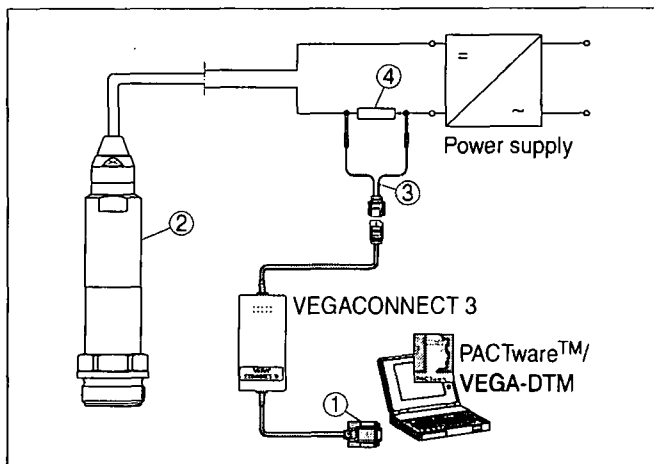


8 Set rotary switch to "*OPERATE*"

9 Close housing cover

The adjustment data are effective, the output current 4 ... 20 mA corresponds to the actual level.

### Connecting the PC to the signal cable



- 1 RS232 connection (with VEGACONNECT 3) or USB connection (with VEGACONNECT 4)
- 2 VEGABAR 74
- 3 HART adapter cable
- 4 HART resistance 250 Ohm (optional depending on the processing)

- VEGABAR 74
- PC with PACTware™ and suitable VEGA DTM
- VEGACONNECT 3 or 4 with HART adapter cable (art. no. 2.25397)
- HART resistance approx. 250 Ohm
- Power supply unit

**i**

With power supply units with integrated HART resistance (internal resistance approx. 250 Ohm), an additional external resistance is not necessary (e.g. VEGATRENN 149A, VEGADIS 371, VEGAMET 381/624/625, VEGASCAN 693). In such cases, VEGACONNECT 3 can be connected parallel to the 4 ... 20 mA cable.

## 7.2 Connect the PC with VEGACONNECT 4

### Connection via HART

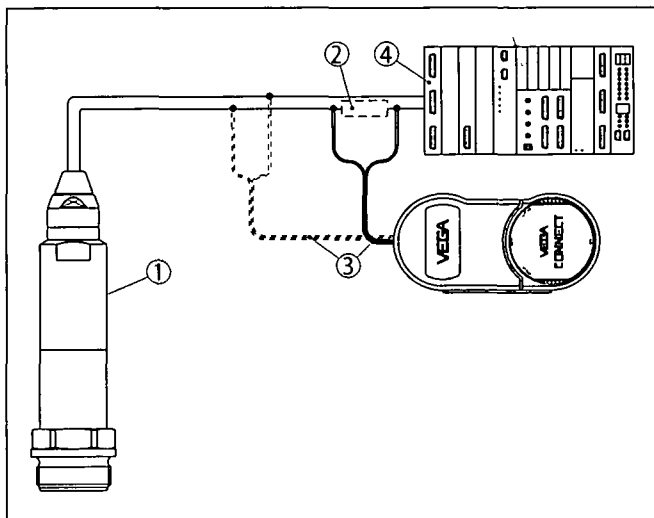


Fig. 9: Connecting the PC via HART to the signal cable

- 1 VEGABAR 74
- 2 HART resistance 250 Ohm (optional depending on the processing)
- 3 Connection cable with 2 mm pins and terminals
- 4 Processing system/PLC/Voltage supply

#### Necessary components:

- VEGABAR 74
- PC with PACTware™ and suitable VEGA DTM
- VEGACONNECT 4
- HART resistance 250 Ohm (optional depending on the processing)
- Power supply unit or processing system



#### Note:

With power supply units with integrated HART resistance (internal resistance approx. 250 Ohm), an additional external resistance is not necessary. This applies, e.g. to the VEGA instruments VEGATRENN 149A, VEGADIS 371, VEGAMET 381). Also usual Ex separators are most of the time equipped with a sufficient current limitation resistor. In such cases, VEGACONNECT 4 can be connected parallel to the 4 ... 20 mA cable.



### 7.3 Parameter adjustment with PACTware™

Further setup steps are described in the operating instructions manual "*DTM Collection/PACTware™*" attached to each CD and which can also be downloaded from our homepage. A detailed description is available in the online help of PACTware™ and the VEGA DTMs.

**Note:**

Keep in mind that for setup of VEGABAR 74, DTM-Collection in the actual version must be used.

All currently available VEGA DTMs are provided in the DTM Collection on CD and can be obtained from the responsible VEGA agency for a token fee. This CD includes also the up-to-date PACTware™ version. The basic version of this DTM Collection incl. PACTware™ is also available as a free-of-charge download from the Internet.

Go via [www.vega.com](http://www.vega.com) and "*Downloads*" to the item "*Software*".

### 7.4 Parameter adjustment with AMS™ and PDM

For VEGA sensors, instrument descriptions for the adjustment programs AMS™ and PDM are available as DD or EDD. The instrument descriptions are already implemented in the current versions of AMS™ and PDM. For older versions of AMS™ and PDM, a free-of-charge download is available via Internet.

Go via [www.vega.com](http://www.vega.com) and "*Downloads*" to the item "*Software*".

### 7.5 Saving the parameter adjustment data

It is recommended to document or save the parameter adjustment data. They are hence available for multiple use or service purposes.

The VEGA DTM Collection and PACTware™ in the licensed, professional version provide suitable tools for systematic project documentation and storage.

## 8 Maintenance and fault rectification

### 8.1 Maintenance

When used as directed in normal operation, VEGABAR 74 is completely maintenance free.

### 8.2 Fault clearance

#### Reaction in case of failures

The operator of the system is responsible for taken suitable measures to remove interferences.

#### Causes of malfunction

VEGABAR 74 offers maximum reliability. Nevertheless failures can occur during operation. These may be caused by the following, e.g.:

- Sensor
- Process
- Supply
- Signal processing

#### Fault rectification

The first measures to be taken are to check the output signals as well as to evaluate the error messages via the indicating and adjustment module. The procedure is described below. Further comprehensive diagnostics can be carried out on a PC with the software PACTware™ and the suitable DTM. In many cases, the causes can be determined in this way and faults can be rectified.

#### 24 hour service hotline

However, if these measures are not successful, call the VEGA service hotline in urgent cases under the phone no. **+49 1805 858550**.

The hotline is available to you 7 days a week round-the-clock. Since we offer this service world-wide, the support is only available in the English language. The service is free of charge, only the standard telephone costs will be charged.

#### Checking the 4 ... 20 mA signal

Connect a handheld multimeter in the suitable measuring range according to the wiring plan.

##### ? 4 ... 20 mA signal not stable

- Level fluctuations
  - Adjust integration time via PACTware™
- no atmospheric pressure compensation
  - Check the capillaries and cut them clean

- Check the pressure compensation in the housing and clean the filter element, if necessary
- ? 4 ... 20 mA signal missing
  - Wrong connection to power supply
  - Check connection according to chapter "*Connection steps*" and if necessary, correct according to chapter "*Wiring plan*"
  - No voltage supply
  - Check cables for breaks; repair if necessary
  - supply voltage too low or load resistance too high
  - Check, adapt if necessary
- ? Current signal 3.6 mA; 22 mA
  - electronics module or measuring cell defective
  - Exchange instrument or return instrument for repair



In Ex applications, the regulations for the wiring of intrinsically safe circuits must be observed.

#### Reaction after fault rectification

Depending on the failure reason and measures taken, the steps described in chapter "*Set up*" must be carried out again, if necessary.

### 8.3 Instrument repair

If a repair is necessary, please proceed as follows:

You can download a return form (23 KB) from the Internet on our homepage [www.vega.com](http://www.vega.com) under: "*Downloads - Forms and certificates - Repair form*".

By doing this you help us carry out the repair quickly and without having to call back for needed information.

- Print and fill out one form per instrument
- Clean the instrument and pack it damage-proof
- Attach the completed form and, if need be, also a safety data sheet outside on the packaging
- Please ask the agency serving you for the address of your return shipment. You can find the respective agency on our website [www.vega.com](http://www.vega.com) under: "*Company - VEGA world-wide*"

## 9 Dismounting

### 9.1 Dismounting steps

**Warning:**

Before dismounting, be aware of dangerous process conditions such as e.g. pressure in the vessel, high temperatures, corrosive or toxic products etc.

Take note of chapters "*Mounting*" and "*Connecting to power supply*" and carry out the listed steps in reverse order.

### 9.2 Disposal

The instrument consists of materials which can be recycled by specialised recycling companies. We use recyclable materials and have designed the electronics to be easily separable.

**WEEE directive 2002/96/EG**

This instrument is not subject to the WEEE directive 2002/96/EG and the respective national laws (in Germany, e.g. ElektroG). Pass the instrument directly on to a specialised recycling company and do not use the municipal collecting points. These may be used only for privately used products according to the WEEE directive.

Correct disposal avoids negative effects to persons and environment and ensures recycling of useful raw materials.

Materials: see chapter "*Technical data*"

If you cannot dispose of the instrument properly, please contact us about disposal methods or return.



## 10 Supplement

### 10.1 Technical data

#### General data

Manufacturer	VEGA Grieshaber KG, D-77761 Schiltach
Type name	VEGABAR 74
Parameter, pressure	Gauge pressure, absolute pressure, vacuum
Measuring principle	Ceramic-capacitive, dry measuring cell
Communication interface	None

#### Materials and weights

Material 316L corresponds to 1.4404 or 1.4435

#### Materials, wetted parts

– Process fitting	316L
– Diaphragm	sapphire ceramic® (99.9 % oxide ceramic)
– Seal	FKM (e.g. Viton), Kalrez 6375, EPDM, Chemraz 535
– Seal process fitting thread G½ A, G1½ A	Klingsil C-4400

#### Materials, non-wetted parts

– Housing	316L
– Ground terminal	316Ti/316L
– Connection cable	PUR, FEP, PE
– type label support on cable	PE-HART

Weight	0.8 ... 8 kg (1.8 ... 17.6 lbs), depending on process fitting
--------	---

#### Input variable

Output signal	4 ... 20 mA/HART
Failure signal	22 mA (3.6 mA), adjustable
Max. output current	22.5 mA
Damping (63 % of the input variable)	0 ... 10 s, adjustable
Step response or adjustment time	70 ms (ti: 0 s, 0 ... 63 %)
Fulfilled NAMUR recommendations	NE 43

#### Additional output parameter - temperature

Processing is made via HART-Multidrop

## Supplement



Range	-50 ... +150 °C (-58 ... +302 °F)
Resolution	1 °C (1.8 °F)
Accuracy	
– in the range of 0 ... +100°C (+32 ... +212 °F)	±3 K
– in the range of -50 ... 0 °C (-58 ... +32 °F) and +100 ... +150 °C (+212 ... +302 °F)	typ. ±4 K

**Input variable****Adjustment**

Zero adjustable	-20 ... +95 % of the nominal measuring range
Span adjustable	3.3 ... +120 % of the nominal measuring range
Recommended max. turn down	10:1

**Nominal measuring ranges and overload resistance**

Nominal range	Overload, max. pressure <sup>a)</sup>	Overload, min. pressure
Gauge pressure		
0 ... 0.1 bar/0 ... 10 kPa	15 bar/1500 kPa	-0.2 bar/-20 kPa
0 ... 0.2 bar/0 ... 20 kPa	20 bar/2000 kPa	-0.4 bar/-40 kPa
0 ... 0.4 bar/0 ... 40 kPa	30 bar/3000 kPa	-0.8 bar/-80 kPa
0 ... 1 bar/0 ... 100 kPa	35 bar/3500 kPa	-1 bar/-100 kPa
0 ... 2.5 bar/0 ... 250 kPa	50 bar/5000 kPa	-1 bar/-100 kPa
0 ... 5 bar/0 ... 500 kPa	65 bar/6500 kPa	-1 bar/-100 kPa
0 ... 10 bar/0 ... 1000 kPa	90 bar/9000 kPa	-1 bar/-100 kPa
0 ... 25 bar/0 ... 2500 kPa	130 bar/13000 kPa	-1 bar/-100 kPa
0 ... 60 bar/0 ... 6000 kPa	200 bar/20000 kPa	-1 bar/-100 kPa
-1 ... 0 bar/-100 ... 0 kPa	35 bar/3500 kPa	-1 bar/-100 kPa
-1 ... 1.5 bar/-100 ... 150 kPa	50 bar/5000 kPa	-1 bar/-100 kPa
-1 ... 5 bar/-100 ... 500 kPa	65 bar/6500 kPa	-1 bar/-100 kPa
-1 ... 10 bar/-100 ... 1000 kPa	90 bar/9000 kPa	-1 bar/-100 kPa
-1 ... 25 bar/-100 ... 2500 kPa	130 bar/13000 kPa	-1 bar/-100 kPa
-1 ... 60 bar/-100 ... 6000 kPa	300 bar/30000 kPa	-1 bar/-100 kPa
-0.05 ... 0.05 bar/-5 ... 5 kPa	15 bar/1500 kPa	-0.2 bar/-20 kPa
-0.1 ... 0.1 bar/-10 ... 10 kPa	20 bar/2000 kPa	-0.4 bar/-40 kPa

<sup>a)</sup> Limited to 200 bar according to the pressure device directive.



Nominal range	Overload, max. pressure <sup>6)</sup>	Overload, min. pressure
-0.2 ... 0.2 bar/-20 ... 20 kPa	30 bar/3000 kPa	-0.8 bar/-80 kPa
-0.5 ... 0.5 bar/-50 ... 50 kPa	35 bar/3500 kPa	-1 bar/-100 kPa
Absolute pressure		
0 ... 0.1 bar/0 ... 10 kPa	15 bar/1500 kPa	
0 ... 1 bar/0 ... 100 kPa	35 bar/3500 kPa	
0 ... 2.5 bar/0 ... 250 kPa	50 bar/5000 kPa	
0 ... 5 bar/0 ... 500 kPa	65 bar/6500 kPa	
10 bar/0 ... 1000 kPa	90 bar/9000 kPa	
0 ... 25 bar/0 ... 2500 kPa	130 bar/13000 kPa	
0 ... 60 bar/0 ... 6000 kPa	200 bar/20000 kPa	

**Reference conditions and influencing variables (similar to DIN EN 60770-1)**

Reference conditions according to DIN EN 61298-1

- Temperature +15 ... +25 °C (+59 ... +77 °F)
- Relative humidity 45 ... 75 %
- Air pressure 860 ... 1060 mbar/86 ... 106 kPa (12.5 ... 15.4 psi)

Determination of characteristics Limit point adjustment according to IEC 61298-2

Characteristics linear

Reference installation position upright, diaphragm points downward

Influence of the installation position <0.2 mbar/20 Pa (0.003 psi)

**Deviation determined according to the limit point method according to IEC 60770<sup>7)</sup>**

lies to **digital** HART interface as well as to **analogue** current output 4 ... 20 mA. Specifications refer to the set span. Turn down (TD) = nominal measuring range/set span.

Deviation

- Turn down 1:1 up to 5:1 <0.075 %
- Turn down up to 10:1 <0.015 % x TD

Deviation with absolutely flush process fittings EV, FT

- Turn down 1:1 up to 5:1 <0.05 %
- Turn down up to 10:1 <0.01 % x TD

<sup>7)</sup> Incl. non-linearity, hysteresis and non-repeatability.

Deviation with absolute pressure measuring range 0.1 bar

- Turn down 1:1 up to 5:1  $<0.25 \% \times \text{TD}$
- Turn down up to 10:1  $<0.05 \% \times \text{TD}$

---

### **Influence of the product or ambient temperature**

---

Applies to **digital** HART interface as well as to **analogue** current output 4 ... 20 mA.  
Specifications refer to the set span. Turn down (TD) = nominal measuring range/set span.

### **Average temperature coefficient of the zero signal**

In the compensated temperature range of 0 ... +100 °C (+212 °F), reference temperature 20 °C (68 °F):

Average temperature coefficient of the zero signal

- Turn down 1:1  $<0.05 \%/10 \text{ K}$
- Turn down 1:1 up to 5:1  $<0.1 \%/10 \text{ K}$
- Turn down up to 10:1  $<0.15 \%/10 \text{ K}$

Outside the compensated temperature range:

Average temperature coefficient of the zero signal

- Turn down 1:1 typ.  $<0.05 \%/10 \text{ K}$

### **Thermal change of the current output**

Applies also to the **analogue** 4 ... 20 mA current output and refers to the set span.

Thermal change, current output  $<0.15 \% \text{ at } -40 \dots +80 \text{ °C } (-40 \dots +176 \text{ °F})$

---

### **Long-term stability (similar to DIN 16086, DINV 19259-1 and IEC 60770-1)**

---

Applies to **digital** HART interface as well as to **analogue** current output 4 ... 20 mA.  
Specifications refer to the set span. Turn down (TD) = nominal measuring range/set span.

Long-term drift of the zero signal  $<(0.1 \% \times \text{TD})/1 \text{ year}$

---

### **Total deviation (similar to DIN 16086)**

---

The total deviation (max. practical deviation) is the sum of basic accuracy and long-term stability:

$$F_{\text{total}} = F_{\text{perf}} + F_{\text{stab}}$$

$$F_{\text{perf}} = \sqrt{(F_T)^2 + (F_{KI})^2}$$

With

- $F_{\text{total}}$ : Total deviation
- $F_{\text{perf}}$ : Basic accuracy
- $F_{\text{stab}}$ : Long-term drift





- $F_T$ : Temperature coefficient (influence of medium or ambient temperature)
- $F_{KI}$ : Deviation

### Ambient conditions

Ambient, storage and transport temperature

- Connection cable PE -40 ... +60 °C (-40 ... +140 °F)
- Connection cable PUR, FEP -40 ... +85 °C (-40 ... +185 °F)

### Process conditions

The specifications of the pressure stage are used as an overview. The specifications on the type plate are applicable.

Pressure stage, process fitting

- Thread 316L PN 60
- Thread Alu PN 25
- Hygienic fittings 316L PN 10, PN 16, PN 25, PN 40
- Flange 316L, flange with extension 316L PN 40 or 150 lbs, 300 lbs

Product temperature depending on the measuring cell seal

- FKM (e.g. Viton) -20 ... +100 °C (-4 ... +212 °F)
- EPDM -40 ... +100 °C (-40 ... +212 °F), 1 h: 140 °C / 284 °F cleaning temperature
- Kalrez 6375 (FFKM) -10 ... +100 °C (+14 ... +212 °F)
- Chemraz 535 -30 ... +100 °C (-22 ... +212 °F)

Vibration resistance

mechanical vibrations with 4 g and 5 ... 100 Hz<sup>8)</sup>

Shock resistance

Acceleration 100 g/6 ms<sup>9)</sup>

### Electromechanical data

Connection cable

- Configuration four wires, one suspension cable, one breather capillary, screen braiding, metal foil, mantle
- Wire cross-section 0.5 mm<sup>2</sup> (AWG no. 20)
- wire resistance <0.036 Ohm/m (0.011 Ohm/ft)
- Standard length 6 m (19.685 ft)
- max. length with VEGADIS 12 200 m (656.168 ft)

<sup>8)</sup> Tested according to the regulations of German Lloyd, GL directive 2.

<sup>9)</sup> Tested according to EN 60068-2-27.

## Supplement



– Min. bending radius at 25 °C/77 °F	25 mm (0.985 in)
– Diameter	approx. 8 mm (0.315 in)
– Colour - standard PE	Black
– Colour - standard PUR	Blue
– Colour - Ex-version	Blue

**Voltage supply**

## Supply voltage

– Non-Ex instrument	12 ... 36 V DC
– EEx ia instrument	12 ... 29 V DC

## Permissible residual ripple

– <100 Hz	$U_{ss} < 1 \text{ V}$
– 100 Hz ... 10 kHz	$U_{ss} < 10 \text{ mV}$

## Load

see diagram

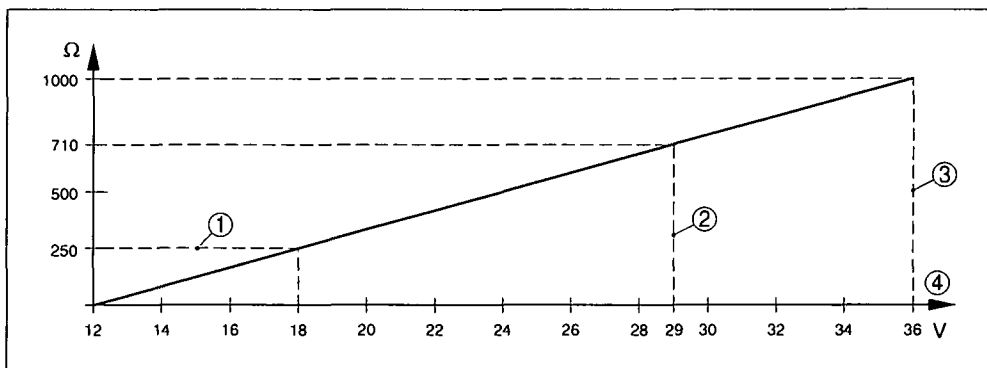


Fig. 10: Voltage diagram VEGABAR 74

- 1 HART load
- 2 Voltage limit Ex instrument
- 3 Voltage limit non-Ex instrument
- 4 Voltage supply

Load in conjunction with VEGADIS 12

see diagram

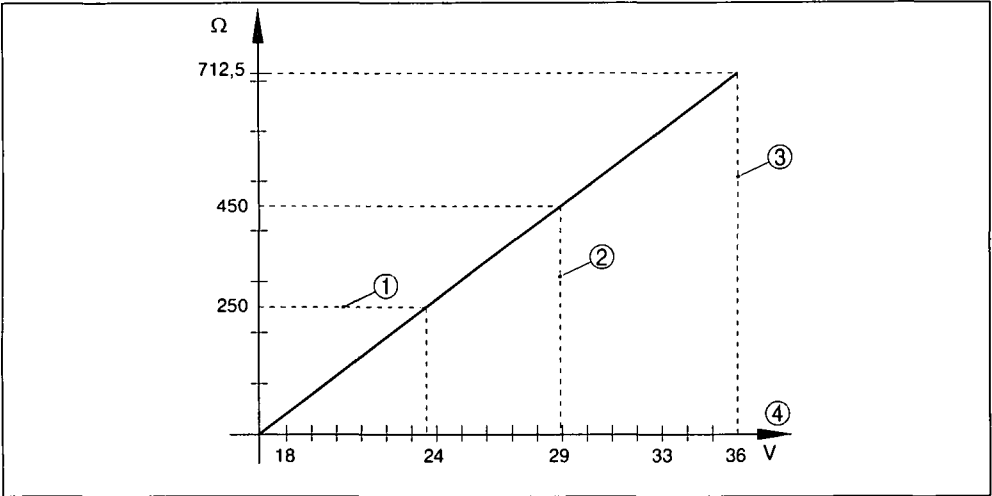


Fig. 11: Voltage diagram VEGABAR 74 with VEGADIS 12

- 1 HART load
- 2 Voltage limit Ex instrument
- 3 Voltage limit non-Ex instrument
- 4 Voltage supply

Integrated overvoltage protection

Nominal leakage current (8/20 μs)	10 kA
Min. response time	<25 ns

Electrical protective measures

Protection	IP 68 (25 bar)/IP 69K
Overvoltage category	III
Protection class	III

Approvals<sup>10)</sup>

ATEX ia	ATEX II 1G EEx ia IIC T6; ATEX II 2G EEx ia IIC T6
Ship approvals	GL, LRS, ABS, CCS, RINA, DNV
Others	WHG

<sup>10)</sup> Deviating data in Ex applications: see separate safety instructions.

## 10.2 Dimensions

### VEGABAR 74 - threaded fitting

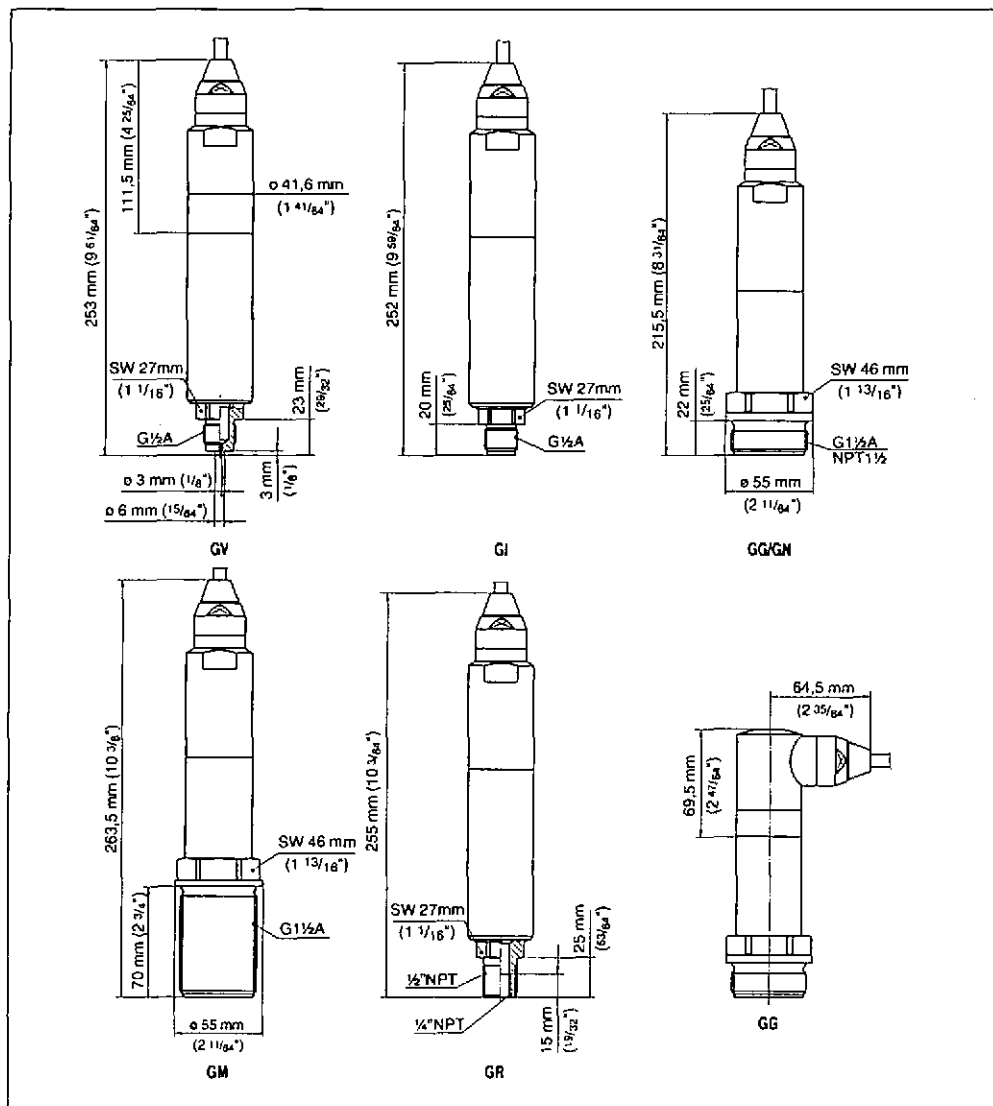


Fig. 12: VEGABAR 74 threaded fitting: GV = G $\frac{1}{2}$  A manometer connection EN 837, GI = G $\frac{1}{2}$  A inner G $\frac{1}{4}$  A, GG = G $\frac{1}{2}$  A, GN =  $\frac{1}{2}$  NPT, GM = G $\frac{1}{2}$  A 70 mm, GR =  $\frac{1}{2}$  NPT inner  $\frac{1}{4}$  NPT

## VEGABAR 74 - hygienic fitting 1

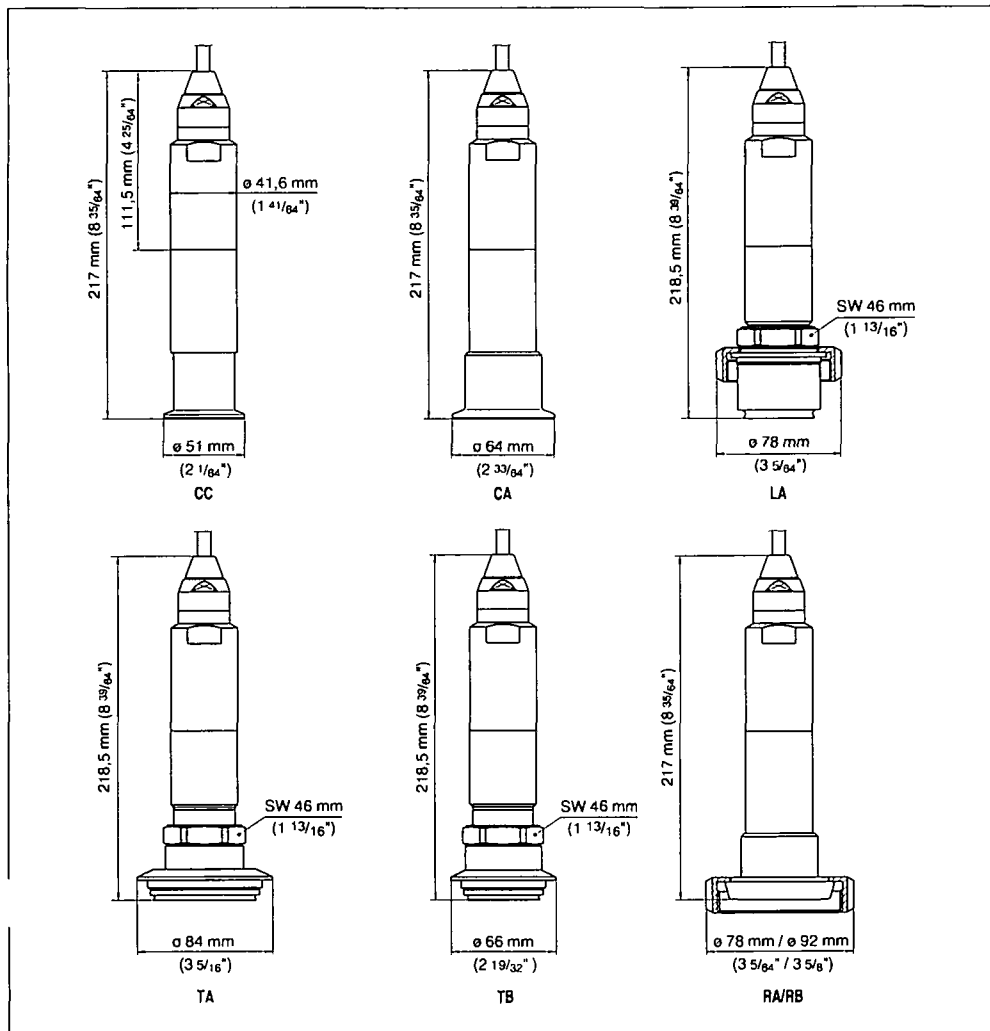


Fig. 13: VEGABAR 74 hygienic fitting: CC = Tri-Clamp 1½", CA = Tri-Clamp 2", LA = hygienic fitting with compression nut F40, TA = Tuchenhausen Varivent DN 32, TB = Tuchenhausen Varivent DN 25, RA/RB = bolting DN 40/DN 50 according to DIN 11851

## VEGABAR 74 - hygienic fitting 2

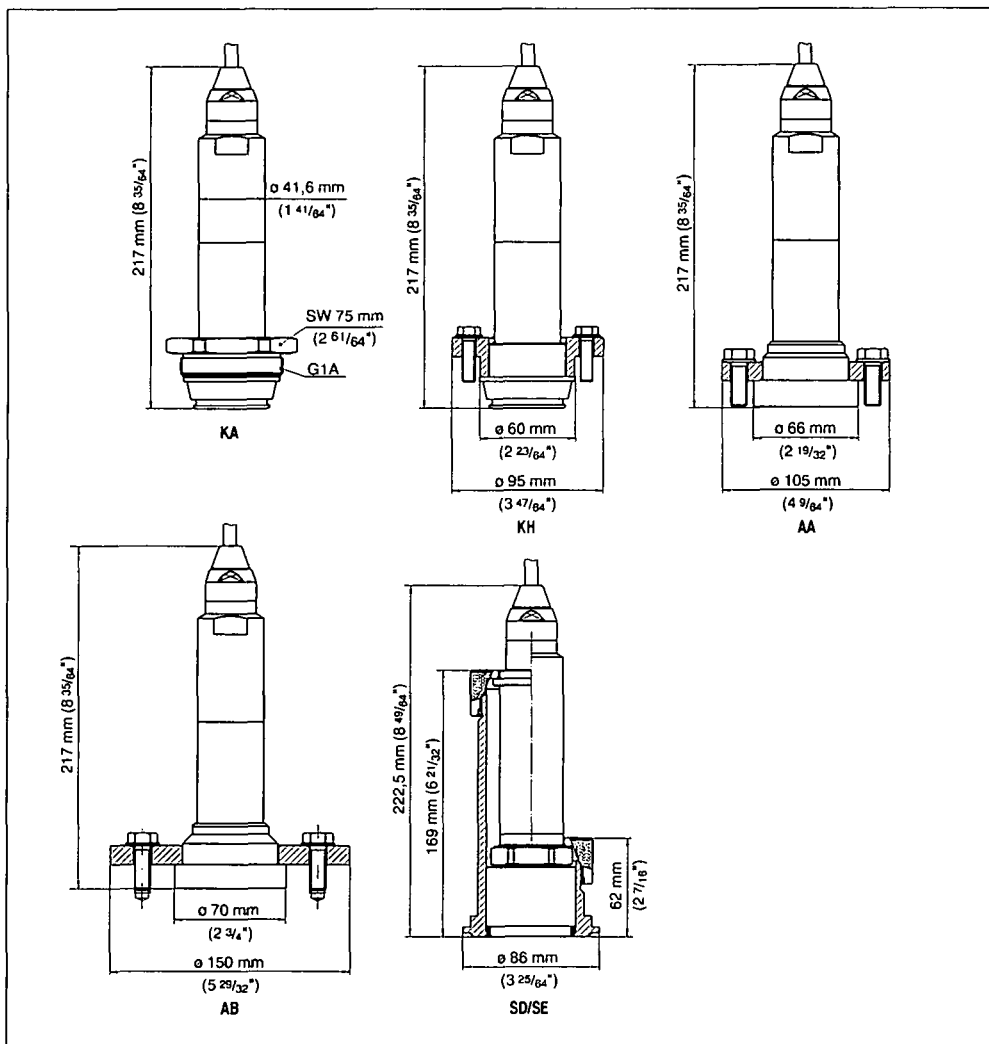
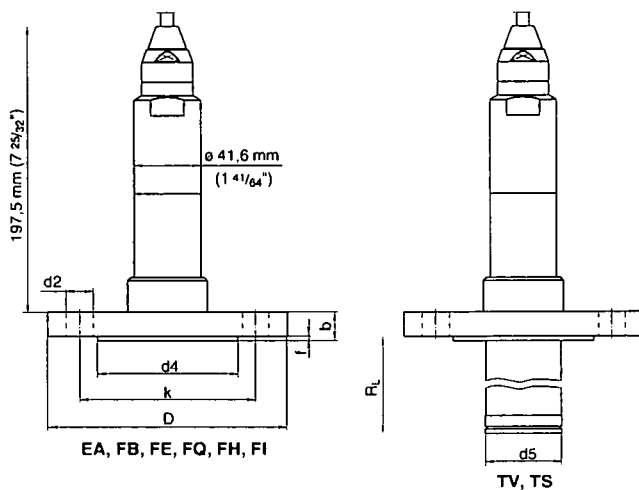


Fig. 14: VEGABAR 74 KA/KH = cone DN 40, AA = DRD, SD/SE = Anderson 3" long/short fitting

## VEGABAR 74 - flange connection



①	DN	PN	D	b	k	d2	d4	f	RL	d5
EA	40	40	5 29/32" 45/64"	4 21/64"	4XO 45/64"	3 15/32"	1/8"	-	-	-
FB	50	40	6 1/2" 25/32"	4 59/64"	4XO 45/64"	4 1/64"	1/8"	-	-	-
FE	80	40	7 7/8" 15/16"	6 19/64"	8XO 45/64"	5 7/16"	1/8"	-	-	-
②	"	lbs	D	b	k	d2	d4	f	RL	d5
FQ	1 1/2"	150	5"	1 1/16"	3 14/16"	4XO 5/8"	2 7/8"	1/8"	-	-
FH	2"	150	6"	3/4"	4 3/4"	4XO 5/8"	3 5/8"	1/8"	-	-
FI	3"	150	7 1/2"	3/4"	6	4XO 5/8"	6	1/8"	-	-
③	DN	PN	D	b	k	d2	d4	f	RL	d5
TV	50	40	6 1/2" 25/32"	4 59/64"	4XO 45/64"	4 1/64"	1/8"	④	1 1/2"	-
TS	80	40	7 7/8" 15/16"	6 19/64"	8XO 45/64"	5 7/16"	1/8"	-	1 1/2"	-

15: VEGABAR 74 - flange connection

- 1 Flange connection according to DIN 2501
- 2 Flange fitting according to ANSI B16.5
- 3 Flange with extension
- 4 Order-specific

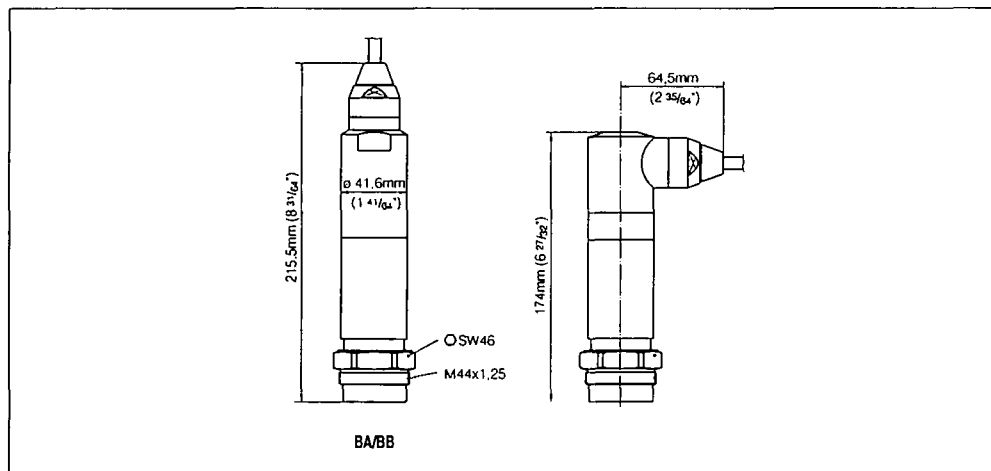
**VEGABAR 74 - threaded fitting for paper industry**

Fig. 16: VEGABAR 74 - connection for paper industry: BA/BB = M44x1.25



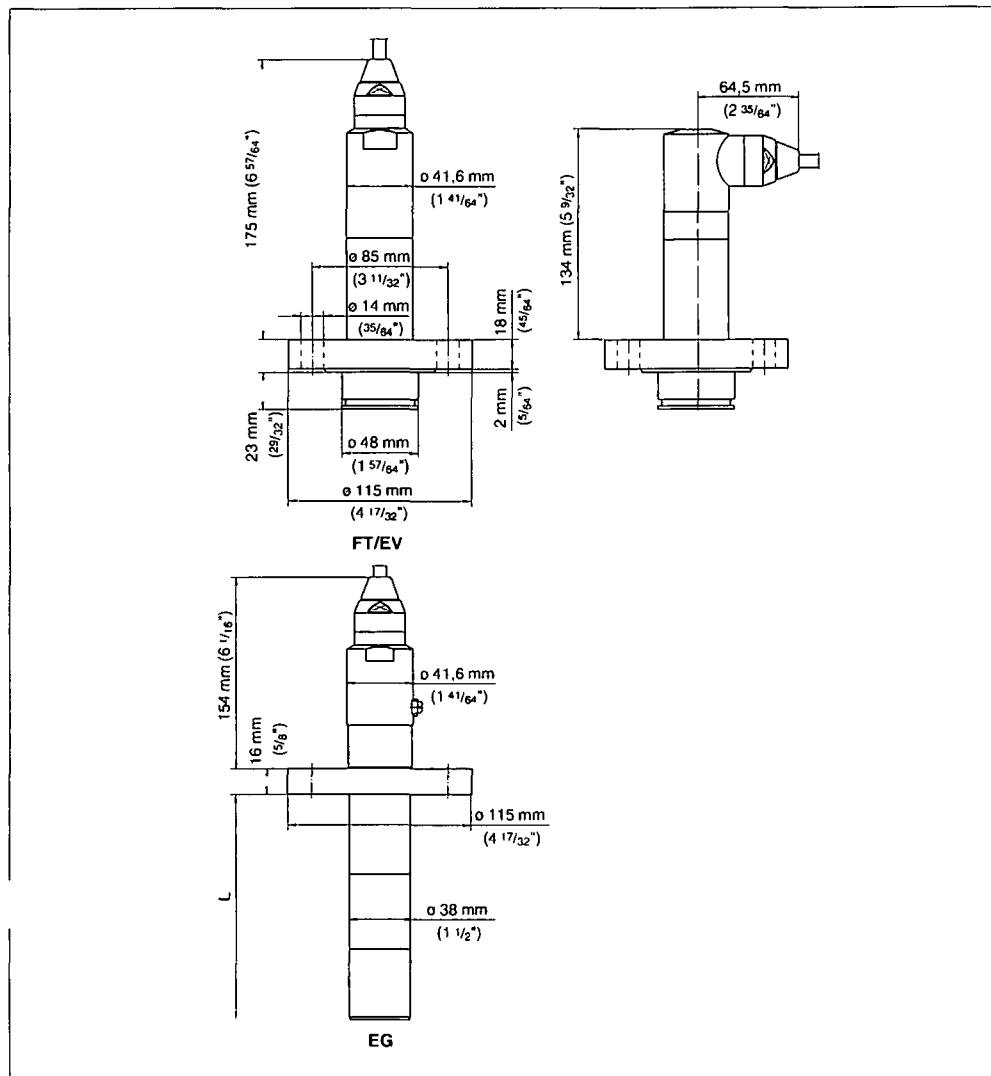
**VEGABAR 74 - extension fitting for paper industry**

Fig. 17: VEGABAR 74 - extension fitting for paper industry: EV/FT = absolutely flush for pulper (EV 2-times flattened), EG = extension for ball valve fitting (L = order-specific)

### 10.3 Industrial property rights

VEGA product lines are global protected by industrial property rights.

Further information see <http://www.vega.com>

Only in U.S.A.: Further information see patent label at the sensor housing.

VEGA Produktfamilien sind weltweit geschützt durch gewerbliche Schutzrechte.  
Nähere Informationen unter <http://www.vega.com>

Les lignes de produits VEGA sont globalement protégées par des droits de propriété intellectuelle.

Pour plus d'informations, on pourra se référer au site <http://www.vega.com>

VEGA líneas de productos están protegidas por los derechos en el campo de la propiedad industrial.

Para mayor información revise la pagina web <http://www.vega.com>

Линии продукции фирмы ВЕГА защищаются по всему миру правами на интеллектуальную собственность.

Дальнейшую информацию смотрите на сайте <http://www.vega.com>

VEGA系列产品在全球享有知识产权保护。

进一步信息请参见网站<<http://www.vega.com>>。

### 10.4 Trademark

All brands used as well as trade and company names are property of their lawful proprietor/originator.





28432-EN-070718





28.05.2008

VEGA Grieshaber KG  
Am Hohenstein 113  
77761 Schiltach  
Germany  
Phone +49 7836 50-0  
Fax +49 7836 50-201  
E-mail: [info@de.vega.com](mailto:info@de.vega.com)  
[www.vega.com](http://www.vega.com)

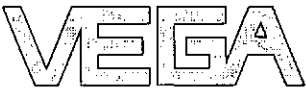


All statements concerning scope of delivery, application, practical use and operating conditions of the sensors and processing systems correspond to the information available at the time of printing.

© VEGA Grieshaber KG, Schiltach/Germany 2007

Subject to change without prior notice

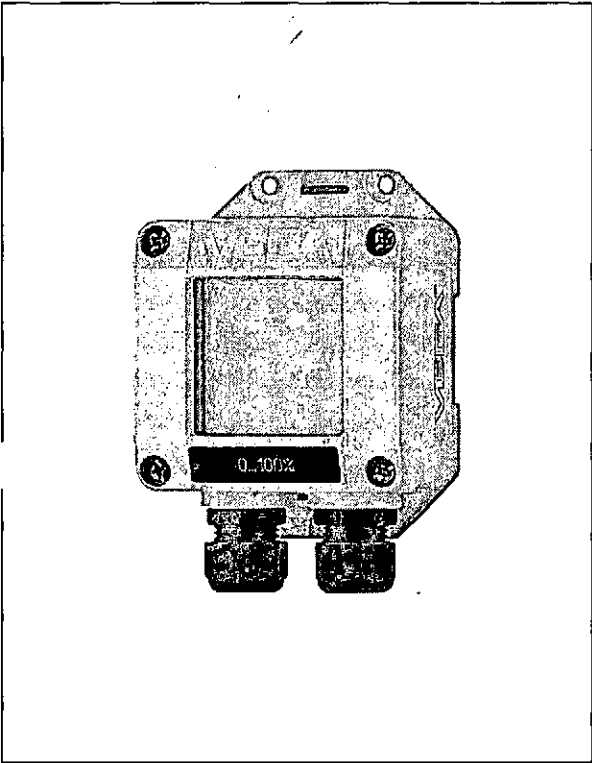
28432-EN-070718



OrderNo: 1439571\_3

# Operating Instructions

## VEGADIS 12



Indication  
and adjustment



WA000168



Content

1 About this document

1.1 Function . . . . . 4

1.2 Target group . . . . . 4

1.3 Symbolism used . . . . . 4

2 For your safety

2.1 Authorised personnel . . . . . 5

2.2 Appropriate use . . . . . 5

2.3 Warning about misuse . . . . . 5

2.4 General safety instructions . . . . . 5

2.5 Safety approval markings and safety tips . . . . . 5

2.6 CE conformity . . . . . 5

2.7 Safety instructions for Ex areas . . . . . 6

2.8 Environmental instructions . . . . . 6

3 Product description

3.1 Configuration . . . . . 7

3.2 Principle of operation . . . . . 8

3.3 Operation . . . . . 8

3.4 Packaging, transport and storage . . . . . 9

4 Mounting

4.1 General instructions . . . . . 10

4.2 Mounting instructions . . . . . 10

5 Connecting to power supply

5.1 Preparing the connection . . . . . 11

5.2 Connection procedure . . . . . 12

5.3 Wiring plan . . . . . 13

6 Set up

6.1 Adjustment of the pressure transmitter . . . . . 17

6.2 Indication scaling . . . . . 18

7 Maintenance and fault rectification

7.1 Maintenance . . . . . 20

7.2 Remove interferences . . . . . 20

7.3 Instrument repair . . . . . 21

8 Dismounting

8.1 Dismounting steps . . . . . 23

8.2 Disposal . . . . . 23

20591-EN-071128



9.1	Technical data. . . . .	24
9.2	Dimensions. . . . .	26

# 1 About this document

## 1.1 Function

This operating instructions manual provides all the information you need for mounting, connection and setup as well as important instructions for maintenance and fault rectification. Please read this information before putting the instrument into operation and keep this manual accessible in the immediate vicinity of the device.

## 1.2 Target group

This operating instructions manual is directed to trained, qualified personnel. The contents of this manual should be made available to these personnel and put into practice by them.

## 1.3 Symbolism used



### Information, tip, note

This symbol indicates helpful additional information.



**Caution:** If this warning is ignored, faults or malfunctions can result.

**Warning:** If this warning is ignored, injury to persons and/or serious damage to the instrument can result.

**Danger:** If this warning is ignored, serious injury to persons and/or destruction of the instrument can result.



### Ex applications

This symbol indicates special instructions for Ex applications.



### List

The dot set in front indicates a list with no implied sequence.



### Action

This arrow indicates a single action.



### Sequence

Numbers set in front indicate successive steps in a procedure.

## **2 For your safety**

### **2.1 Authorised personnel**

All operations described in this operating instructions manual must be carried out only by trained specialist personnel authorised by the operator.

During work on and with the device the required personal protection equipment must always be worn.

### **2.2 Appropriate use**

VEGADIS 12 is an adjustment and indicating unit for VEGA pressure transmitters.

### **2.3 Warning about misuse**

Inappropriate or incorrect use of the instrument can give rise to application-specific hazards, e.g. vessel overfill or damage to system components through incorrect mounting or adjustment.

### **2.4 General safety instructions**

This is a high-tech instrument requiring the strict observance of standard regulations and guidelines. The user must take note of the safety instructions in this operating instructions manual, the country-specific installation standards as well as all prevailing safety regulations and accident prevention rules.

The instrument must only be operated in a technically flawless and reliable condition. The operator is responsible for trouble-free operation of the instrument.

During the entire duration of use, the user is obliged to determine the compliance of the required occupational safety measures with the current valid rules and regulations and also take note of new regulations.

### **2.5 Safety approval markings and safety tips**

The safety approval markings and safety tips on the device must be observed.

### **2.6 CE conformity**

VEGADIS 12 is in CE conformity with EMC (89/336/EEG) and LVD (73/23/EEG) and fulfills NAMUR recommendation NE 21.

Conformity has been judged according to the following standards:

- EMC:
  - Emission EN 50081
  - Susceptibility EN 50082
- LVD: EN 61010

## 2.7 Safety instructions for Ex areas

Please note the Ex-specific safety information for installation and operation in Ex areas. These safety instructions are part of the operating instructions manual and come with the Ex-approved instruments.

## 2.8 Environmental instructions

Protection of the environment is one of our most important duties. That is why we have introduced an environment management system with the goal of continuously improving company environmental protection. The environment management system is certified according to DIN EN ISO 14001.

Please help us fulfil this obligation by observing the environmental instructions in this manual:

- Chapter "*Packaging, transport and storage*"
- Chapter "*Disposal*"

### 3 Product description

#### 3.1 Configuration

##### Scope of delivery

The scope of delivery encompasses:

- Indicating and adjustment unit VEGADIS 12
- Documentation
  - this operating instructions manual
  - Ex-specific "*Safety instructions*" (with Ex-versions)
  - if necessary, further certificates

##### Components

VEGADIS 12 consists of the following components:

- Housing with adjustment elements
- Housing cover with integrated indicating module

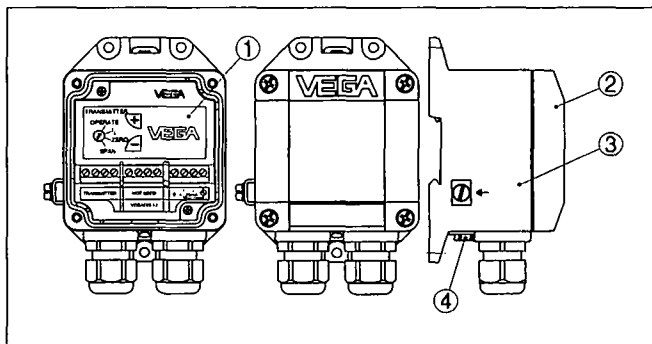


Fig. 1: VEGADIS 12 without display

- 1 Adjustment insert
- 2 Cover
- 3 Housing
- 4 Breather facility

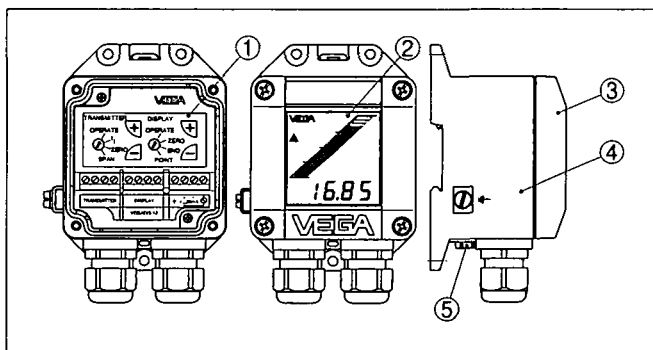


Fig. 2: VEGADIS 12 with display

- 1 Adjustment insert
- 2 Indication
- 3 Cover
- 4 Housing
- 5 Breather facility

### 3.2 Principle of operation

#### Area of application

VEGADIS 12 is an adjustment and indicating unit for the following VEGA pressure transmitters:

- VEGAWELL 72 4 ... 20 mA/HART
- VEGABAR 74 4 ... 20 mA/HART
- VEGABAR 75 4 ... 20 mA/HART

#### Functional principle

VEGADIS 12 has the following functions:

- atmospheric pressure compensation for the pressure transmitter
- Adjustment of the pressure transmitter
- Indication of the measured value (optional)

#### Supply

VEGADIS 12 is looped in the supply and signal circuit of the pressure transmitter and requires no separate external ene Connection is carried out via screw terminals in the housing.

### 3.3 Operation

As a standard feature, VEGADIS 12 is equipped with an adjustment module for the pressure transmitter. The optional indication is located in the housing cover and is equipped with a bargraf and a digital indication. In this version, the additional adjustment elements for scaling of the indication are integrated.



### 3.4 Packaging, transport and storage

#### Packaging

Your instrument was protected by packaging during transport. Its capacity to handle normal loads during transport is assured by a test according to DIN EN 24180.

The packaging of standard instruments consists of environment-friendly, recyclable cardboard. For special versions, PE foam or PE foil is also used. Dispose of the packaging material via specialised recycling companies.

#### Transport

Transport must be carried out under consideration of the notes on the transport packaging. Nonobservance of these instructions can cause damage to the device.

#### Transport inspection

The delivery must be checked for completeness and possible transit damage immediately at receipt. Ascertained transit damage or concealed defects must be appropriately dealt with.

#### Storage

Up to the time of installation, the packages must be left closed and stored according to the orientation and storage markings on the outside.

Unless otherwise indicated, the packages must be stored only under the following conditions:

- Not in the open
- Dry and dust free
- Not exposed to corrosive media
- Protected against solar radiation
- Avoiding mechanical shock and vibration

#### Storage and transport temperature

- Storage and transport temperature see "*Supplement - Technical data - Ambient conditions*"
- Relative humidity 20 ... 85 %

## 4 Mounting

### 4.1 General instructions

#### Installation position

VEGADIS 12 can be mounted in any position. However, vertical mounting is recommended. This avoids pollution of the breather facility and moisture penetration.

**Note:**

There must be the same atmospheric pressure on the breather facility as well as on the measurement loop. Otherwise the measured value can be adulterated.

#### Moisture

Use the recommended cables (see chapter "*Connecting to power supply*") and tighten the cable gland.

### 4.2 Mounting instructions

#### Mounting versions

VEGADIS 12 can be mounted as follows:

- on carrier rail 35 x 7.5 according to EN 50022
- on mounting plate or on the wall



## 5 Connecting to power supply

### 5.1 Preparing the connection

**Note safety instructions**

Always keep in mind the following safety instructions:

- Connect only in the complete absence of line voltage

Take note of safety instructions for Ex applications



In hazardous areas you should take note of the appropriate regulations, conformity and type approval certificates of the sensors and power supply units.

**Connecting connection cable**

VEGABOX 01 or VEGADIS 12 is connected with standard two-wire cable without screen. An outer cable diameter of 5 ... 9 mm ensures the seal effect of the cable entry. If electromagnetic interference is expected which is above the test values of EN 61326 for industrial areas, we recommend the use of screened cable.

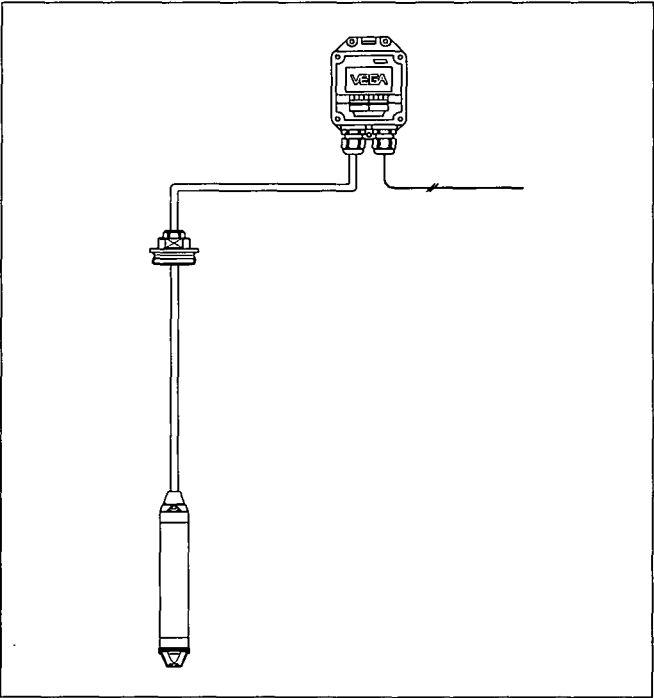


Fig. 3: Connection of VEGADIS 12 to the sensor

**Select connection cable for Ex applications**

Take note of the corresponding installation regulations for Ex applications.

**Cable screening and grounding**

If screened cable is necessary, connect the cable screen on both ends to ground potential. In VEGABOX 01 or in VEGADIS 12, the screen must be connected directly to the internal ground terminal. The ground terminal outside on the housing must be connected to the potential equalisation.

If potential equalisation currents are expected, the connection on the processing side must be made via a ceramic capacitor (e. g. 1 nF, 1500 V). The low frequency potential equalisation currents are thus suppressed, but the protective effect against high frequency interference signals remains.

**Cable screen and grounding for Ex applications**

In Ex applications, one-sided grounding on the sensor is recommended, see EN 60079-14.

**5.2 Connection procedure**

Proceed as follows:

- 1 Unscrew the housing cover
  - 2 Loosen compression nut of the cable entry
  - 3 Remove approx. 10 cm of the cable mantle, strip approx. 1 cm insulation from the individual wires
  - 4 Insert the cable into VEGADIS 12 through the cable entry
  - 5 Loosen screw terminals with a screwdriver
  - 6 Insert the wire ends into the open terminals according to the wiring plan
  - 7 Tighten screw terminals again
  - 8 Check the hold of the wires in the terminals by lightly pulling on them
  - 9 Connect the screen to the ground terminal
  - 10 Connect the ground terminal outside on the housing according to specification (low impedance)
  - 11 Tighten the compression nut of the cable entry. The seal ring must completely encircle the cable
  - 12 Screw the housing cover on
- The electrical connection is finished.

### 5.3 Wiring plan

#### Wire assignment, connection cable pressure transmitter

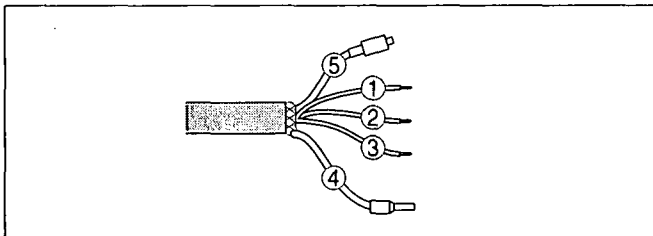


Fig. 4: Wire assignment, connection cable

- 1 brown (+): to power supply or to the processing system
- 2 blue (-): to power supply or to the processing system
- 3 yellow: for adjustment information of VEGADIS 12
- 4 Screen
- 5 Breather capillaries with filter element

#### Connection of VEGADIS 12 without display

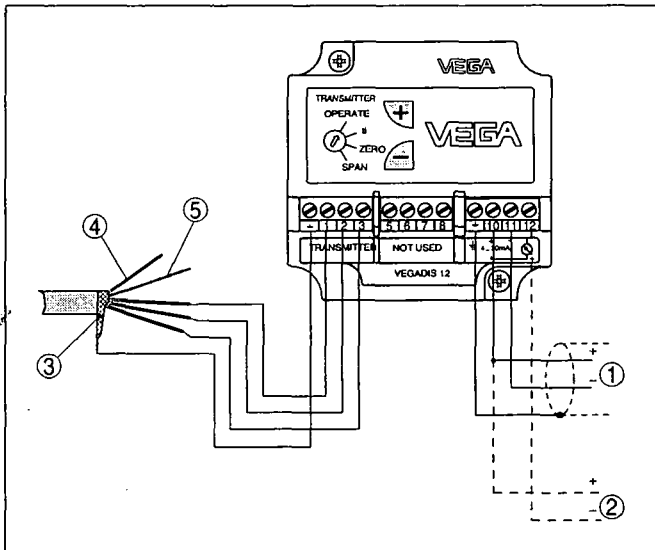


Fig. 5: Terminal assignment, VEGADIS 12

- 1 To power supply or the processing system
- 2 Control instrument (4 ... 20 mA measurement)
- 3 Screen<sup>1)</sup>
- 4 Breather capillaries
- 5 Suspension cable

<sup>1)</sup> Connect screen to ground terminal. Connect ground terminal on the outside of the housing as prescribed. The two terminals are galvanically connected.

## Connecting to power supply

VEGA

Wire number	Wire colour/Polarity	Terminal VEGADIS 12
1	brown (+)	1
2	blue (-)	2
3	Yellow	3

## Connection of VEGADIS 12 with display

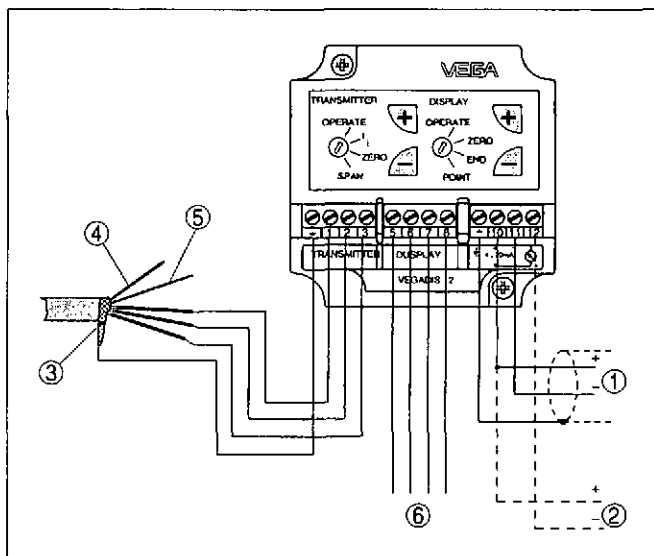


Fig. 6: Terminal assignment, VEGADIS 12

- 1 To power supply or the processing system
- 2 Control instrument (4 ... 20 mA measurement)
- 3 Screen<sup>2)</sup>
- 4 Breather capillaries
- 5 Suspension cable
- 6 for indication

Wire number	Wire colour/Polarity	Terminal VEGADIS 12
1	brown (+)	1
2	blue (-)	2
3	Yellow	3

<sup>2)</sup> Connect screen to ground terminal. Connect ground terminal on the outside of the housing as prescribed. The two terminals are galvanically connected.



Wire number	Wire colour	Terminal VEGADIS 12
5	Red	5
6	White	6
7	Violet	7
8	Orange	8

## 6 Set up

### 6.1 Adjustment of the pressure transmitter

#### Adjustment volume

- zero - measuring range begin
- span - measuring range end
- ti - Integration time

#### Adjustment elements

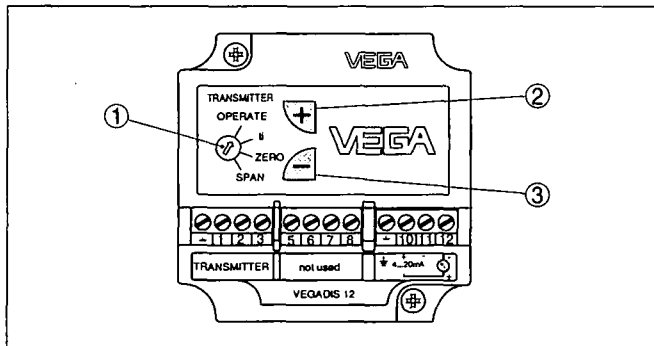


Fig. 7: Adjustment elements of VEGADIS 12 without display

- 1 Rotary switch: choose the requested function
- 2 [+ ] key, change value (rising)
- 3 [- ] key, change value (falling)

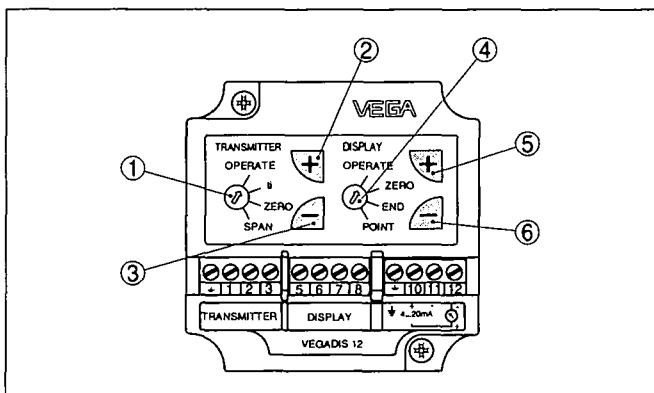


Fig. 8: Adjustment elements of VEGADIS 12 with display

- 1 Rotary switch pressure transmitter: Select requested function
- 2 [+ ] key, change adjustment value (rising)
- 3 [- ] key, change adjustment value (falling)
- 4 Rotary switch indication: choose the requested function
- 5 [+ ] key, change scaling (rising)
- 6 [- ] key, change scaling (falling)

**Adjustment system**

- The requested function is selected with the rotary switches
- With the **[+]** and **[-]** keys the signal current or the integration time is set or the indication is scaled
- The respective rotary switch is finally set to position "OPERATE"

The set values are transmitted to the EEPROM memory and remain there even in case of voltage loss.

**Adjustment steps, adjustment**

Proceed as follows for adjustment with VEGADIS 12:

- 1 Open housing cover
- 2 Connect hand multimeter to terminals 10 and 12
- 3 Meas. range begin: Set rotary switch to "zero"
- 4 Empty the vessel or reduce process pressure
- 5 Set a current of 4 mA with the **[+]** and **[-]** keys
- 6 Meas. range end: Set rotary switch to "span"
- 7 Fill the vessel or increase process pressure
- 8 Set a current of 20 mA with the **[+]** and **[-]** keys
- 9 Operation: Set rotary switch to "OPERATE"
- 10 Close the housing cover

The adjustment data are effective, the output current 4 ... 20 mA corresponds to the actual level or pressure.

**Information:**

The corresponding current values must be calculated and set respectively for adjustment with part fillings or emptyings.

Example: For a part emptying of 25 %, a current of 4 mA + 4 mA = 8 mA must be set, for a part filling of 75 %, a current of 4 mA + 12 mA = 16 mA. VEGADIS 12 then calculates the values for full and empty.

**Adjustment steps, integration time**

Proceed as follows for the adjustment of the integration time with VEGADIS 12:

- 1 Open housing cover
- 2 Set rotary switch to "ti"
- 3 Make sure that the integration time is set to 0 sec by pressing the **[-]** key 10 times.
- 4 For every 1 sec. requested integration time, push the **[+]** key once.

- 5 The integration time is the time required by the output current signal to reach 90 % of the actual height after a sudden level change.
- 6 Set rotary switch to "OPERATE"
- 7 Close the housing cover

## 6.2 Indication scaling

### Indicating elements

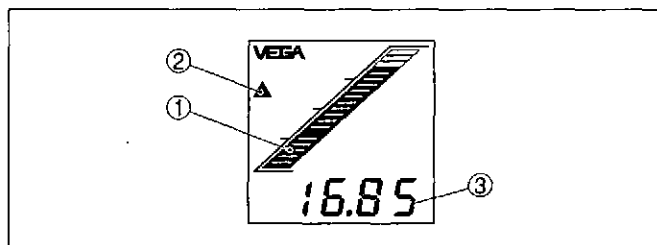


Fig. 9: Indicating elements of VEGADIS 12

- 1 Bar graph
- 2 Tendency indication
- 3 Digital value
  - four positions as well as sign and decimal point
  - individual scaling between -9999 ... +9999

The display outputs the current 4 ... 20 mA as bar graph and digital value.

With 4 mA no segment of the bar graph appears, with 20 mA all segments appear. This assignment is fix.

You can scale the digital value to any value between -9999 ... +9999 via the adjustment module.

### Adjustment steps, scaling

To scale, proceed as follows:

- 1 Open housing cover
- 2 Initial value: Set rotary switch to "zero"
- 3 Set the requested value, e.g. 0 with the **[+]** and **[-]** keys
- 4 Final value: Set the rotary switch to "span"
- 5 Set the requested value, e.g. 1000 with the **[+]** and **[-]** keys
- 6 Decimal point: Set the rotary switch to "point"
- 7 With the **[+]** and **[-]** keys you can adjust the requested value, e.g. 8888 (no decimal point)
- 8 Set rotary switch to "OPERATE"
- 9 Close the housing cover





The adjustment data are effective, the output current 4 ... 20 mA corresponds to the actual level.



## 7 Maintenance and fault rectification

### 7.1 Maintenance

When used as directed in normal operation, VEGADIS 12 is completely maintenance free.

### 7.2 Remove interferences

<b>Reaction in case of failures</b>	The operator of the system is responsible for taken suitable measures to remove interferences.
<b>Causes of malfunction</b>	<p>VEGADIS 12 offers maximum reliability. Nevertheless faults can occur during operation. These may be caused by the following, e.g.:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Sensor</li> <li>• Process</li> <li>• Supply</li> <li>• Signal processing</li> </ul>
<b>Fault rectification</b>	The first measure to take is to check the output signal as well as the atmospheric pressure compensation. The procedure is described below. Further comprehensive diagnostics can be carried out on a PC with the software PACTware™ and the suitable DTM. In many cases, the causes can be determined in this way and faults can be rectified.
<b>24 hour service hotline</b>	<p>However, if these measures are not successful, call the VEGA service hotline in urgent cases under the phone no. <b>+49 1805 858550</b>.</p> <p>The hotline is available to you 7 days a week round-the-clock. Since we offer this service world-wide, the support is only available in the English language. The service is free of charge, only the standard telephone costs will be charge</p>
<b>Check pressure compensation</b>	First of all open the housing cover. The indicated measured value must not change. However, if the indicated value changes nevertheless, the compensation of the atmospheric pressure is not ensured. Check the breather facility on the housing and the capillaries in the special cable.
<b>Checking the 4 ... 20 mA signal</b>	Connect a handheld multimeter in the suitable measuring range according to the wiring plan.

- ? 4 ... 20 mA signal not stable
  - Level fluctuations
    - Adjust integration time via PACTware™
  - no atmospheric pressure compensation
    - Check the capillaries and cut them clean
    - Check the pressure compensation in the housing and clean the filter element, if necessary
  
- ? 4 ... 20 mA signal missing
  - Wrong connection to power supply
    - Check connection according to chapter "*Connection steps*" and if necessary, correct according to chapter "*Wiring plan*"
  - No voltage supply
    - Check cables for breaks; repair if necessary
  - supply voltage too low or load resistance too high
    - Check, adapt if necessary
  
- ? Current signal 3.6 mA; 22 mA
  - electronics module or measuring cell defective
    - Exchange instrument or return instrument for repair



In Ex applications, the regulations for the wiring of intrinsically safe circuits must be observed.

#### Reaction after fault rectification

Depending on the failure reason and measures taken, the steps described in chapter "*Set up*" must be carried out again, if necessary.

### 7.3 Instrument repair

If a repair is necessary, please proceed as follows:

You can download a return form (23 KB) from the Internet on our homepage [www.vega.com](http://www.vega.com) under: "*Downloads - Forms and certificates - Repair form*".

By doing this you help us carry out the repair quickly and without having to call for needed information.

- Print and fill out one form per instrument
- Clean the instrument and pack it damage-proof

**Maintenance and fault rectification**

---



- Attach the completed form and, if need be, also a safety data sheet outside on the packaging
- Please ask the agency serving you for the address of your return shipment. You can find the respective agency on our website [www.vega.com](http://www.vega.com) under: "*Company - VEGA world-wide*"

## 8 Dismounting

### 8.1 Dismounting steps

**Warning:**

Before dismounting, be aware of dangerous process conditions such as e.g. pressure in the vessel, high temperatures, corrosive or toxic products etc.

Take note of chapters "*Mounting*" and "*Connecting to power supply*" and carry out the listed steps in reverse order.

### 8.2 Disposal

The instrument consists of materials which can be recycled by specialised recycling companies. We use recyclable materials and have designed the electronics to be easily separable.

**WEEE directive 2002/96/EG**

This instrument is not subject to the WEEE directive 2002/96/EG and the respective national laws. Pass the instrument directly on to a specialised recycling company and do not use the municipal collecting points. These may be used only for privately used products according to the WEEE directive.

Correct disposal avoids negative effects to persons and environment and ensures recycling of useful raw materials.

Materials: see chapter "*Technical data*"

If you cannot dispose of the instrument properly, please contact us about disposal methods or return.

## 9 Supplement

### 9.1 Technical data

#### General data

316L corresponds to 1.4404 or 1.4435, 316Ti corresponds to 1.4571

##### Materials

- Housing plastic PBT
- Ground terminal 316Ti/316L
- Inspection window of the indication

Weight approx. 0.5 kg (1.102 lbs)

#### Ambient conditions

##### Ambient temperature

- without display -40 ... +85 °C (-40 ... +185 °F)
- with display -20 ... +70 °C (-40 ... +158 °F)

Storage and transport temperature -40 ... +85 °C (-40 ... +185 °F)

#### Electromechanical data

Cable gland 2 x cable entry M20 x 1.5 (cable-ø 5 ... 9 mm)  
Screw terminals for wire cross-section up to 2.5 mm<sup>2</sup> (AWG 14)

#### Indicating and adjustment elements

Adjustment elements 2 x 2 keys, 2 x 1 rotary switch  
Adjustment elements with display 2 keys, 1 rotary switch  
Display (optional) LC multiple function display with bar graph (20 segments, digital value 4-digit), tendency indicator for rising or falling values

#### Adjustment circuit

Connection to VEGAWELL 72 4 ... 20 mA/HART, VEGABAR 74, VEGABAR 75  
Connection cable to the sensor VEGA special cable with breather capillaries  
Cable length max. 200 m

#### Voltage supply

Supply voltage  
– without display 12 ... 36 V DC  
– with display 17 ... 36 V DC



Load without display	see diagram in the operating instructions manual of the respective sensor
----------------------	---

**Electrical protective measures**

Protection	IP 65
Overvoltage category	III
Protection class	III

**Approvals<sup>3)</sup>**

ATEX ia	ATEX II 2G EEx ia IIC T6
---------	--------------------------

<sup>3)</sup> Deviating data in Ex applications: see separate safety instructions.

9.2 Dimensions

VEGADIS 12 without display

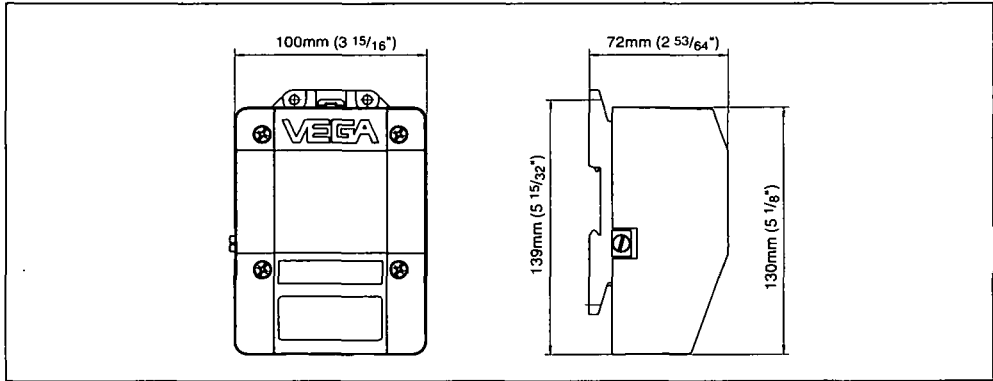


Fig. 10: VEGADIS 12 without display (protective cover optional)

VEGADIS 12 with display

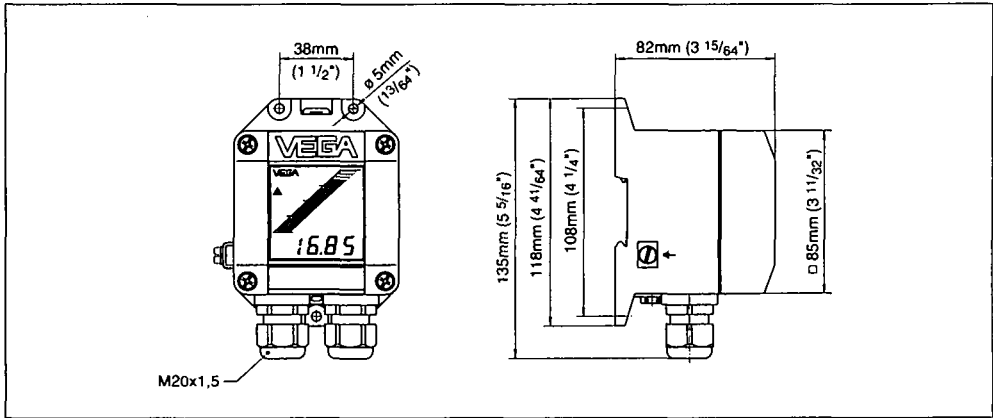


Fig. 11: VEGADIS 12 with display



### 9.3 Industrial property rights

VEGA product lines are global protected by industrial property rights.

Further information see <http://www.vega.com>

Only in U.S.A.: Further information see patent label at the sensor housing.

VEGA Produktfamilien sind weltweit geschützt durch gewerbliche Schutzrechte.  
Nähere Informationen unter <http://www.vega.com>

Les lignes de produits VEGA sont globalement protégées par des droits de propriété intellectuelle.

Pour plus d'informations, on pourra se référer au site <http://www.vega.com>.

VEGA líneas de productos están protegidas por los derechos en el campo de la propiedad industrial.

Para mayor información revise la pagina web <http://www.vega.com>

Линии продукции фирмы ВЕГА защищаются по всему миру правами на интеллектуальную собственность.

Дальнейшую информацию смотрите на сайте <http://www.vega.com>

VEGA系列产品在全球享有知识产权保护。

进一步信息请参见网站<<http://www.vega.com>>。

### 9.4 Trademark

All brands used as well as trade and company names are property of their lawful proprietor/originator.



Printing date: 30.07.2008

VEGA Grieshaber KG  
Am Hohenstein 113  
77761 Schiltach  
Germany  
Phone +49 7836 50-0  
Fax +49 7836 50-201  
E-mail: [info@de.vega.com](mailto:info@de.vega.com)  
[www.vega.com](http://www.vega.com)



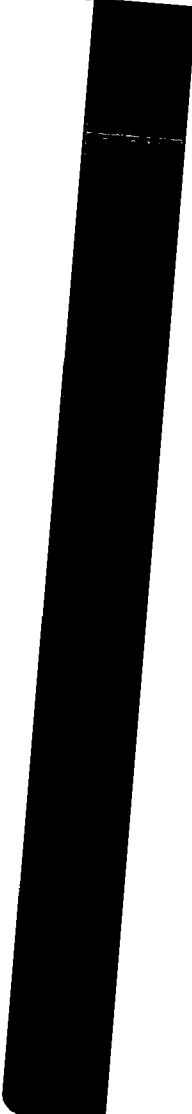
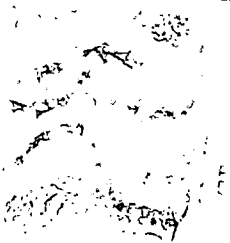
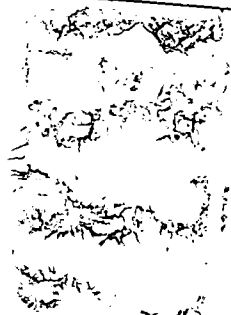
All statements concerning scope of delivery, application, practical use and operating conditions of the sensors and processing systems correspond to the information available at the time of printing.

© VEGA Grieshaber KG, Schiltach/Germany 2007

Subject to change without prior notice

20591-EN-071128

5







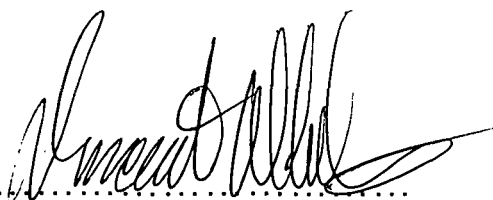
# CERTIFICATE OF TEST

Project:- **PUMP STATION SP 267 MEADOWLANDS ROAD #2**

Client:- **BRISBANE CITY COUNCIL**

“Whelan Electrical Services Pty Ltd certify that the electrical installation, to the extent it is effected by the electrical work, has been tested to ensure it is electrically safe and is in accordance with the requirements of the wiring rules and any other standard applying to the electrical installation under the Electrical Safety Regulation 2002”

Signed:-



Vincent Whelan









A.B.N. 29 099 635 668

1 Harvest Street YANDINA 4561 Tel: (07) 5446 7133 Fax: (07) 5446 8118  
Email: vince@whelan.com.au Web: whelan.com.au

Ref: f:\office\2008\word\081010.doc

10 October, 2008

Brisbane City Council  
GPO Box 2567  
BRISBANE QLD 4000

ATTENTION: Warren Henderson

Dear Warren,

RE: CONTRACT NO. BW70103-004 PUMP STATIONS  
SP 260 ABERDEEN PARADE STH #2  
& SP 267 MEADOWLANDS ROAD #2

Please find attached one (1) copy each of the operation and maintenance manuals for the above contracts.

If you have any queries please contact me.

Yours faithfully,

Vince Whelan  
**WHELAN ELECTRICAL SERVICES**  
**1 HARVEST STREET, YANDINA QLD 4561**

